

180  
A NOTABLE HISTORIE  
of the Saracens.

Briefly and faithfully descry-  
bing the originall beginning, continu-  
aunce and successe aswell of the Saracens, as also  
of Turkes, Douloans, Amalukes, Assassines,  
Tartarians and Sophians. With a discourse  
of their Affaires and Actes from the  
byrthe of Mahomet their first  
pennish Prophet and founde  
der for 700 yeeres  
space.

VVherunto is annexed a Compendious  
Chronicle of all their yeerely exploitcs,  
from the sayde Mahometts time  
till this present yeere of  
grace. 1575.

Drawen out of Augustine Curio  
and sundry other good Au-  
thours by Thomas  
Newton.

Imprinted at London by Wil-  
liam How, for Abraham Veale.

1575.





*Jos: Banks*

To the Ryghte honorable  
the Lorde Charles Howarde,  
Baron of Effyngham, and  
Knight of the most Noble Or-  
der of the Garter.



Yghte Honorable:  
Callinge to remembrance  
what streict accoumpt eue-  
rie Man particularlie at  
the last generall Audite,  
is enioyned to yeeld for time here bestow-  
ed, I haue somewhat in discharge of my duty  
that waye, according to the rate and mea-  
sure of my small Talent, traueiled to  
bringe to light for the benefite of my Coun-  
treymen this historicall Discourse of Sar-  
racens, Turks and other Reprobates of the  
same stampe and Lyuerey, in hope that the  
same to your Honour and others, of ripe  
iudgement thyrstinge after such needefull  
knowledge, shall bee deemed labour and time  
not all together yll spent. Which matter al-  
though it required the cunninge hande of a  
skilfuller Woorckeman, for the better polis-  
shing and bringing thereof into good frame  
and



## The Epistle

and order, yet the diligent endeuoure of  
suche as doe their vttermoste seemeth (in  
the meane whyle) not to bee reiected. For  
God bestoweth his Gifts and Benefites di-  
uerselye (some haue more and some lesse)  
whiche although by Arithmeticall pro-  
portion they seeme very vnequall, yet beinge  
Geometricallye examyned, respected and  
waighed, they iumpe in a most euen equalty.  
Herein as in a Myrrour is set down, how,  
when & by whom, this pestilent Generation  
was first set abroche, what successe in their  
Affaires euer synce they haue had, and if  
wee wyll not by others harmes take warning,  
what curtesye is to bee looked for at their  
hands, whē and where soeuer they can espye  
any occasiō or oportunitie to put in practise  
their bloudy tyranny. They were (in deede)  
at the first very far of from our Clyme &  
Region, and therefore the lesse to be fea-  
red, but now they are euen at our doores and  
ready to come into our Houses, yf our pe-  
nitent heartes doe not the sooner procure at  
the mercifull bandes of God, an vnytie,  
peace.

## Dedicatorie.

peace and concord among the Princes, Potentates and People of that litle porcion of Chrystendome yet left, which through diuision, discord and ciuile dissention hath from time to time enticed and brought this Babylonian Nabugadnezar and turkish Pharao so neere vnder our noses. The pitifull state wherof although your L. is not now to learn yet for others sake, not so rype in Turkishe garboyles, I know your Honour according to the wonted generositie of your noble nature wil at my hands cherefully accept, as an earnest peny of my loyal heart to your L. most addicted: whō I beseech God with that moste vertuous and honorable Ladie your wife to blesse with all spirituall benedictions, prosperous health and daylye increase of much Honour.

At London the xii. of May. 1575.

Your good Lordships  
most humble at Commandment.

Thomas Newton.



*[The page contains faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side.]*

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION  
500 5TH AVENUE  
NEW YORK 17, N.Y.

# The Authours

## Preface.

**M**Any a time and often,  
considering and debating with  
my selfe, the actwarde course of  
this changeable world, among  
other things I haue bene greatly desyrous  
to know, what the very & chief cause should  
be, of the subuersion and ruyn, from time to  
time, of al mightie kyngdomes: And againe  
of the setting vp and aduancement of manie  
obscure persones of base degree and paren-  
tage to most high honors and dignities. For  
when I througely consider and call to re-  
meinbrance the alteration and decay of the  
Romane Empire, and the manifolde cala-  
mities that haue happened to noble and  
puyssaunt kingdomes in times past, I well  
see, that dissolute life, ambitio and discord of  
Rulers amonge themselves hath from time  
to time bene the chief & originall cause ther-  
of. Insomuch that by reading out of olde  
Monumentes and histories, thinges long  
agone atchieued and done. I perceaue ma-  
ny Empires haue ben planted and constitu-  
ted, many Nations subdued, many king-  
domes with long continuance firmly esta-  
blished and most assured peate and tranquill-  
lytie among the Communaltie conferred by  
temperaunce and sobrietie, but chieflly and  
specially



## The Preface.

Specially by civill concord and mutuall amity.  
Wherefore, both reason, & dayly examples  
enforce me to think, that Wealth, Riches,  
Strength and skilfull pollicie in warlike af-  
fayres without concord and goodwyl of the  
people hurteth many times, but profiteth  
almost neuer. Whereas concord and bene-  
uolence (even without wealth and rycheffe)  
be of great force and of themselves able to  
doo very much. Therefore, they which  
neglected the sauegard, quietnesse and com-  
moditie of their subiectes (whereby, good-  
wyl is both purchased and also nourished,)  
and wholly yeelded themselves to Ambition  
and desire of sovereignty (bestowing al their  
Studies and cogitations onely to enrich and  
bring themselves to hye estate among their  
owne People, desiring rather to be feared of  
them then of their enemies) were in the end  
unprofitable to themselves and pernicious  
to their countrey. Contrarywise, they  
that so acine themselves with the unfayned  
loue and goodwyl of their owne people and  
subiectes, that they might both be tenderly  
and intirely beloued of them, and also bee  
terrible and dreadfull to the enemy abroad:  
those (I say) were they, which notably bene-  
fited both themselves and their common  
wealth. And if we would peruse and rip  
by the ancient beginnings of al Kingdoms,  
and thoroughly consider their fyrst originall,

wee shall find, that the first and chiefest

## *The Preface.*

wee shall finde that so many of them as long  
flourished, were by most honest Artes and  
wayes at the first gotten, and by the best or  
ders of gouernment constituted. For it is wel  
enough knowne, that at the beginning, the  
name of a king (which alwaies was a name  
most holle and venerable) was geuen and  
attributed to those that had done best ser  
uice and been most meritorious to their coun  
trie, whom the people for their common pro  
fite and vtilytie created kinges and Souer  
raignes ouer them. For when as the sacred  
worde of God was not yet amonge men ac  
knowledged, no religyon reuerenced, nor a  
ny ciuill order regarded, when no man took  
any respect to lawfull matrimonie, or to any  
certaine procreation of Children, and the  
due administratiō of iustice and lawes with  
the profites therof not once heard of, much  
lesse executed: when men after a bruttish  
sorte lyued abroad in the woods and open  
fieldes, wholly drowned in errour and blind  
ignorance, abusing their strength and pow  
er onely to the satisfyng of their owne sen  
suall affections and beastlye lustes: what  
mans power was so great, or who was a  
ble with all the strength he had to gather to  
gether these sauage and rude persones lurk  
ing in woods & cabines abroad, into one fe  
lowship: & to perswade the to be obedient &  
conformable to his comādements. Certes



## The Preface.

wee muste needes confesse, that this redu-  
cing of them from their fyrste vnmannerly  
rudenesse, to honeste order and comelinesse,  
was not brought to passe by force and vio-  
lence, but by wisdom, equity, iustice, curtes-  
ous dealing and liberall benefites bestowed  
vpon them all generallie, whereby the  
hartes of the people were rauished and as it  
were with a certain bond of beneuolence al-  
lured to haue them in admiration, and to  
beare vnto them an earnest zeale of duty-  
full good wyll. And although at the fyrste,  
they seemed after a sort (because of the strang-  
nesse thereof) to be halfe vnwyllyng, yet at  
length by meanes of benefites receaued, and  
other liberal curtesies, together with an vpr-  
sight equitie in euery respect obserued, they  
brought them into order and ready to con-  
sent vnto euery thing that seemed honest  
and profitable. By these politike meanes,  
Saturne the aunciētest founder of Rome  
reigned firste in Armenia, and escaped the  
conspiracie and force of the mightiest kings  
of Babilon by nothinge so much, as by his  
iustice and equitie and the assured goodwill  
of his owne people, and by their onely help,  
steering the furie and crueltie of Iupiter, ob-  
tayne and waime a new kingdome in Ita-  
ly. By this way, Romulus the other found-  
der of Rome, of a poore and beggarly shep-  
herd, was aduanced to the degree of a king.

In

## *The Preface.*

In lyke manner were Numa and Tarquin-  
nius Priscus of straungers and priuate per-  
sons, made Kinges in the same place. By  
such good will and affection of his Soul-  
diers, Alexander the Great conquered all the  
East. By concord, the Greeques victorious  
lye augmented and enlarged their dominions:  
by concord, the common wealth of the  
Carthaginians grewe to bee moste mightye:  
the same concord made the Romanes,  
Lordes ouer al Lands, and conquerours of  
al foraine nations. In this bond of concord  
the Sarracens a weake and slender rable of  
Peyzants at the fyrst, being ioynd and lin-  
ked together, ouercame and possessed verie  
many prouinces belöging to þe Romane em-  
pire: & by this meanes þe power of the Turkes  
at the fyrst & euer since hath increased. But  
Insolency, Ambition and Discord hath ben  
the subuersion of all Kingdomes, mightye  
Empires and populous common wealthes.  
For when princes (neglecting and forsaking  
those trades and waies by which their king-  
domes were at the fyrst constituted) thinke  
Money and wealth, to be the chief defence,  
and as it were the Sinewes and stayes of  
their kingdomes, when any secret hatred  
and harte burninge enkindleth betweene  
them and their people, then do they hazard  
and endaunger, both themselves their Roy-  
alines and subiectes to the spoyle of the ene-



## The Preface.

my. for nature hath thus ordayned, that as we feele & perceauie others to be affected towards vs, we also are affected towards the: & Plato his saying is well known concerning the same matter who writeth that as the princes & rulers in a common welth are, such commonly bee the people and Citizens of the same. Therefore no man ought to marueile, why those Princes which set more by their own priuate lucre and gayne then by the publique commoditie of their Realme, are many times but slenderly beloued of their subjects: and that all their Officers vnder them by their euill example, are more carefull to enriche their owne Coffers then to further the common wealth of their country. Thus mens hearts being diuersly bent and their good wils alienated one from another, the common wealth consequently goeth to wracke & confusion. These were the causes, why the Emperre was first translated from the Chaldeyes to the Assyrians, from the Assyrians to the Medians, from the Medians to the Persians and last of all from the Persians to the Macedonians. Discord was the overthrow and dispatching of that famous and large Monarchy left by Alexander the Great, while his successours (not content every man with his owne Territory) quarelled among themselves for the whole Monarchy. Discord abated and tained the whole power and

## *The Preface.*

and cominon wealthe of the Greeques: by  
Disorde and ciuill warres, the Romane  
state was destroyed and brought almoste  
to nothing: and agayne the ciuill diuision  
of the Greeques amonge themselues was  
the only cause that the flourishing empire of  
Constantinople was brought vnder the mise-  
rable yoke and slauierye of a Nation moste  
barbarous. Discord was the vtter vndoo-  
yng and defacyng of the Sarracens Empire, as  
in this History it shall playnly appeare: and  
thesame plague doth at this day so infect  
and trouble all Christendome that I feare  
(and I beseech God my feare may be with-  
out effect) least wee shall to late rue and la-  
ment either the vtter subuersion or at least,  
the miserable oppression thereof. What do  
wee meane therfore: seeyng Ambition and  
her daughter Disorde haue euer bene the  
causes of so great calamities and mis-  
chieues, why doo we thus runne headlong  
vpon the Swordes point, and cut one an-  
others throat: why haue we such dellyght  
in ciuill warres and domesticall murder:  
why doo wee not (alas for pittie that our  
mindes should be somuch blinded and be-  
witched) lay asyde all priuate grudges and  
controuersies which ought rather to be de-  
cided by equitie and the infallible lawe of  
God, then with war and effusion of Chris-  
tian blood: why doo wee not rather bende  
all



## The Preface.

all our force and power against the professed enemies of Christianitie, & cōteinners & destroyers of all humanitie, religion and learning: These warres (I say) which are deuided into many partes and factions among vs, one conspiringe an others bane and thyrsting after his brothers bloud, wil in the end bring all Christendome to vtter ruine and wofull desolation. Which if they would ioyne in one and liue together in Christian league, no doubt, Constantinople might be agayn recovered and annexed to the Romane Empire, Grecia and a great number of Christiā cuntries now lyuyng in perpetual moorning, & pitiful slavery might bee deliuered out of the thraldome of vn-sufferable tyrants, that Sathanical crew of Turkish lurdens might be expelled and driven to trudge out of all Europa, and the sincere profession of christian religion there estsones planted and truely acknowledged. ¶ Paraduventure some wyl cast doubtess and object, that this our mortal foe is not neere hand, but must be sought out (as aforesaid) in farre countreyes, that they must passe sundry aduentures ouer many perilous Seas, that they must goe a great way beyonde all Europa, and set foote into ASIA and Syria by dangerous places, vnknown waies suspect countreies and fierce people. But behold, euen at our dores and ready to come  
into

## The Preface.

into our houses, we haue this arrogant and  
bragging helhound, triumphyng ouer vs,  
laughyng at our misfortunes, reioyng to  
see vs thus to lye together by the eares, and  
gapyng in hope shortly to enioy our goodes  
and Signiories. O dolefull and daunge-  
rous times. O corrupt and wyllfull maners.  
In times past, one Peter an Heremite beyng  
but a poore seely soule, was able with ex-  
hortyng wordes and orations to perswade  
three hundred thousand men to put on ar-  
mour against the Sarracens, and to procure in-  
numerable Gentlemen & Potentates with  
all the power they were able to make, to  
march against them, & to bring them as far  
as into Asia, where they valiantly conquered  
and wanne from the Sarracens many of their  
kingdomes and Prouinces. For the people  
in those daies were of themselves so willing  
to aduenture their liues in Christs quarell  
against the blasphemers of his name, that  
without any spend or wages (godly zeale  
so pricked them forwarde) they tooke in  
hand such long Expeditions and weary bi-  
ages: and while Kinges and Rulers were  
geuen either to rest and riotte, or els busyed  
with ciuill and domesticall warres, they ca-  
ried their weapons into farre Regions to  
fight against the Infidels and miscreant  
people. But now wheras our most mightye  
and the same most vnnmercifull Eneyme the  
C great



## The Preface.

great Turke is ready every day to spyll our bloud and to work our confusion, possessing & having already vnder his iurisdiction many of y<sup>e</sup> Christian Prorinces, to some others laying batterye and siege: and hoppyng ere it be long, to spoyle & ouerrunne the rest, and albeit that Christendome hath Maximilian an Emperour mooste prudent and wyse, yet neuerthelesse, by the sinister perswasions, and deuillish counsailes of some seditious personnes w<sup>ch</sup> slea and kill one an other. Which thing I considering, and greatly lamentyng the state wherein Christendome presently standeth, albeit that I being but one man, and such a one, that lackyng both strength & health, am able in person to doe no good in the exploitcs of martiall affaires: yet to the intent I might stirre vp and kindle a desire and goodwoyl in many others which are better hable, to repulse this our common danger, by such examples as are in histories registered and wrytten, I haue here taken vpon mee orderlye to describe and set out the Actes of the Sarracens and Turkes, buried almost in the rusty Dungeon, of cankered obliuion: that we seeyng by what meanes and sleightes they haue increased, and by what folies and oversightes our power hath diminished, may now at length decline and eschue the lyke. This whole Historie brefely comprysinge the whole Discourse of their raignes

## *The Preface.*

raignes and conquestes, collected aswell out of many Greeke, Constantinopolitan, and Latine Authours, as out of the Chronicles of the Arabians & Moores, is deuided into three Bookes. The firste containeth the natiuitie, education, raigne and continuance of Dotynge Mahomet and the beginning of the Saracens, with the successe and increase of their Empire euen tyll it was at the highest, for two hundredeth yeeres space. The seconde is contynued from the fyrst inclynation tyll the beginning of the destruction and laste ende thereof, contayninge also the space of two hundredeth yeeres. The third bzeefly comprehendeth the finall end of it, and the original beginning of the Turke Empire, (which succeeded the Saracenicall Domination) till Othoman the first Emperour of Turke which intreateth of their acts, for the space of three hundredeth yeeres. So that this Historie taketh his beginning at the byrth of Mahomet, which was fye hundred & sixty yeeres after the incarnation of our Saviour Christ, and reacheth vnto y<sup>e</sup> yeere one thousand & three hundredeth. As for the seuerall Acts of Othoman and other Emperours that succeeded hym, we haue heere omitted, because they be seuerally wrytten and described by many others. But of that argument which wee in these three Bookes declare and comprehend,

C ii

there



## The Preface.

there is none, neither amonge the Latines  
nor yet the Greeques (that I know) which  
hath compiled and made any severall Histo-  
rye. Which labour of mine, if I may under-  
stand to be well lyked and allowed, by the  
iudgment of the honest and learned sorte, I  
wyl heerafter aduenture to take in hande  
other matters of greater waight and im-  
portance.



# The first Booke.

I

Wherin is contained their first beginning and original, with the successe and encreasing of theyr Empire.



*I* Am purposed to write an Historie concerning the Actes of the Saracens, atchieued as wel in the East as in the West partes of the world: first because they were greate and renounced ouer the face of the whole Earth and brought all things out of good state into tumultuous hzople and confuse disorder, and also because this power of theirs encreased, thzough the disorde and dissention of the Chzistians: that we thereby taking example, may plainely perceine and learne what bolones and strength, our ciuill warring and inuward variance among our selues gineth to the aduersaries and foes of Chzistianitie. And that we no longer in this sozte offer our thzoades willingly to be cut by them, which desire nothing moze then our blood and destruction. For first of al, this is well ynough knowen, that the Romane Emperre (which thzough the conorde temperance and valiauntnes surmounted and grew to such high Maestie and estate, that all nations almost in the world were obedienciaries and subiect vnto it) when the Citizens being once lulled in to much ease, and dzonken with superfluitie of riches and wealth began to addict themselves to riot and ambition (the verie causes that ouerthzew it, when it once began to decline with his owne sway and bignesse, and many strived for title of the Crowne) receiued at the handes of none, such annoyance and calamitie as of the

C. iij. Sara-



## The first Booke

Saracens. For although the Gothes most vnmmercifully and beastly destroying and making hauocke of the auncient Monumentes of the Romane valiaunce and worthinesse, were the first that triumphed ouer them, being the people which earst had vanquished and conquered all other nations: Although Attila King of the Hunnes, like a most raging swift streame spoiled, ouerrunne and destroyed all where euer he came, from the Riphæan to the Pyrene Mountaines: Although the Lumbards occupied and forcibly enioyed a great portion of Italy, as the Frankes breaking out of Germanie into Gallia also did: yet their raignes and dominations in straunge Countreyes either continued not long, or else at least wise, lying vnder a more gentle and reasonable Climate, chaunged their former conditions, acknowledged religion and the August Emperre of the soueraigne Cæsars. But the Saracens because they woulde seeme to be subduers and ouerthrowers both of the Romane Empire and of all Christian religion also, violently breaking and issuing out of Arabia, despoiled and wasted the most noble parts of Asia, which in so many sharpe stormes and troubles some garboyles of most fierce people euer before remained free and vntouched, quite abolishing in the same all the studies of good letters and liberall Sciences and ( which is most of all ) vtterly defacing and inhibiting the true worshipping of God and Christian religion. And not only infected the Provinces of Asia but also almoste all Affrica and the moste parte of Spaine with barbarous rites, mystie errors, blinde ignorance, and with a most deuelish, absurde and detestable religion of their owne. And from thence making sundry Roads into Italy, Greece and Fraunce lamentably afflicted and laid wast the same, and by continuance & sufferance haue planted such a huge Emperre, y at this day (being in Anno. 1575. that is to say. 900. yeres and aboue since it first beganne, it dayly threate,

## Of the Saracen Historie. 2

threateneth our confusion and is dreadfull to all Chri-  
stendome. For the Turkes who nowe enjoy all their  
dominions, haue receiued from them as next heires vnto  
them, both their Religion and Kingdomes: and yet to  
this day in Affrica, some of the mere lyne of the Saracens  
be of great power and authoritie. But before we go any  
further to the declaration & discouerie of their Aids & go-  
uernment, we must firste a little speake of the originall  
Pedagrew of the first founder and authour of their dam-  
nable Secte. All Arabie is deuided into thzee partes,  
wherof one is called Petreia, hauing his name of an olde  
auuncient tolon in it, called Petra, the second is called De-  
serta, and the thirde Felix or Sabara. Petreia bath on the  
West side Egypt and is separated from it, firste by the  
Mount Caius and then by wast wilbernesse: on the  
North, it bath Iurie and Palestina: on the East, Arabia,  
Deserta: and on the South the innermost part of arme  
of the Arabian Goulph called Sinus Arabicus. Deserta,  
wherin the Citie Scene (otherwise called Scenitis) stonde,  
boundeth on the South vpon the Mountaines of Arabia  
Felix, on the North, it bath Mesopotamia, and on the  
East the Riuier Euphrates. Arabia Felix runneth a long  
betwene the two bolomes of the Sea, the Arabian and  
the Persian, being almost on euerie side enuironed wth  
water like an Island. It bath on the North Petreia and  
Deserta, on the West the Arabian Gulph, on the East  
the Persian Gulph, and on the South the redde Sea. I  
finde that these Regions were inhabited by foure kindes  
of people, that is to wit, by the auuncient Arabians, which  
were descended from Arabus, Sabus and Petreus the  
sonnes of Cures and the Nephewes of Cham, of whom  
the thzee Arabies had their names as Arabia Deserta of  
Arabus, Arabia, Sabara (which is also called Felix) of Sa-  
bus and Petreia of Petreus (as witnesseth Berolus Chal-  
dæus.) Then of the Ismaelites, which were descended

Arabie.

Arabians are  
the offspring  
of Ismael.

from



# The first Booke

from Ismaell the Sonne of Abraham by his handmayde  
 Agar, of whom a parte of the Countrey, called Agarena  
 and the Town Agarenum (which in Strabo are corrupt-  
 ly read Ararena and Agranum) had their first beginning  
 and denomination: as that part called Petreia was cal-  
 led Nabathza of Nabath, & the people Cadrei of Cadar  
 the Sonnes of the same Ismael. The thirde people came  
 and descended of the Sonnes of Keturah, Abrahams se-  
 cond wife, which possessed a great part of Arabia Felix,  
 specially that portion which lyeth toward the redde Sea.  
 They also made Colonies and vnder Cities in Lybia,  
 and peopled the same with inhabitants of their owne  
 linage and nation, whereupon afterward (as Iosephus  
 witnesseth) the Cuntrey was called Affrica, of Ophre the  
 Sonne of Mandanes, and ppebeto to Abraham by his  
 wife Keturah. The fourth kinde, take their original be-  
 ginning of Esau the Sonne of Isaac, who inhabited the  
 partes of Arabia Petreia next vnto Iurie, and of him the  
 people in Arabia Petreia, are of Plinie and Ptolomeus  
 called by the name of Saracens. For Isaac, Esau his father,  
 was the Sonne of Abraham by his wife Sara. And they  
 were called Saracens, both because they might thereby  
 shew and testifie, that they were descended of the lyne of  
 Sara, who was Maystresse, and not of Agar the handmaid  
 as the Ismaelites were: and also that they might be dis-  
 cerned and knowen from the Iewes, who also had the ve-  
 rie same parentes and were proceeded out of the same  
 stocke and progenie. Among al these, the people Scenitæ  
 which inhabited Arabia Deserta, were most valiant  
 and warlike, hauing no habitation nor houses to dwel in,  
 but wandred abroad & lay in Tents in the open fieldes.  
 These insolently bragged and made their aunty, that  
 they were of most auncientie, and contended with all o-  
 thers for the nobilitie of their race. Where aide and helpe,  
 the Romane Emperours in their warres oftentimes  
 vsed.

Affrica.

Esau inhabi-  
 ted part of  
 Arabie.

## Of the Saracen Historie. 3

bled. The Arabians euer had many ordinaunces and  
 Rites, such as the Hebrewes had, and do yet to this day  
 retaine and keepe the same: for (as Herodotus and Dio-  
 dorus two auncient Historiographers affirme) they euer  
 bled circumcisiō, and kept the same order of their Tribes  
 and families that the Iewes did: and accompt it a hey-  
 nous offence that a woman should be married to a man of  
 any other Tribe and familie then shee her selfe is, and  
 likewise for a man to take to wife a woman of another  
 linage. They inuolablie keepe the nobilitie of their race  
 and Pedagrewo, so that none but of the noblest sort should  
 raigne ouer them. Neither hath one the regiment and  
 gouernaunce ouer all, but euerie Tribe to haue their pro-  
 per King, after whom, his owne sonne shoulde not suc-  
 ceede in the kingdome, but the first that was bozne of the  
 seede of a right noble man and woman, after he were sa-  
 luted King, was kept and brought by as heyze apparaunt  
 to the Crowne. A people naturally and generally genen  
 to thefte and robberie, as all others commonly are which  
 dwell in boate Countreies. Many kindes of religion was  
 bled among them: for some worshipped Chzist, of whose  
 nature, deitie, & omnipotencie at that time, whence this  
 our Historie taketh his beginning (as in all other places  
 at that time also) there were diuerse sectes and opinions.  
 Some obserued the Rites and Ceremonies of the Iewes;  
 some honoured the Sunne and Moone, some certain trees,  
 some Serpentes, some a Towze called Alcaba, which  
 they beleued and thought was builded by Ismael, some  
 one thing and some another. In the time of these so great  
 garboyles and diuersities in religions, and among suche  
 blockishe and rude people, was Mahomet bozne at Itra-  
 ripe a towne of Arabia Deserta, belonging to Mecca, be-  
 ing by his fathers side of the auncient line of Corah the  
 sonne of Esau, or (as some say) of Cædar the sonne of Is-  
 mael, in the moneth of Februarie, and in the yere after  
 the

Mahomet.



## The first Booke

the incarnation of Chzist (as they say) 560. whose father was named Abedela & his mother Emma a Iew bozne, both poze folkes and of base parentage. By meanes whereof ( his father beyng an Ismaelite and his mother a Iew ) he was in his tender age by them instructed and taught both the rites of the Hebrewes and the manner of woꝛshipping that the Gentiles vsed. His Parentes dyed while he was but yet a tender and younge ladde, so that then he was committed to the charge and custodie of one Salutelib, his vnclē by the fathers syde. And whē he came to mans stature he was taken prisoner of the Scenites, which were (as befoze was shewed) the fiercest and warlikest people in all that Countrey, and lyued altogether by robberies, and by them was he solde to a ryche Cobbe one Abdimoneples, an Ismaelite. Who quickly perceiving his prompt wit and thzoughly vnderstanding his impudent nature thought him to be a fit instrument to make his factour into other Cuntries about his traffique of merchandize, and so vsed oftentimes to send him out of Palestina where he dwelte, into Egypt. Which trade of life, Mahomet the space of many yeeres exercising, gotte great acquaintance and crepte highly in fauour with the Hebrews, Christians and Gentiles. This Mahomet was of a meane stature, bigge headed, somewhat bzoune complexioned, chērefully countenanced and liuely coloured, a long bearde, and yet not hoare : because alwayes as it beganne to ware graye, with oyntmentes he altered it : his visage and loke was graue and poztly, pretending a kynde of Palestie ioynd wꝛth gentlenesse and curtesie, hys legges very well pꝛoportioꝛned, his bodie in goyng oꝛ mouyng pleasaunt and gentle, and lyke ( as they terme it ) to the course of a styll runnyng Ryuer, in talke verie curteous, in mynde and body both stoute, stronge and venturous, quicke and pꝛompte of witte, but the same ( as Salult wyꝛiteth of Catiline ) wicked and disposed

## Of the Saracen Historie. 4

disposed to all mischief, bolde, hardie, and such a one that cared for no perilles. Whereof hee gaue once a manifest example, for being mounted vpon a marueilous fierce and untamed Horse ( in the presence and sight of sundrie his friends ) he so spurred and galloped him, that all the beholders, seeing him in such great perill, earnestly desired him to alyght. Vnto whom wyth very amiable countenance and pleasaunt language, he answered, that the Horse was lyke vnto the Sea, doyng them thereby to vnderstande, that he tooke no lesse pleasure and delectation in that praucing then if hee were in a Shippe vpon the Sea. Also hee was fickle mynded and double in all hys doynge, as the infinite rable of Lawes one cleane contrarying another, by him made, doe manifestly witnesse: whiche thyng caused great varietie and diuerse sortes of sectes in hys Religion: hee was also a deepe counterfeyter and dissembler in euery matter, but by nature verie eloquent withall.

Hys ambitious and haughty mynde, gaped wythout measure. after promotion and authoritie. In so much that considering in hys mynde this great varietie of Sectes, hee was merueilously enflamed with a desire to establishe and make one manner of religion, and to take vnto him as well the Soueraigntie of Emprye, as also of diuine honour. Whereof he was put in greate hope, by reason of the great sedicion and disorde of the Christians, the corruption of manners, and the want of warlike discipline. Moreover hee was grealy animated by the peruerse and Deuylshe Counsell of one Sergius a Monk, who being exiled and expelled oute of Constantinople, for mayntainyng the Heresie of the Arrians fled into Arabie, and vsed oftentimes to come to the house of Abdimo-



## The first Booke

neples, Mahomet's maister, and entirely loued Mahomet for the singular dexteritie that he conceived to be in his wit and towardnes. Therefore as soon as his maister Abdimoneples was dead, leaving behind him no Children, his wife Hadigia, being then widow, a woman of fiftie yeeres of age, and lesse sole heyre of all her husbandes Landes, Goods and Cattells, took her sernaunt Mahomet to husband. Now, being in possession of the widow and all her substance & by meanes thereof growen to great wealth, he often fell grouel on the ground, forming and froathing at the mouth (for he had the falling sicknes) and laye in a horrible extasie or distraction of minde, which his wife took very heavily and cursed her fortune, in that shee had so lothsomely matched her selfe. Hee therefore to appease her griefe and to make her from great agonie to leape to sobaine ioye, tolde her that the same happened vnto him by the operation of the Spirite of God himselfe, who appeared vnto him and revealed certaine things, which he should pronounce and shewe to the people, touching the lawe of Moses and of Christ. For (quod he) our mortall bodies being subiect to corruption are not hable to sustaine and abyde the glorious and glittering sight of God, whereby his bodie was in a manner at such times bereft and seperated from his mind. Which wordes the olde trotte believing, as she that tenderly loued him for his lustie corage and beautifull age, beganne now not to loue him as a husband, but to worship and reuerence him as a holy man and a diuine Propheete highly in Gods fauour, and to blaze his holines abroad among her Companions and Gossippes. In so much that when she dyed, she not onely left him wealthie in goods and possessions (for she made him heyre of all) but also in great veneration and credite among the common people for an opinion of sanctitie which was thought to be in him. For which cause, Buback the chiefest and in greatest authoritie

## Of the Saracen Historie. 5

ritie among all of that parte of Arabie, and of the same Tribe that Mahomet was, gaue his daughter Aisla to him in mariage, when he was but yet thirtie yeres of age. Puffed vp with pryde because of this new affinitie, and for the great abundance of wealth left vnto him by his other wife, he openly professed himselfe to be the messenger of God and a Prophet, and to teach the people a new kind of religion, patched and gathered together out of the erroneous Schismes and hereticall dreames of all Sectes. For he taught and commaunded Circumcision, Baptisme, and abstinence from Swines fleshe & wyne. He instituted a generall fast to be kept one whole month in the yere, and that no meate for that space shoulde be eaten in the day tyme, but onely in the night. He affirmed, that there were but three Prophetes, that is to wit, himself, Moses and Christ, and that Christ was not God, with an innumerable rable of most blasphemous opinions contained in his filthy Alcorane. Which assertions and opinions were of many at the first derided & flouted at, in so much that they accounted him no better the lunatique and distraught of his right wittes. But when that he had perswaded and allured all his Allyantes and the familie of Buback which boze great sway and authoritie, yea and many of the common people also to credite and leane to his Secte, the Magistrates of Mecca, perceiuing that this new dosage and commotion would breede a scab in the common wealth, if the inconuenience like to ensue therby, were not speedily prevented, and the impudencie of the man by rigour repressed, (for he slanderously would inueigh and openly raile vpon Princes) determined with them selues, to lay handes vpon him and to put him to death. Mahomet hauing vnderstanding of their intentes and mindes, fled out of Mecca: whom many of his kinsfolkes, Allies, Friends and Clientes, (who were thoroughly perswaded that he was such a one in dede, as

Alcorane is  
a Booke  
concerning  
Mahomettes  
Law.



## The first Booke

he had professed and woulde seeme to bee) folowed. And from this yere, which was after the Natinitie of our Lorde and Saviour Christ. 593. yeres, the Arabians do reckon their yeres: calling this, the yere of Legira, which is to say the yere of flight or transmigration. Mahomet therefore seeing such a great multitude to fauour and sticke to him, putting more trust in his power then he did befoze, made vnto them an Oracion, in effect as foloweth.

Oracion of  
Mahomet,

How earnest I haue bene and what desire I haue  
alwayes had to proclaim, aduance and publishe that law  
, which hath ben vnto me reuealed by the Archangell and  
, Messenger of Almighty God Gabriel, with commaunde-  
, ment to teach the same to all mortall wyghtes, both God  
, himselfe knoweth and you most deare friendes can wit-  
, nesse. For I neuer spared any labour, neuer refused any  
, danger, neuer any miseries or perillous extremitie,  
, where I thought my painfull trauaile might be auailed  
, ble or rebound to the benefite and soules health of all peo-  
, ple, and where without disturbaunce and molestation I  
, might conueniently execute the charge and office to mee  
, committed and enioyned from the mouth of God. All  
, which I haue done to this ende, that I myght reclayme  
, and call home the people runnyng a stray from their wic-  
, ked wayes, to a holy & sincere integritie of life: and out of  
, the dongeon of Hell, (whither they runne headlonge,)  
, bring them backe into the ioyes of the celestiall King-  
, dome: following herein the steppes and bountifulnes of  
, God him selfe, whose message and ministerie we in earth  
, do execute. Who when as all mankinde thzough Adams  
, transgression and faulte, was forseyted and fallen into  
, the handes of the Denill, yet of his meere mercy vouch-  
, safed to deliuer and saue his people, as befoze he had pro-  
, mised to our father Abraham: that is to wit, by appoynt-  
, ting vnto them a law, whereby they might obtaine ever-  
lasting

## Of the Saracen Historie. 6

lasting lyfe and saluation. And therfore first he sent Mo-  
ses, to lay the first foundations and beginnynges of this  
doctrine, and to call them for feare of euerlastyng payne  
and damnation, to a newnesse and amendment of lyfe.  
But when the Lawe of Moses little profyted that way,  
he sent Iesus Christ, by gentler wayes and meanes to  
allure and wyne them, and to perswade them to lyue in  
the seruice and obedience of God. Now, mankind beeyng  
againe so much depzaued and gone a straie, that there is  
no certaine nor constant Religion among them, no dis-  
cipline, no order nor honest maners, but all out of square  
and forlozne: he hath enioyned me (whom euen from the  
beginning of the world he had made choyse of and prede-  
stinated for that purpose) to this office and function, that  
I should recure extreme euilles with extreme remedies,  
and with fire and sword cut of, all iniquitie and make ha-  
uocke of all them that once should dare to againesay or ope-  
their mouth against this law: & that I should enlarge the  
Kingdome of God & constitute a more sacred & more im-  
periall common wealth on earth, then euer any hath hereto-  
fore been, for who is so blind, which seeth not, that vnlesse  
we (whom God hath appointed to y office) do set to our hel-  
ping handes to redresse these so great mischieses, all man-  
kind shall shortly perishe: for mans nature withoute a  
Lawe (which in so great varietie and licentiousnes of life  
can be none nor stand in any force) must needs most gre-  
uously sinne and offende. But howe shall we make  
and constitute any wholesome Lawe to them that are vn-  
willing to lyue vnder any, and despise all godly order?  
What spightfull reproches and slanderous reproches,  
wee that are carefull and diligent to accomplishe thys  
Commission and commaundemente of Almighty God,  
do sustayne at theyr hands, you most louing friendes and  
companions haue seene, and howe they pursue after vs,  
as after wylde Beastes to haue our innocent bloud.

But



## The first Booke

, But happie are you and blessed, whom God hath chosen  
 , to be as ministers and helpers vnto me in the exploits  
 , and atchieuing of these so great mysteries and affayres,  
 , whose diuine will it is, that you should not only be par-  
 , takers & Cobeires with mee of eternal felicitie in the lyfe  
 , to come, but also here in this world shoulde bee enriched  
 , with great wealth & possessions, the which vndoubtedly if  
 , you shew your selues men and constantly persist in faith  
 , you shall shortly enioy, by subduing innumerable Pati-  
 , ons and conquering most wealthie Countries. For (vn-  
 , doubtedly) it is the good will and pleasure of God, that all  
 , those Countries and heapes of wealth, shall be yours,  
 , which now wicked men, enemies and aduersaries to  
 , this law doe wrongfully possesse. That all these things  
 , shall thus happely succede, both the wickednesse of our  
 , aduersaries, which God will not suffer any longer to es-  
 , cape unpunished, and your trustie ayde and valiauntnes  
 , (most worthy friendes and felowes) yea and the most in-  
 , fallible oracles of Almighty God do put vs in hope most  
 , assured. Wherefoze if you desire to be partakers of the  
 , kingdome of Heauen, and of so great rychesse and glozy  
 , vpon Earth, it is meete and expedient that you all sweare  
 , and do homage vnto me, that must be your Captaine and  
 , Kingleader.

When he had thus made an ende, the chiefe Prin-  
 ces and Rulers of the people and namely Zaid the  
 Sonne of Zuzara, Aomar and all the rest one after an o-  
 ther with their swordes drawen, promised by a soleinne  
 Oth to allowe of none other law, but that which Mahomet  
 should make: in the defence and setting out toberof, they  
 then and there protested, at all assayes when neede should  
 require, to spend their life and bloud. This ended, Maho-  
 met againe commaunding them to keepe silence, kneeled  
 down on his knees a pretie while, as though he had patte-  
 red ouer som mumbling meditatioſ, & afterwards with a  
 loude

## Of the Saracen Historie. 7

loude voyce uttered these wordes folowing.

Now (most couragious champions) make your sel-  
ues readie to battaile loke that you want neither wea-  
pons nor stomacke to wyntne our purpose withall, we  
haue the victorie most sure alreadie in our handes. Be-  
hold the things which you haue often desired and wyshed  
for, Richesse, Glorie, Renowne and perpetual felicitie are  
befoze our eyes. God hath set the befoze you as rewardes  
for your valiant and victorious seruice: your owne vali-  
aunce, the excellencie of the cause, and all the things aboue  
named ought moze to stirre vp your hartes and picke  
you forward then any Oracion that I can make.

After he had thus spoken, he appointed tenne Capi-  
taines ouer the people, chosen out of the noblest in byrth  
and chiefest in dignitie among the rest, and such as were  
allyed vnto him by marriage, and them did he appoint in-  
to Ensignes and Bands. The names of which capitaines  
were these: Vbequar, Omar, Ozmen, Alifric, Talaus,  
Azubeir, Zadin, Zaedine & Abuobeid, & so he marched  
in battail aray toward the Citie of Mecca. The Magistra-  
tes of the Citie vnderstanding thereof, made out a power  
against him, which encounting with Mahomet his Host,  
discomfited and put them all to flight. Wherefoze for the  
space of foure yeres after, Mahomet neuer durst make  
any pzofer to besiege that Citie any moze. Notwithstan-  
ding, he ceased not continually with Oracions in the open  
fieldes and Countrey villages, to moue and stirre vp  
the people to sedition, by meanes whereof he also caused  
certain vpzozes and tumultes among the Scenices, which  
acknowledged for their Lordes and Soueraignes the  
Romane Emperours. Then once againe he marched  
with a freshe supply of moe Souldiours against Mecca,  
where he was againe repulsed and myssed his purpose:  
and two yeres after he againe the thirde time attempted  
the same and sped as he had done twise befoze. In this

C.

meane



## The first Booke

meane while, Heraclius the Emperour perceiuing the  
youthfull sort of the Scenites to begin mutyne & seditiō,  
for þ better quieting therof, dispatched & sent a great nu-  
ber of thē (vnder the coulour of warfare) into far Coun-  
tries. Where raigned at þ time in Persia a King named  
Cosdroes, who had married þ daughter of Maurice þ Em-  
perour called Marie, at whose instāce & persuasiō he was  
contented to be Baptized: and so long as his father in law  
liued, vsed himself most friendly toward all þ Christians  
& was vnto them very curteous & liberall. But after that  
he was traiterously slaine by Phocas, who succeeded hym  
in the Empire, Cosdroes detesting þ disloyal treacherie &  
falschod of them which had elected such a wicked man,  
as Phocas, polluted with the bloudie murther of his liege  
Lorde and Soueraigne to be their Prince, reputing them  
as Accessories to the same horrible acte and conspiracie,  
prepared a great armie at the instigation and procure-  
ment of his wife to reuenge the death of his said father in  
Law. And the more was he emboldened so to do, because  
he wel ynough perceiued Heraclius (for Phocas was slaine  
with in a while after) to be altogether lulled in securitie  
and to lye quietly at home without attempting any thing  
against the Barbarous Nations which with fire, & sword  
on every side despoiled Italie and the Romane Empyre.  
Whereupon with a huge and populous armie he enua-  
ded the frontiers of the Empyre, and subduyng by syne  
force all the South partes of Asia, entred into Egypt and  
tooke Alexandria: and yet not contented, went further  
and conquered Carthage, with all Affrica. And when he  
had taken good order for the fortifying of that Countrey  
with strong garrisons, he rettyed backe to Alexandria,  
wasting Syria and Iurie. Heraclius being not a litle net-  
teled with these iniurious dealings of Cosdroes, sent vnto  
to him for peace: which when he coulde not obtaine at his  
handes, rather enforced and dyuen by necessitie, then  
drawing

## Of the Saracen Historie. 8

byatone to it by any goodwyl in himselfe leuied an army,  
 in tohich he also had retayned the Arabian Scenites, with  
 whom some say that Mahomet was, and that in a battell  
 wherein Coldroes side was discomfited, he was soze  
 wounded by a common Souldier named Turcus. And  
 when Heraclius had many times ioyned battell with  
 Coldroes, and in diuers conflicts put him to the foyle, at  
 length he so much crushed his power y<sup>e</sup> he was glad to fly  
 beyonde the riuier Tigranes, where he p<sup>ro</sup>claymed his  
 yonger sonne called Medarses, Successour and heyer ap-  
 paraunt to his Crowne, dishereting and not regardinge  
 his elder sonne Sirochis, a younge Gentleman of great  
 hope and towardnesse. Whose heart not patiently b<sup>ro</sup>ok-  
 yng this contumelious and vnnaturall dealyng, secretlye  
 conspyred with Heraclius, to betray both his Father and  
 his Brother Medarses, (whom his father had so vnkind-  
 ly preferred befoze him) with al their riches and p<sup>ri</sup>nce-  
 ly furniture. And p<sup>ro</sup>misid further, to discompe and re-  
 moue out of all the Romane P<sup>ro</sup>uinces such Garrisons  
 as his Father had placed there, conditionallye that hee  
 might enioye the Kingdome of Persia, and a firme peace  
 infringible to be kept betwene both Empires. In this  
 poynte, Heraclius beyng a Ch<sup>ri</sup>stian P<sup>ri</sup>nce was no  
 moze ashamed to deliuer the Kingdome of Persia to a  
 wicked and rank rebellious person, Trayto<sup>r</sup> to his owne  
 Father, and Brother (being now th<sup>ro</sup>ughlye weakned  
 with the losses of so many vnluckye battailes, and now  
 most certainly in his owne hands, specially the King him-  
 self trusting to his leggs and fleeing, if he coulde haue bled  
 his good fortune & victo<sup>ry</sup> when it was offred vnto him)  
 and to buy a dishonorable cowardly peace, by consenting  
 to such a wicked dede: then y<sup>e</sup> wicked Barbarian & disloy-  
 al ponker was, by such vndue & detestable meanes to pul  
 y<sup>e</sup> kingdom frō thē to himselfe. Such desire of p<sup>ri</sup>ncipalitie  
 reigned in y<sup>e</sup> one, & so great loue of slothful idenes in the  
 other.

Cij.

Coldroes



# The first Booke

Horrible  
and vnnatu-  
rable mur-  
der.

First cause  
of grudge  
betweene the  
Christians  
and Saracens

Cosdroes therfoze and Medarles with their wiues being apprehended and brought backe from whence they were fledde, were cast into prison, and within a while after, by the commaundement of Syrochis, both put to death. In whom appeared a cruell example of Fortunes variable-  
nesse. A goodly president and warning for Princes, to marke and consider vpon, in nominating their Success-  
soure, that they at no hand reiectinge the stout and valy-  
aunt, elect and chouse tender weaklynges and effiminate  
Meycokes. For nothing so soone moueth a noble and firc  
heart to furious impacience and indignation, as (beyng  
stout and couragious) to be reiected and not accompted of,  
among his owne friends. All things in Persia by means  
of this League appeased and set in order, and Syria and  
Ierusalem with the other Prouinces restozed to the Ro-  
mane Empire, Mahomet accompanied with a pompous  
traine, met with Heraclius in his returne whomwarde  
from these warres, and of hym desired some Countrey  
for hym, and his Souldiers to inhabite in, which sute and  
request at the Emperours hands he obtayned. Not long  
after, it happened that when the Souldiours were payde  
their wages, the Arabians reppned, and founde them-  
selues agraued, that they were defrauded and cut thozte  
of their due stipende and ordinarie allowance. Whiche  
comming to the eares of the chiefe Paymaster, he moze  
rashly and arrogantly, then wisely and consideratly an-  
swered, that there was skantlie innough to pay the Ro-  
man and Greeke souldiours, much lesse for such a rascal  
company of Dogs as they were. Which words with-  
in a while after, were almost the subuersion and ruine of  
all Christendome, insomuch that euen tyll this day they  
beare a grudge of reuengment for this iniurie in their  
minde against vs. Such a heape of mischienes many  
times doth the ouerthwartinge wilfulnesse of one rashe  
person breede, speciallie when stout and warlyke fellows  
thynke

## Of the Saracen Historie. 9

thought themselves apparantly injured. For the Arabi-  
 ans swelling with anger, and incensed with fell disdain  
 for this reprochfull and open contumely, departed into  
 Syria, and ioyned themselves to Machomettes traine and  
 faction. Wherat Mahomet glad to see his power thus in-  
 creased, went the fourth time against Mecca, determi-  
 ning with might and maine to besiege it. The Magi-  
 strats of Mecca perceived well ynough his purpose and  
 what he pretended, wherfore with greater preparation  
 and stronger power then before, y whole body almost of  
 the Citie bent themselves to repulse his innasion. Be-  
 twene whome there was at the river of Bredine a sore  
 and terrible conflict, wherein Mahomet got the victorie,  
 and slue of the nobyltie and chief Citizens of Mecca (be-  
 side a very great number of the Communalty) three hun-  
 dred persons: in somuch that at this battell the whole no-  
 bility of Mecca were in maner all slayne. And so Ma-  
 homet like a triumphant Conquerour entred, and tooke  
 possession of the faire Citie of Mecca, fortifying the same  
 with a garrison of his owne appoyntment, & after, depar-  
 tyng with his army thence, he layd siege to Hunaimum,  
 and wanne it, devidinge the spoyle thereof (which was  
 very great) among his Souldiers. After that, he besieged  
 Tarsus, which Citie after he had all in vaine battred the  
 space of a whole month, he raysed his siege, and retour-  
 ned into the maigne Countrey of Arabia and tooke firste  
 Itraripe otherwise called Ietripe, and after that Medina  
 a Part towne well peopled with wealthy Jewes. And  
 grauntynge the spoyle thereof to his Souldiours, he ran-  
 scaked and made banocke of the towne: but as for all the  
 Jewes which partly in y citie and partly in other places of  
 Arabi (because they being skilfull in y diuine law greatly  
 withstood his attempts & proceedings) he hated deadly, & in  
 the ende in .xi. battailes them vtterlye vanquished, and  
 destroyed. Thence retourninge to Itraripe, he appointed

Mahomet  
 beginneth  
 to ruffle.



## The first Booke

Azeib his Lieutenant of Mecca, who entred into the Citie with a great route of Arabians or Saracens. For Mecca then was and yet is, as well because of an opinion of great annicientie (for it is thought to be builded by Ismael or else by Abraham himselfe) as also for, the bignesse of the Citie and resorte of people most noble and famous. When againe within the same yere, discharging the said Azeib of his office, he appointed Mead the Sonne of Gadel Lieutenant of the same Citie in his rounne: with this commaundement, that after Mahomet his death he should defend and maintayne his lawe, and diligently looke that the same should of the people be reverently observed, and so in the meane season to minister iudgement and execution of his lawes to the Mecchyans. All things in this sort being set in good frame and order, he removed to Tambicum, and there buylded a Temple, which is to be seene at this day. Thence he sent an armie under the conduct of Zalid and Malid two of his chiefe Captaines agaynst Alozaid the Sonne of Almathaliph, King of Aliendel, whom by force of armes they overcame, and made tributarie. And thus all Arabia being brought in subiection, he commaunded Eubocar with parte of his Hoste to go to Mecca (he himself lying still at Itraripe) and charged him that he should leane neuer a mothers Sonne a liue in it, nor suffer any forayner to enter saving only such as willingly would obey his Lawe and beleene his doctrine. For his meaning and entent was, (as afterwarde he brought it to passe) that Mecca should be the Metropolitane Citie of his religiō and Empire. And thus within a short space, Mecca was replenished wpth none but Mahometanes. And not onely Mecca but all Arabia besides (as they are people by nature lyght of beleefe and newfangled) embraced his pestilent errors. And from that tyme, all they whych yelded themselues to that Secte, were called by the name of Saracens, both because that error sprong up and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 10

and was first begonne by the Saracens, and also so; that, Mahomet perswaded them that all the promyses, in the Scriptures promysed to the Seede of Abraham, belonged & appertayned to them. Weyng puffed by with arrogance by reason of thys good successe in hys affayres, he sent Ambassades to Kinges and Princes nere adioyning, aduysing them to embzace his Religion; and vnto them addressed hys letters, sealed wpth a Signet of Syluer, wherein were engrauen these wordes: Mahomet the messenger of God: namely to the Emperour of Constantinople, to the King of Persia, the King of Egypte and to other Princes. Afterwarde he created foure Tribunes or chiefe Capitaynes in warres commonly called Armyalles, whiche had euerie one vnder them many Deticapitaines and Centurions: and these foure he woulde commonly vse to call the sharpe Swordes of God, and them he commaunded to goe into the foure partes of the worlde, euerie one by him selfe a leuell waye, and to kyll all suche as repugned hys Law. There names were, Ebubezer, Omar, Ozmen and Ali the Sonne of his vncle Salutelib, vnto whom he also ioyned in mariage Fatema, hys daughter in Lawe by hys first wife.

Of these foure, Ebubezer, called of some Vbequar and of some other Buback or Eubocar, father in Law to Mahomet took hys voyage to Palestina, and there layde Siege to a certayne towne called Muchea, the Capitayne whereof was one Theodorus Begarus who had the rule of the towne in the behalfe and name of Cesar. Who gathering together his power, stoutly set vpon the Saracens with such valiant courage and force, that many of them beyng slayne, the residue like fall fellows ranne away. At which time, the thirde Ides of March, Mahomet dyed, in the yeere of our saluation. 637.

When



## The first Booke

When he had reigned tenne yeres, in the house of Aissa his wife, in the Citie Medina, and in the very same bedde wherein he was wont to sleepe and take his rest. His bodie without any princely furniture or ceremonial solemnitie, was shyned and lapped in a white sheete thre tymes double, and so beyng chested in an yron coffin, was after a homely sort buried: where afterwarde his kinsfolkes and Allyes edified a sumptuous and magnificall Temple of bricke worke, and arched the same wyth a vault so pargetted with Lodestones (whose nature is to draw yron vnto it) that the yron Coffyn wherein Mahomet his body was inclosed, was drawen vp, even vnto the toppe of the Church and there hangeth. For which cause that place is yet with great deuotion and Pilgrimage worshipped of all the East. They say that while he was banished his Countrey, going once on Pilgrimage into Mauritania Tingitana, he crossed the Seas ouer into Spaine. But when he vnderstode that Bishop Isidore laide waite to haue caught him, he immediatly shifted thence and conueyed himselfe away. Upon his death bed, he appointed Ali his sonne in lawe to be his Successour and the Caliph (that is to saye the chiefe Prelate) of his Secte and vnto him together with his daughter, he committed the whole charge of his body. But Eubocar his father in law stopped them a tyme, in that matter, alledging that so much as Mahomet decessed in his house, and by his only meanes had stepped vp to such credite, welth, estimation and government, as being bolstered, maintained and preferred by his countenance and friendship, none other by good reason: was fitter to succede then he that had bene his chiefe supporter. Against whom Ali durst not once open his mouth to reply: because Eubocar himselfe was a man of great power and also his kinsmen Omar and Ozmen took part with him, whiche were men galliaunt and factious, whose wordes would be heard and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 11

and whose commaundements befoze his, would be obeyed. Who soasmuch as by god right they iudged the kingdome to appertayne vnto them, being Coadiutours to Mahomet in the exployte of all his affaires, had leifer haue Eubocar succede, beinge olde & their nere kinsman then Ali being young and in his lusty yeeres, who might perchaunce raigne so long, that no hope euer to enioy the kingdome by the order and course of nature shoulde be left to them, and also soz that he was nothinge of kin vnto any of them. Wherefoze Eubocar was made high Bishoppe of Mahomet his Sect: who immediatly after his creation, departinge out of his owne Territozies with a great Armye, discomfited the Roman Garrisons, and retourning into Arabie with victo2ye, dyed, not without some suspition of poyson, when he had raigned not full ye th2e yeeres, and without any pzincely funeralles buried nere to Mahomet. After him succeded Homar, who (as we befoze shewed) was his kinsman. He subdued Bosra the chief citie of all Arabie with many mo, and conquered all the country as farre as Gabata. At which successe of the Saracens, the Emperour Heraclius greatly stozming sent his Brother Theodorus with a great army against them. Who encountring in a bloody battell with Homar, was ouercome and fled to Emessa. Heraclius hearing tydings of this heauy chaunce, furnished out Baanes with a greater power against them, who incamped himself nere Emessa. Where the Saracens settinge vpon hym with great foze and violence, were by hym banquished, inso much that they were fayne to trudge into the bozders of Damasco, and lodging their campe by the banke side of the riuer Bardanes made such outragious roades and incursions into the Countraye adioynynge, that no man was hable to represse their furze noz withstand their invasion. Wherefoze Heraclius mistrustinge any god successe in the pursute of further warres, and havyng great

J



## The first Booke

great diffidence in his owne power, fearynge also his owne lyfe and safetie if hee should any longer stay within that Province and Countrey ( for hee was at that time in Hierusalem, out of which, since the League and composition made with Persia hee had not departed ) tooke awaye with hym all the pzeious Shyines and sumptuous Ornamentes of the Temple of Hierusalem, least the barbarous Enemies should despoyle them, and retourned agayne to Constantinople.

The next yere, the Saracenes layde siege to the Citie Damasco, wherewith Baanes (who defended the Citie with the sayd Emperours Garrisons) being greatly mooved, desired Theodorus Sacellarius (Lieutenaunt for the Emperours Maiestie in Assyria) to come to ayde and assist hym. Which hee making hast to doe, was by the way surprisid by the Saracenes and discomfited.

The Souldiers vnder Baanes, not willing to serue vnder a Capitayne of small credit and countenaunce, but rather desirous to haue a Governour of most high power and authoritie, saluted hym their Emperour. But they which came with Sacellarius and escaped the handes of the Saracenes in their lasse bickeringe, willynge to keepe their true allegiaunce to Heraclius, departed thence, and would not in any wyse consent to the depriuation and deposing of their lawfull Prince and Emperour. The number of Baanes his Souldiours was 4000. And Sacellarius had almoste as many.

The Saracenes hauing intelligence of this variance and deuision among the Romane Souldiers, discamped from the place where they were lodged, and set typon them. The bickering was soze on both sides for a while, but (the Wind blowyng ful in the faces of the Roman Host which in that dye and sandre Countrey raysed by the dust) they neither could see their Enemies, nor skantly fetch

## Of the Saracen Historie. 12

fetch their breath. Which oportunitie the Saracenes not neglectinge, but takeyng the same to their most advantage and cominoditie, put the Emperials to flyght, in which chafe, they fleeing through thicke and thinne by dangerous wayes and deepe places did almost all perishe and were drowned in the River Ermeta.

Which luckie victoꝝ so puffed by the haultie mindes of the pronde Saracenes that they advaunced theyꝝ Armye agaynste Damasco, and wynnynge that Citty, subdued and brought al Phoenicia vnder their subiection. Then they made preparation to goe into Egipte, whiche hearynge the Romanes, who were Lordes and possessours of that Province, appoynted Cyrus Bysshoppe of Alexandria to be Chieuetayne: who sending a solemne Ambassade to the Saracenes foꝝ peace, obtained it vppon condition that he should pay vnto them yeerely a Tribute of .200000. Crownes. And so foꝝ the space of thre yeres they were quiet and receiued no kind of molestation at their handes.

Damasco  
wonne by  
Saracenes

But the Emperour Heraclius vnderstandyng this geare and thinkyng this composition greatly sounded to his dishonour, sent foꝝ Cyrus home agayne to Constantynople, and in his steede made Emanuel an Armenian, ruler ouer EGYPT, who flatlye and playnely denyed the payment of anye money, befoze by Cyrus promysed to the Saracenes.

Wherefoze in great displeasure they inuaded Egipt with a bygge power, and Emanuel with a small compaignie foꝝ his sauetie wente to Alexandria. But Heraclius to late now, and to hys cosse beyng taught, that promyse and faith oughte to be kepte and perfourmed euen to the Enemies, when hee well sawe that hee had not strength ynough, to match in battayle against such mighty foes, sent Cyrus agayne to the

F ij

Saracenes,



## The first Booke

Saracens, to thende ( if it were possible ) to appease theyr mindes, and to cause them to remoue their armies out of Egypt, and to be contented to stande to the first league and composition. To whom, when he with all diligence endeouored to persuaue them to renue the former composition of peace, the Saracens propounded this question by way of answer to his demaunde: whether he coulde deuour and digest a marble piller? No, (said Cyrus) it is not possible so to do: no moze (quod they) can we departe out of Egypt. And so expulsiug all the Romane garrisons, they brought that Province into their owne subiection. After this, Homar marched with a populous arinie toward Hierusalem, and strongly besieged it on euery side. And lying besoze it two yeres, at length toke it by Surrendrie. After the wyning whereof, he easely subdued all Assyria. Afterwarde he sente one of his Capitaines whose name was Iaid with a great power into Mesopotamia, ouer which Countrie was chiefe Ruler vnder the Emperour one Iohn surnamed Catea, whose chiefe abiding place and Seate was at Ozroen. This Iohn promised to paye to Iaid yereley a thousande poundes of Golde so that he woulde retyze backe and not enter into Mesopotamia.

Hierusalem  
wonne.

And remouyng to Edessa, sent vnto hym accordyng to his promise, (the Emperour not knowyng thereof) the pencion due for the fyrst yere. For which fact when Heraclius was geuen to vnderstande, he sente hym into exile, and in his roume substituted and made ruler ouer Mesopotamia one Ptolomzus maister of the hozlemen. Iaid as soone as hee knewe hereof, passed the Ryuer Euphrates and laying Siege to Edessa, tooke it, then hee spoyled Constantia and Bara, and subdued the whole Province of Mesopotamia. And making Muauias his Lieutenaunt of Egypt and all the other Provinces lying betwene the Riuer Nilus and Euphrates (in which coun-  
try

## Of the Saracen Historie. 13

they he builded and fortifified a little towne named Cayre neere the place where Memphis once stode ) he hymselfe retourned into Arabia.

In Persia, as befoze we haue shewed, king Syroches raigned after the deathe of his father Cosdroes, who also dying within a yéere after, his Sonne Adhiseris enioyed the Diademe and succeeded in the crowne: who within a while after being slaine, the Persians created Hormisdas their king, who in a skirmishe against the Saracens was also slaine. And so the Persians vanquished in battaile, lost not only their Empire but their name also: for they were after ward in stéede of Persians called Saracens. After the conquest of Persia, Homar registred by his victorious Gestes and how many nations he had bzought vnder his subiection. From thencefozth he dwelled in Hierusalem, & there builded a temple for Mahomet, where after ward in the tenth yéere of his raigne, he was slaine of one of his owne folkes a Persian named Almigira, as he was stouping downe to pray. This Homar was a warlike and a fierce man as may well appéere by his sundry battailes, he himself in person being pzesent, and by the innumerable sozte of Prouinces by him subdued. He was no lesse wise then balliant in all his attemptes. He caused y wzittings of Mahomet to be wzitten and sozted into one volume, shewing most noble liberalitie towarde them that trauailed and tooke paynes therein. For Mahomet beyng one altogether vnskillfull and ignozaunt of learning, made no Booke hymselfe: but as euerie thing came into hys remembzaunce, so he commaunded the same confusely to be wzitten in a Schedule by one or other of hys familier friendes.

Wherby it happened, that he sozgetting such things as befoze he had caused to be wzitten, oftentimes spake contraries. This man also enacted a lawe, that in all their Temples ( which in theyz language they call Meschita)



## The first Booke

common supplications should be made during the whole moneth of September, and after the same ended, the whole volume of Mahomet hys lawe shoulde be openly redde to the people.

He was tall of stature, broune coloured, balde headed, thinne bearded and the same somewhat enclining to whitenes, and was buried nere to Mahomet. But befoze he dyed, feeling himselfe so soze wounded that he despaired of recouerie, he appoynted fo2 his Successour Ozmen: who also had been a great furtherer and sauourer to Mahomet in all matters, and had twyse bene his Sonne in Lawe. Fo2 he maryed his two daughters, which both decessed wythout chyldzen, in the life time of Mahomet, which dignitie he chiefly attained thzough gistes and bziberie. Fo2 receyuing at the handes of Homars Treasurer all hys money and goodes, hee frankly distributed bothe it and all that hee himselfe had lefte vnto him by his Parentes among his Souloiors.

Ozmen therfoze beeyng inuested the thyzde Bishop after Mahomet, sente the next yere following a bygge armye vnder the conducte of Hucha into Affrica, agaynst the Lorde Gregorie, chiefe and supzeme gouernour of all that Prouince. He beeyng ouercome in battayle, and Carthage also subuerted, he vnyted all that Prouince to hys other Saracenicall Dominions. But fearyng to be surprised and taken nappynge wyth some todayne Alarum out of Europa, if they shoulde lye long in Carthage, they dislodged thence and remoued to Tunnice, a Citie standing within the Baye of Golet, and there rousting themselues fo2 a season, greatly enlarged the same.

But afterwarde receyuing a commaundement from Ozmen that they shoulde not dwell in any Port towne o2 other places vppon the Sea Coast, (because he had taken suche agrement and order wyth the Emperour, they

## Of the Saracen Historie. 14

they departed five and thirtie myles from the Sea and aboute a hundreth from Tunice where they buylded themselues a Citie called Cairoan.

After this, in the thirde yere of thys mans raygne, Muauias (who as wee shewed befoze was Lieutenant of Egypte) wyth a Hoste of a thousande and seauen hundreth (or as some saye) wyth seauen hundreth Shippes onely, arryued in Cypres, and takyng by force the noble Citie Constantia, spoyled the whole Islande. But beeyng certefyed that Carcozir one of the Emperour Constans hys Capitaynes, was commyng agaynst hym with a greate flete, for feare of further harme, he departed thence and planted hys Siege befoze another Citie in the same Islande named Aradum, where he nothinge preuayled. Seeynge therefore hys purpose to quayle, hee broughte backe hys Hoste to Winter in Damasco.

In the meane whyle Ozmen caused the odde papers and Schedules of Mahomet (befoze by Homars procurement collected together) to be brought into a better order and to be deuided into Chapters, makyng of them a Booke whiche is called the Alcorane, wherin all the opinions and Institutions of Mahomettes Sect are contained and at large specified.

The nexte Spring after, Muauias with a greater Hoste then befoze, arryued in Cypres, and assaulted the Citie of Aradum, which at length after many battyes he wanne: and permitting the Inhabytantes to go whither they woulde wythout hurte or bodely harme, he rased the Citie to the grounde and layde all the Islande waste and left it dispeopled. At the same tyme also, another army of Saracens vnder the conducte of Busurre, inuaded Isauria and spoyled the whole Countrey wyth fyre and sworde, and returned home from thence with five thousand Prisoners.

After



# The first Booke

A valaunt  
enterprife.

After these so many ouerthrowes and miserable discom-  
fitures receaued, Constance Caesar desired a truce for .ij.  
yeeres of Muauias : which beinge not obtayned, while  
Muauias prepared a great pany at Tripolis a Citie of  
Syria, to invade the Provinces and Territozies belong-  
ing to the Romane Empire, his purpose by the worthy-  
nesse and valaunt demeanure of two Brothers was for  
a litle while frustrate. Who breaking open the prisons,  
wherein a great number of Christians were, set them al  
at libertie : insomuch that they sobenly geuing an onset  
on the Saracens, killed a maruelous number of them, and  
putting the rest to flight, with victoꝛye ran to their ships,  
and takeing so many of them as woulde serue to trans-  
port them, they set the reste on fire, and came saue into  
Thracia.

Alamenta-  
ble slaugh-  
ter.

But Muauias nothing dismayed with this mischance  
and ouerthrow, prepared a greater navy, and furnished  
the same with all habilimentes and Munitions ne-  
cessarye, with whom he landed at Phœnicie a Haven of  
Lycia, where Constance with his pany laye : and ge-  
uing the charge vpon him, made such a slaughter of the  
Romanes, that the Sea was red with the blood of them  
that were slayne. Constance disguising himselfe in the  
habite and apparrell of a poore man, fled in a small ship  
with a fewe others in his company to Constantinople :  
Which victoꝛy set Muauias in such a boogh and conceipt,  
that he thought nothing invincible, or able to withstande  
hym. Where vpon he tooke Rhodes, and pulled downe  
the huge Image of the Sun called Colossus Solis, which  
Chares was in making (as Plinie sayth) .xij. yeeres, and  
the charges thereof owelue to thre hundred Talentes.  
The baste of this Image being bought by a certen Jew  
of Emessa, was somuch as nine hundred Camels coulde  
carie

Of our en-  
glish money  
that Sum  
a mouneth  
to. 40000 li.

The Saracenes carped away thence not onely this I-  
mage

## Of the Saracen Historie. 15

image which was in height .70. Cubites: but innumerable others. For Plinie writeth that in that Ile there were beside this Colosse of the Sunne. 73 thousand Statues or Images, and a hundredeth lesse Colosses. Hauinge spoiled Rhodes, they cut their course alonge by the Sea Agæum, and plagued the Cyclades with lyke calamitie. At this time also laid Generall of an other army of Saracenes, entred into the borders of Armenia, and wasted al, farre and nere tyll he came to Mount Caucasus.

And Muauias retourning from Rhodes, furnished a paye with all thinges necessary to invade Sicile, which wasted and ruyinated the Countrey with Sword and fire without mercy, tyll Olimpius the Exarche of Italy (for so was he that had the gouernaunce ouer Italy at y<sup>e</sup> time for the Emperour of Constantinople called) encountringe with them in a bloudye Conflicte, with much effusion of Christian blood discomfited and expelled them. In which battell he so eagrelly fought, & was so soze wearied that he fell sicke and shortly after dyed.

Muauias himselfe leuying an Armye by land, conducted them into Cappadocia to bessege Cæsarea the head Citie of that Prouince. But befoze he could atchieue any notable exploit worthie to be remembred, hearings that Ozmen the Caliph was dead, in hope to be his Successour, retpered with his Host back agayne. This Ozmene in y<sup>e</sup> twelfth yere of his Pontificall dignytie being in his owne house beset and besieged with a company of Saracenes which would haue had Ali to be Caliph, flue hymselfe, because he would not fall into their handes. He by chaunce lost the King of Mahomet, which all the Caliphes befoze hym woze: and caused an other to be made of Silver, wherein by his commaundement were ingrauen these wordes: O PERTINACES, O POENITENTES. He was white of coulour, graue and courteous of visage, a long Beard and of a meane stature high-  
G
lye



## The first Booke

lye and dearelye beloued was he of the common people, both before and after he embraced this Secte, and gotte very great wealth by Marchaundize.

Notwithstanding he was alwayes verie lyberall, yea rather magnificent and honourable, and (as we haue shewed) disbursed and gaue byzibes largelye to the Souldiours that hee might obtayne the Pontificate. He liued .lxxxvij. yeres and was buryed in the night without any Funerall pompe because he due himselfe.

Therefore after his death there arose great contention amonge the Saracenes, aboute the election of a newe Bysshoppe. Some woulde haue Ali to succede hym, some Muamad sonne to Ozmen, and some Muauias. But Ali raysed warres againste Muamad, and preynted agaynst hym, so that he was installed and made Bysshoppe by all mens consent: sauyng onelye Muauias. Who reposinge greate truste and confidence in the Egyptian and Assyrian Souldiours, (whose prowesse and magnanymy he had sufficientlye tryed aforesime in so manye Battayles) made sharpe warres agaynst hym, colourablye pretendinge that hee toke the same in hande onely to reuenge the death of Ozmen.

When both the Armyes were come to the Riuer Euphrates, Muauias hauinge moze skyll in warlyke pollices, and also hauinge olde beaten Souldiours vnder hym, so fortifyed and entrenched his Campe nere to the Riuer side, and the Citie Babylon, that neyther coulde he be inforced by his aduersarye to fight vnlesse he would hymselfe, and also his Armye shoulde not be destitute of water, (whereof in that Region there is great scarcitie) nor yet be vnprovided of victayles, and moreover needed not to feare anye Alarmes behynde at their backes. Whereas in the meane whyle Ali

## Of the Saracen Historie. 16

his Armye, was extremely pinched for lacke of water. And so for the space of eleuen Monethes keeping his Souldiours within the Trenches of his Campe, he werped his Enemye and lyngered the tyme onely now and then with Skirmishes, tyll at length by the intercession of certayne Priestes and others skilfull in the Lawe of Mahomet, order was taken betwene them, that the whole cause shoulde be decided by the iudgement and awarde of two olde men.

On Ali his side was chosen Alascates, and for Muauias parte Alascius. These two comminge to a Colone called Algendel, to sit vpon this waightie matter of both their tytles, the one thought it necessarye that Ali shoulde be disgraced and deposed from his pontificall dignitie, and the other stiffe helde opinion that he was a man moste worthy for the office. Thus pleading to and froe, neyther absolutely determyninge nor fully concludinge any attonement, Ali and Muauias retourned agayne either of them to his owne Campe. And neuer ceased with often Skirmishing to molest and kill one an other, spoyle lyege and wastenge one an others Countries till at length Ali in a certayne Temple nere Cufa a Citie of Arabie was by the insidious driftes and Ambushes of Muauias slayne, and in the same buried, for which cause the place at this daye is called Massadale which is as much to saye, as the house of Ali. In his Kinge hee had this inscription: Corde syncero Deum Dominum veneror. Hee was shorthe and lowe of stature, his Bearde was sode and longe, his Armes and Legges full of haire, and in his goynge neuer lyfted vp his Eyes.

After Ali was dead, the Citizens of Cufa and Aracha created Alhaccem (his eldest Sonne by his wife Fatema, the Daughter of Mahomet) Bysshope: a man in all poyntes of bodelye feacture and comelye



## The first Booke

shape, resembling his Graundfather Mahomet. He with  
 an armie, marched against Muauias, but when both the  
 Hostes were ordered in battaile araise readie to geue the  
 onset, and the botward of the one standing full against the  
 fronte of the other, whether it were because he feared the  
 doubtfull hazard of battaile or else (as some do write) that  
 he was overcome with the goodnes and integrite of na-  
 ture, butwilling that so great effusion of bloud and destruc-  
 tion of men shoulde be made for his sake, he voluntarilie  
 went and submitted himselfe to Muauias, acknowledging  
 him to be his Superiour. Weyng thus reconciled one to  
 the other, they went both together to Cusa, and there fin-  
 ding great store of money and treasure, they departed  
 thence to Ierib, where Muauias with his owne handes  
 crowned Alhaccem with the royall Diademe and called  
 him King, because he well knew that he shoulde not live  
 long. For within five monethes after his Coronation he  
 dyed being poisoned by the same Muauias. His Poesie  
 engrauen in his Signet was: Solus Deus potens est.  
 Thus Muauias hauing now dispatched and ridde out of  
 the way all his aduersaries, reigned alone. Hauing thus  
 set his affaires in order, he invaded the frontiers of y<sup>e</sup> Ro-  
 mane Empire. But Constantius sendyng vnto him for  
 peace, had the same graunted, conditionally that Constan-  
 tius should pay vnto him euerie day ten poundes of golde,  
 and a Slave with a Horse. At this time Damascus was  
 the chiefe Seate and Metropolitane Citie of the Saraceni-  
 call Emprye. But in this their so great successe and fel-  
 citie, there arose dissensions among themselves for they  
 religion, by reason of the varietie and repugnance of Ma-  
 homettes scrowles and Schedules. The Persians, being  
 (as we haue shewed) now made Saracens, helde opinions  
 muche differing from them that folowed Homars Alco-  
 rane in Syria. Wherefore Muauias with his power spee-  
 ding him into Persia, suppressed that Sect and established  
 his

Peace deare  
 ly bought.

# Of the Saracen Historie. 17

his owne faction, which boze al the swaie in Syria, and appointed an order, that the Souldiours of his Secte should haue allowance of two hundzeth pence by the day, whereas the Persians had but only thirtie. Then innuading Cilicia, he spoyled all the Countrey with sword and fire.

And when he was retourned to Damascus, Sapor King of all suche places in Persia as yet acknowledged the Romane Empire, now traiterously revolting from the Emperour, sent vnto Muauias, one Sergius master of the horsemen, with request, that he would ayde him to the Emperre of Constantinople. Who beyng now come to Muauias his presence and shewing the effect of his Commission for which he was sent, beholde, there came also an Ambassadour from the Emperour to Muauias, whose name was Andrew, promising vnto him in Casars behalfe large and ample rewardes, so that he would not aide nor further the proceedings of Sapor. Muauias hearing both their errandes and their offers, answered: that for as much as he accompted both of them for no better then his enemies, he would ayde and take part with him that would geue most. And so Sergius geuing more then Andrew would, Muauias entered into a league with him. Andrew taking hys leane, in hys waye homeward in intercepted Sergius as he was retourning into Persia and hanged him on a gybet: hoping and persuading himselfe, that now the partie to whom the promise was made beyng ridde out of the way, Muauias with a safe conscience (retaining & keeping still the rewardes already to him giue) might and would dodge & finde cauillations with Sapor & he was discharged of his promise. But there was more constancie & faithfulness in the barbarous Infidel, then the Greekes wit could conceiue or foresee. For Muauias, meaning to keepe touch and promise inuolably, sent a bande of Arabians to ayde hym vnder the conduct of Fadala, who being kyled by a fall from his horse, he appointed

Lustre als  
lowe, on-  
ly to allure  
men to his  
Sect.  
Ambitious  
Traitor.

He hath  
most money  
shall haue  
most friends  
shippe.



## The first Booke

in his stede his Sonne Iazid Capitaine for that expedition: by which power and armie, Chalcedonia was miserablie afflicted and Armaria a Citie of Phrygia taken: and leauyng in it a garrison of fyue thousand Saracens (because Winter appoched) they retourned with their Hoste into Syria.

In this meane season the Emperour althoughe Winter were now at hand and all places couered with Snow sent Andrew with a small crew of Souldiours to expulse the garrisons of the Saracens and to recouer Armaria. The Greeques therfoze sodainely scaled the walles and brake into the Citie without any resistance, and to reuenge their many ouerthrowes and discomfitures before time receyued slew all the Saracens within, who suspecting no suche thing, kepte within their houses, cowering ouer the fire in that extreme colde weather. After this victorie gotten by the Imperialles, Constantius beeyng now come into Italic out of Grecia, took his progresse straight towarde Rome, where he taking a diligent view of all thinges, fell to the spoyle, and caried away wyth him all such auncient monumentes and woorkes as were of Marble or brasse, and generally whatsoeuer myght delight and content the eye, and lading his Shippes therewith, sent it firste vnto Naples and from thence to the Citie Syracuse in Sicilie: so that he tooke awaye from the Citie moze ornaments in seven dayes space, then so many barbarous Nations had done in CClviij. yeres before, for there were so many since the first inclinatio of the Romane Emperre. During his abode there, leauyng his life effeminately & libidinously and loking to receiue the subtile and tribute that he had with much rigour and crueltie exacted and assailed the Cities and Islandes of Italic to pay, in so much that many were spoyled not only of their goods but also of their wiues and children, he was by his owne people slaine and murdered. After who succeeded

Rome spoiled.

Emperour murdered.

ceded

## Of the Saracen Historie. 18

ceded in the Emperour his Sonne Constantine, whom the Saracens perceiving to be a Coward and unwarlike person, privately made preparation for a nauie to invade Thracia and Greece, if any tumult or seditious uprore should fortune to kindle in Constantinople. But because all things were there quiet, they sailed into Sicilie, where the late spoiles of Rome and of all Italy were laid and hoarded up: and with sodaine force took the citie Syracuse which was not defended nor kept with any garrison. And when they could not rouse there in safetie by reason of the neerenes of Italie, they shipped all the ornaments and treasure that was in Syracuse, and with incredible riches returned into Egypt. Albeit there be some which write that Constantine hearing of the death and murder of his father Constantine, sailed into Sicilie and ransomed the Spoiles from thence with him to Constantinople.

After this, an other populous armie of Saracens entering into Affrica, had such successe that they destroyed and waisted all the Countrey nere the Sea coastes (for a great part of the maine land and middle soyle was already in their subiection) and harped away with them into slauerie and thraldome. 800000. Prisoners. And on an other side Muauias furnished out a huge Host under the conduct of Muamades and Caisers, which subdued Lybia and Cilicia two other of the Romane Provinces. And within a while after, to thintent he might conquer & subjugate Constantinople, he sent another armie after the other, wherof Sxrus was General, which being ioined to the other, marched both directly toward the citie Constantinople & girded it about with a terrible siege. And for there moze strength, he appointed a nauie to help the, which stopped all the passages and places from the West promontorie of Hebdomum to Cyglobium. With all this force they oftentimes gaue terrible assaultes to the citie, but their attempts were all in vaine. This siege lasted from the month of Apriill till September.

Then

*should fortune*

*roule*

Constanti-  
nople besie-  
ged seven  
yeeres.



## The first Booke

Good suc-  
cesse of  
Christians.

Then they raysed their siege, and taking by force the Citie Cyzicum, wintered there. In the Spring folow-  
ing, they embattelled themselves agayne befoze Con-  
stantinople: & thus somwhile indamiaging their enemies  
and sometime beyng of them agayne indamaged, (with  
many conflicts and skirmishes to the losse of both parties,  
they continued and prolonged this warre about Constan-  
tinople seven yeres. Tyll at length the Christians  
spedynge well in their marttall affaires, the Saracenes  
losinge many of their Souldiers and Shippes, quayled,  
and without any hope of better successe departed thence  
by Sea. And beyng wynter, they were so tossed with  
raging tempestes and blustering weather, that losinge  
many of their Shippes on the coast of Chius an Ile of the  
Sea Eggeum, a great part of them were drowned. And  
Fortune merueylouslye fauouring the proceedings of the  
Christians, within a while after Constantine fought a  
felde agaynst Sufia the Nephew of Muauias and dis-  
comfited hym with all his power. In which battell were  
slayne of the Saracenes out of hand thre hundred and foure  
score thousand, and the reste submitted themselves Tributaries:  
with whome Constantine entred into a League by his  
Embassadoure John Pizigauda a noble Senatour and  
Dere of his Countrey, whom he sent for that purpose to  
Muauias into Arabia. The same league to continue for  
the space of thirtie yeres, vpon this condition, that they  
should yerelely geue vnto the Emperour of Romans thre  
thousand pound of Golde, eight Slaves and as many ex-  
cellent Horses in the name of a Tribute: and moreover  
should set at libertie fifty of the Christian captiues whom  
they kept Prisoners, such as the Emperour would ap-  
pointe. There were other causes and considerations  
that moued the Saracenes to this League & Truce. For  
after that the certayne newes of these discomfitures and  
notable distresses, sustained by the Saracenes, was repo-

## Of the Saracen Historie. 19

ted in Syria, one of the chiefe Capitaines of the Saracenicall ſpauie, called Calinick, ſeeinge the woꝛld thus to tourne, reuolted, and ſpyering all the ſhips that were there, fledde to Constantinople. And in Egypt alſo by the ſame mutabilitie of Fortune, their matters went to wꝛack and ruine. Foꝛ the peſtilentiall plague ſo afflicted the whole Countrey with death and mortallitie, that the whole race and lineage of the Saracenes in that Province was almoſt quight extinct. And Conſtantine not longe befoꝛe (becauſe he would alwaies at his pleaſure reſſeſſe their attempts and cole their courages) very vnaduiſedlye had opened the Straictes and encloſures of Mount Caucasus (vntrulle called of ſome Caſpia) which beyngs ſtopped and ſhutte vp faſt by Alexander the Great, his Progenitours and Predeceſſours fearing the ſcarcenelle of thoſe Mountaine dwellers and alſo of the Northern people, alwaies kept ſtronglye ſhutte and ſurely rampired, from which place afterwarde the Turkes are repoꝛted to haue firſte come and had their originall. And called out a kind of people named Mardaices, which lay lurking within thoſe Mountaines: who occupyinge and hauinge in their owne poſſeſſion all the Beacons, and high hills of thoſe Mountaines from Taurus (called now Maurus) to Libanus were verie deadlye and terrible to the Saracenicall Nation. Foꝛ when any were agꝛeued & not willing any longer to liue vnder the yoke and ſeruitude of Saracenes, they fled into theſe Mountaines and aſſociated themſelues to theſe People, and thence as thei ſawe oportunitie they would make many roades and excuſions into the countreies neere adioyning, wherby thei ſpoiled and plagued the Saracenes in ſuch extreme ſort, by holding them to hard meate, that they durſt not once ſtir out foꝛ feare. By meanes of theſe ſo many and ſo great calamities and diſtreſſes, the Arabians power was grettly diminished: inſomuch that they had no moe but one onelye

frō whence  
Turkes came,



## The first Booke

flēte left, which then bered Crete, vnder the guydaunce  
and conduct of Fadall and Cadall. Thzough these good for-  
tunes and prosperous successes, the Maieſtie of the Ro-  
mane Empire ſeemed eſſones to flouriſh, and ſome what  
to reuiue and recover his pziſtinate glozy. But Muauias  
hauinge thus concluded a peace and league, which to the  
Chyiſtians was moſt pernicious ( becauſe the Saracens  
beinge nowe weake and without force mighte haue  
bene vtterly oppzeſſed and eaſily vanquiſhed if Caſar had  
not moze delighted in preſent Idleneſſe and quiet reſte  
then ſtudying for the long tranquillytie of his Common  
wealth, which by no meanes is made moze longer of con-  
tinuauce and ſafer with barbarous nations then by per-  
fect victoꝝ) toured his polwer & made his quarell againſt  
the Mardaites, and diſpoſſeſſing them from their high de-  
ſcrying places in y Mountaines which befoze they enioy-  
ed, he ſtudied and bent his mind to appeaſe certayne con-  
trouerſies and Sectes newly ſpzong vp about his religi-  
on. Therfoze he called a generall Counſell oꝝ Synode  
of his ſect, vnto whom by publique pzoclamation he com-  
maunded all the learned men of his Empire, and ſuch as  
had any wꝝyting oꝝ Schedule either of Mahomet oꝝ of a-  
ny his pzedeceſſours, Biſhoppes befoze hym, to come and  
bꝝing the ſame wꝝytinges with them. This Tartarical  
Synode was holden and celebꝝated at Damasco, where  
(when as nothyng coulde be determynd by reaſon of the  
contrarietie of repugnaunt ſentences) hee commaunded  
ſixe of the wiſeſt in y company by the common conſent of  
them al to be picked out, & ſo there were choſen Mulcine,  
Boari, Buor, Anocci, Atermind & David. Theſe ſix being  
ſhut vp together into one houſe, w all ſuch wꝝytinges as  
were thither bzought, hee gaue ſtraight charge that they  
ſhould lay their beades together & out of theſe wꝝytinges  
gaſher into one volume ſuch actes & ſayings of Mahomet  
as ſhould ſeme to haue any likelihod of truth. And whē they  
had

## Of the Saracen Historie. 20

had made sixe volumes, & residue of the writings he caused to be throwne into a riuer, which were so many that 200. Camels were laden with the cariage of them away. Then he appointed by a law a greuous paine & punishment to as many as in thought, woꝝd oꝝ deede beleueed otherwise then in those sixe Alcoranes was prescribed. Of the which six volumes, afterward proceeded and spronge by foure Sectes of Saracens: which are called Melicians; Asafians, Alambelians & Buanifians. The Aphrycans were Melicians: the Arabians and Damascenes, Asafians: the Armenians and Persians, Alambelians: the Alexandrians & Assyrians were Buanifians. In Cayre the greatest Citie of Egypt, all these Sectes (no man agayn saying) are vsed and embraced. When Muauias had finished & taken this order in his matters at Damasco which was his head seat of his Empire, he died and was there buried. He was the first of the Saracen Capitaines who with Ozmen (during Homars raigne) entred into the Roman prouinces to an host, and was the first who enlarged & amplified the limites of the Saracenicall Empire as far as Egypt and Aphrica westward, into Mesopotamia Eastward, and into Asia northward, and was the first who constituted a certain seate royall at Damasco: which citie for the fertilitie of the soyle and pleasantnes of the ayre far excelleth any other. He vsed firste of his race, to haue Slaues and Eunuches after a princely state & guise to stand bare headed before hym: for he was a man altogether martial and warlike, and in the atchuing of his deuises prudent and wise. His colour was white, his face pleasaunt and grane, his eyes of diuers colours, his stature meane, his Beard alwayes blacke, for euer as it beganne to waxe graye, he dyed it and conserued it in his former state. He lyued lxxvij. yeares, and raigned twenty and foure. His Signet which he caried about with hym, had in it this Verse engrauen: O Deus ignosce mihi.

By whome  
Alcoran was  
clouted toge  
ther.



## The first Booke

Of learning he was altogether ignorant, in so muche that he could not write his own name: whereas other wise he had by nature a verie profound witte. Wherefore it is reported that Mahomet on a time, making his prayers at a banquet in presence of many (as his custome was) said these wordes: O God teach Muauias to write & to number, and defend him from all dangers. By which wordes, that craftie Pseudoprophete who knewe the nature of Muauias to be fierce and prompt withall, shewed and signified two things. First, that he, if he had the ayde of any learning, might greatly helpe and furder his Secte. For they which can write, can also reade and thereby become wyser. Then because he saw him to be of such a fierce courage that he was lyke to aduenture and obiect himself to many perilles and hazardes, he desired of God to teach him the Arte of numbring, whereby he might skanne and obserue due times and tempestiuities, and to haue the skill to take the occasions that shoulde be fittest for the employing of his affayres when they fell: and for the same cause he desired of God to protect & deliuer him from all dangers. But he being a man craftie ynough of himselfe and naturally geuen to policie needed not these helpes.

After that Muauias was dead, immediatly his sonne Iezid was saluted Bishop and King, who atchieued no notable acte in his time worthy of remembrance. For he was a man altogether giuen to slouth, idleness and riot, and moreouer was sickly and of a body nothing lustie: saying that he put many of the nobilitie of Arabie to death. He loued his owne Sister libidinously, and was greatly delited in learning and Poetrie, and made many verses, a most spightfull contemner of Mahomets Law and euery other Religion. During this mans raigne, Mutar whom he had made President ouer the Province of Persia, perceiuing his brutish sluggishnes and desire of ease openly protested himselfe to be a Propheete, & practised tyrannie

## Of the Saracen Historie. 21

rannie therin : and of the line of this Mutar, the Kinges of Persia which at this day are called Sophi, are descended. Iezid his Poetrie was : **DEVS EST MEVS DOMINVS**. He raigned thre yeres, and dyed at Arrane, being of the age of fortie yeres, when the Citizens of Cufa had called home Hocem the Sonne of Ali, entending to create hym Byschoppe: but Abdalam the Sonne of Iezid in the fieldes of Carball nere Cufa, treacherously lying in waite, slue him, and there was he buried. In remembrance of which thing, there was at his graue and Sepulchre afterwarde builded a Citie called Carbala, called so of the name of the field wherin the fact was done. Hocem lefte twelue Sonnes behind him when he dyed, that is to say, Zeinal Abadine, Zeinal Muamedes, Baguer Muamedes, Giafar Cadeneg, Giafar Musa, Cazine Musa, Hali Mucercarius, Alle, Muamedes Taguin, Muamedes Halinaguin, Alle Haceme Asquerine, Haceme Muamedes Mahadine: which were in diuers places buryed, that is to wit, some nere to their great Graundfathers father Mahomet, some at Bagadat, & some at Herine: but as for Muamedes Mahadine, the Persians do affirme not to bee yet dead, & do hold opinion, that he shall come mounted on horsebacke to declare and shewe the law to all Nations, and shall conuert all people, and that all this shall first begin in the citie of Massadale where y body of his graundfather Ali lyeth buried. And therfore they haue alwayes in that citie a horse ready to receiue him, whom, after the ende of their prayers and orisons, they lead with Torch light to the Church: and vpon one certaine day which is among them kept most festiuall and sollemne they bryng this horse to the Temple where Ali is buryed wth as much pompe as maye bee, beseechyng and making petition vnto the same Ali, that he would as speedily as maye bee, send vnto them this his Nephew whom they looke for. Vnto the which feast, there is resort of people from di-

Doting be-  
liefe of Pers-  
ians.



## The first Booke

uerse parties. Therfore Hoceme being slaine and Iazid deade, one Maruan obtained the Pontificate, who raigned no longer then nyne monthes, because Abdalam the sonne of Iazid dzaue him out of his kingdome, & enioyed the same himselfe for the space of one yere. At which time the Arabians assembling and keeping a Couſaile in Cufa a Citie of the inner partes of Arabie, created Abdimelik being but yet a young man, Bysshop. Against whom, another whose name was Dadack raised a commotion and rebelled. But Abdimelik sent his kinsman Ciafa to pursue Abdalane (this Abdalane was descended of y<sup>e</sup> stocke and progente of Eubocar which stocke the Arabians call Maraunion) and as it appeereth by that which hath bene before shewed, he had by plaine force vsurped the pontificall dignitie many yeres. That race therfore was odible to the Saracens, who rather loued the Hedagreto & stocks of Ali, descending almost by a straight line from Mahomet himself. Now, Abdimelik was descended of y<sup>e</sup> blond of Ali, which kinred and descent they call Abazion: & Abdimelik himselfe with another armie pursued Dadack. Abdalane euen at y<sup>e</sup> time as it chaunced had overcome in Mesopotamia a new Caliph lately risen there, & with his Host was retourning like a conquerour to Damasco, whē as Ciafas encountred with him at y<sup>e</sup> Riuer Euphrates, and giuing vnto him battaile, obtained the victorie not without much bloud shed and slaughter on both sides. The Damascene Caliph Abdalane, fledde to Damasco where he could not be receined because he had tyzannicallie exercised hys Empire, but was faine to go to Cayre beyng at that tyme no great Citie, standyng by the Ryuer Nilus, not farre from the place where the famous Citie Memphis once stood, buylded by Muauias, Homars Deputie, because they might haue the passage ouer Nilus in theyr owne power, and therfore kept it with a strong garryson. Which afterward so encreased and flourished that

that now at this day it is counted and thought to be one of the greatest Cities in all the world. But being thence likewise by the garrison of the Citie excluded, and of all his owne traine and Seruautes forsaken, (for the crueltie and rigour that he not remembryng humaine alteration had bred in his ruffe and prosperitie) he was purposed to sayle into Grecia accompanied with one onely Seruaunt, but the wyndes were so contrarious that he was dzyuen into a certaine Island where he was knowen and there slaine: and thus the race of the Caliphes of Damasco ended.

Ciafas hauing the possession of Damasco, commaunded that Iazid the Caliph who had bene buried many yeres afore, shoulde be taken out of his graue; his bones to be burned and his Ashes to be cast into the Ryuer, wyth all kinde of crueltie raging against al the Mauronion linage casting out their dead carkasses to be deuoured and tozned in peeces of wild beastes, that he might reuenge the iniuries done to Hoceme and others of the Abazian house, whom they slue and murthered. There was at that time a certaine riche and wealthie man of the Mauronion linage, named Abedramon, whose Auncestours had bene y Caliphes of Damasco: and some do affyrme that he was the Sonne of Muauias. He seeing the sauage crueltie and fierce dealing of Abdimelick and Ciafa', in persecuting his Stocke and kinred, and fearing to taste of the same saue himselfe, gathered together a great number of his friends, Cosins, and Clientes and went into y bittermost partes of Mauritania Tingintana, where (both for that he was of the familie of the Damascene Bishops, & also because of his fortitude and valiaunce) he was with great honour receiued of the Saracens abiding there. For many of them (the Romaines only defending the coastes that lie into the middle of the maine land) went thither and there planted themselves: which new dignitie and prerogative of honour



## The first Booke

Marocco  
builded.

honour together with the opinion that was conceived of  
by him and his Sect, so incensed and swelled his ambitious  
mind, that he first of all others tooke upon him the name  
of a Miralmumine, which worde in the Arabian lan-  
guage signifieth the Prince of all beleuers: which name  
afterwards our Historiographers depaured & corruptly  
called Miramuline. He also builded the large and most e-  
noble citie of Marocco nere to the fote of Mounte Atlas,  
and appointed it to be the chiefe Keye and Metropolitane  
Citie of all his Kingdome: notwithstandinge many doe  
affirme that it was built by Iosippus the Sonne of Tes-  
sine, and some say by an other. Against them Abdime-  
lick (partlye for that he sawe him to procure no hurt nor  
attempt any hinderance to his proceedinges) and partly  
because he was wazzapped in heapes of troubles elsewhere  
and had more prons in the fire then he coulde wel temper,  
attempted nothing. For although he had supplanted Da-  
dack with all his faction and adherentes and with victorie  
retourned to Damascus, yet could he not long enioy that  
victory nor bryoke it quietly, because there began such a  
plague and pestilenciall mortalitye that had almost quite  
destroyed all the Saracenicall Nation.

Beside this plague, the people were greatly pinched  
with famine in all his Countries. And the Mardaïtes  
gettyng agayne the possession of Mount Libanus, enlar-  
ged their limites as farre as Hierusalem: and moreover  
the principalitye of Persia, vsurped by Mutar, much dis-  
quieted his troubled minde. Abdimelick weltringe in  
the surges of this froward Fortune, and fearing to bee o-  
uerwhelmed with some greater mischaunce, sent a so-  
lemne Ambassade to Iustinian then Emperour, beyng of  
the age of sixtene yeres, for a confirmation of the peace  
and League that Muauias strake with Constantine, and  
farther to request hym that the Mardaïtes might bee dis-  
possessed and driuen out of Libanus, which thinge if the  
Empe-

rouer would graunt, he promised that he would euery day geue vnto the Romanes in the name of a Tribute, ten poundes of Golde, a Slaue and a goodly faire Horse. And mozeouer in consideration of the confirmation of this peace which he so earnestly desired, (to theend that Caesar might the better expulse and rid the Mardaites which nowe were not aboue. xij. thousand in number out of Libanus) he gaue and graunted vnto him the one halfe of his yeerely Tributes of Cyprus, Armenia and Iberia. This peace beyng confirmed and he deliuered out of the feare of the Mardaites (a fierce and outragious people) he sent Cifa with a great Armye againste Mutar, who vnder the pretext and coloure of Religion practized tyzanny and extort regiment in Persia. Which expedition and voyage had very vnluckie end: for Mutar with an Host marching to meeete him, banquished him and discomfited al his power, whereby he wanne a greater estimation and credite then euer he had befoze.

Tribute of  
Saracenes

Abdimelick to th'intent he might from a neerer place surueigh and beholde how matters prospered in Persia, goeth into Mesopotamia: where he was againe w many calamities & aduerse bzontes soze crushed. For y Emperour Iustinian (y Sclauoys partli yelding themselves vnto his mercy and partly tamed by dent of Sword) picking out of the stoutest Gallantes in all that Nation, a crewe of .30000. or there aboute, mustred and toke by Souldiours apace for his warres: and so trustinge to their valyaunt seruice, bzake the League lately made: making for the contour of his quarel, y the money payable for his yeerely Tribute had not the Roman stamp, but was of a new Arabian coigne. Sending therfoze his Lieutenant Leontius w this new leuied army into Asia, subdued and bzought vnder his subiection Iberia, Abania, Hircania and Media, which Regions were vnder the Saracenes Emppze.



## The first Booke

At the same time also one Said reised sedition and rebelled against Abdimelick : against whom Abdimelick speeding hymselfe with an Army, so dismayd and terrified hym, that he fel downe on his Marybones and craved for geuenesse. Whom Abdimelick with dissimuling countenaunce pardoned and seemed to forgeue : but with in a while after he commaunded hym priueltie to be slain. At this same time also there arose an other tyzantie among the Saracenes, named Abdala Zubir, who sent his Brother Musub into Persia against Mutar : and of hym Mutar was both banquished and slayne: albeit he enioyed not the fruite of his victory long. For Abdimelick withall his power goynge againste hym, overcame and discomfited him and all his Host : and from thence holding on his way into Persia, brought all that Province vnder his subiection. Abdalaf Zubir discouraged with the good successe of his aduersarie, fled vnto Mecca, after whome, Abdimelick sent Cagian with a great Armye to pursue and take hym, who by force winning the Citie Mecca, slew Zubir, and set the auntientest Idole of that citie with the Temple also on fire.

And thus, Abdimelick hauinge recovered Persia, and dispatched out of the way his aduersaries, and being alone in possession of the Saracenicall Soueraigntie, ( after hee had oftentimes in vaine, besought the Romane Emperoz that he would not infringe the League betwene them concluded,) at length bent all his power againste the Greeques which inferred warre vpon hym againste the Lawes both of God and man, and ouer his army he appointed for Generall one Muamates. Who findinge the Greeques at Sebastonople, hanged the Tables of the League vpon a Speare poynt, and caused the same to bee bozne befoze him like an Ensigne. And calling vpon God to reuenge the breaking and violatiō therof ( which were so solēnelie made and confirmed by taking his holy name  
to

# Of the Saracen Historie. 24

to witnesse) he in good order of battell gave the charge upon them. Albeit first he had corrupted the Sclavoy with money. Of whom as soon as the battell was once begun neerehand xv. my. revolted from the Emperour & went to the Saracenes: which thinge so appauled the Greeces, that they were easely overcome and put to flight, and in the chase were kyled almost every mothers sonne. The Emperour Iustinian (for he was present himselfe at this conflict) dishonourably and shamefully by flight saving himselfe w<sup>th</sup> a few others in his company, as soon as he came to Leucas, caused all the remnant of y<sup>e</sup> new band of scla-voyns to be put to death and their dead carcases to bee cast into the Sea. Whereupon the saracenes after warre, without any damage not only recovered their owne Territories before lost, but also invaded the residue of the Roman Provinces. Sabar, also a noble Senator, and Governor of Armenia, under shading of the wrecks and overthrowes of the Romans, revolted to the Saracenes and brought into their hands the whole countie of Armenia. Neither did they yet cease to overrun the whole East, and to lead away the christians into servitude: for y<sup>e</sup> part also of Persia, which yet acknowledged the Roman Empire was subdued by Cagian, and Muamates, w<sup>th</sup> helpe of those Sclavoy turning to his side, and entring into the Province of Thracia, spoyled it w<sup>th</sup> sacke and fire pitifully: the Roman Empire being in the meane season w<sup>th</sup> civile discords and intestine hatred so dissennered and torne asunder, that no man durst set in foote to withstande this outrage.

The Lord Leontius having exiled Iustinian into y<sup>e</sup> Ile Cherson, usurped y<sup>e</sup> empire: and straightwaies sent a Lord of his countie named Iohn, with a navie to inhibite and stop the violent irruption of the Africane Saracenes, which not content with the mitle lande y<sup>e</sup> was granted unto them by league for their habitation, invaded a fresh the Countie neere about the Sea Coastes.

Christians  
inst by plag-  
ed.

and so  
3710139  
gladness  
of the  
of the  
of the



# The first Booke

While man vanquishing the Saracenes in battaile, drove them out of the Romane Territories. But for as much as their power and wealth was dreadfull and terrible in Syria and all the East, and newes brought by sondry rumours that there was more ayde coming from Abdimelik, to the ayde of these Saracens in Africa, Iohn thinking his power unable to defend and keepe the possession of þe province, went to Constantinople to fetch more ayde from Leontius, leaving his host behind him in Africa. But while these things were to stoly purueighed and prepared by Leontius, Abdimelik understanding þe state of his subiectes in Africa, and soze mowed with the late losse by them there sustained, furnished out a great shoule to recover the province againe. With whō the Romane souldiers (thinking themselves not hable to make their part good) departed thence, into Crete. Where þe Chieftaines and capitaines consulting together, thought it much soulded to their shame & dishonour to returne home, having thus lost Africa and left the same open to their enemies; and partly moved with displeasure towards the Emperour which did so drearily provide for the furniture & supply of warlike affaires, egged the Mariners to revolte, and to salute Absimar Emperour, whom they also called Tyberius. He in all hast speeding himself toward Constantinople with an armie, and finding Leontius imprisoned, without any stop wancie the Citie, and taking Leontius, cut of his nose and cast him into prison. The Saracens for cible enioyed all Africa, and drove out all the Romane garrisons. The most part of them that then inhabited the places of Africke neere the Sea, were of the Gothes lyne.

The Emperoure shamefully abused by his owne subiectes.

This Tyberius immediately after he was enthroned and made Emperour, sent his brother Heraclius with a huge armie into Asia against the Saracenes. Who invading Syria pearded into the countrey as farre as Samo-

fata

lata and wasting al the places néere therabout, slue néere-  
band of them two hundred thousande, and taking there  
many prisoners and great booties, brought all the Coun-  
trei in great feare of him. And at the same time the  
Princes of Armenia, in a sedition killed all the Saracenes,  
which were in Armenia: and sending Ambassadors to  
Abdismar, receiued the Romanes againe into their Pro-  
uince. Muamates netteled with these dealinges, with a  
great power set vpon them, brought them againe vnder  
the Saracenicall obeyssaunce, and burned the chiefe Prin-  
ces and leaders of the people alyue. When he also innaded  
Cilicia, spoyling and ragnating it euerie where piteouslie  
but he escaped not himselte scotfree. For Heraclius en-  
countring with him, discomfited a great part of his hoast  
and toke the rest prisoners, whom he sent bound to Con-  
stantinople to the Emperour. At which time Abdime-  
lik dyed, in the .xxi. yere of his raigne. The shew befoze,  
that one Abedramon (descended of the Mauronion stock)  
conueyed himselte into Mauritania in the beginning of  
Abdime-lik his Pontificate, and was there in such e-  
stimation among his people and Sectaries, that all the Sa-  
racens dwelling in that Province reuerenced him as an  
other Caliph or rather as one greater then a Caliph, but  
for as muche as he entemedled not with any bellicall in-  
surrections and also was farre of, Abdime-lik did not per-  
secute him so as he did others. But yet notwithstanding  
his name was great in Arabia. He dying, left a sonne be-  
hind him, named Vlith, who succeeded Abdime-lik in the  
Pontificate, & was called the Muralmumine, in the yere  
after the incarnation of Christ. 708. During whose raigne  
Armenia was once againe brought vnder the Romane  
subiectio, and the Saracens there expelled. The Arabians  
making an irruption into the Romane Provinces, toke by  
force the citie Mistra with many Castles & fortified towne  
and with great booties and prizes returned home. Then

Slaughter  
of Saracens.



## The first Booke

againē vnder the conduct of Abatius they invaded Galatia and sacked it miserably: and the Emperour Iustinian being againe restozed to the Emprye by Trebellius king of Bulgaria, the Saracens taking occasion by reason of these new tumultes & commotions, issued out of Egypt with a greater preparatiō & power thē they did before, and debellad all Lybia to the Ocean Sea. I call it now Lybia, because I haue already shewed y<sup>e</sup> Affrica was before by the take, which is a part of Lybia: to thende you may vnderstand y<sup>e</sup> I do not speake of a part only, which was already conquered, but of y<sup>e</sup> whole region. For whereas Lybia or y<sup>e</sup> whole countrey of Affrica being almost on euery side compassed about with water like an Island, is on y<sup>e</sup> North enuironed with our Sea, on the West and South with the Atlantique Ocean, on y<sup>e</sup> East with the East, red & Arabian Sea, and is ioyned to Asia by a little narrow part of dry land lying betwene the vttermoſt end of the Arabia Gulph & our Sea: yet Egypt (which Province extendeth frō the Cataractes and floodgates of the river Nilus to the mouth of the same) together with Ethiopia (which lieth aboue it) of many old wyters, yea of late Authours also, is not reckened into Affrica. And as y<sup>e</sup> river Nilus parteth the East part of this halfe Ile, that is to wit, Egypt & Ethiopia, where the large & mightie dominions of Presbyter Iohn lye: so y<sup>e</sup> river Nigir, springing (as many write) from the same fountain, and hauing (as the other hath his course from the South into the North) so this frō the East into the West, and falling into the Atlantique Ocean, parteth and separateth the most wealthie Kingdomes of the Nigrites from it. So that, the Lybia which we here meane, is contained within the boundes of Nilus and Nigir the Atlantique Ocean and our Sea. All which as farre as it stretcheth from the West into the East, the buyge Mount Achlas cutteth and severeth a sunder: being at this daye diuided into thre partes, Barbaria, Numidia and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 26

and Lybia. Lybia which in the Arabian tongue is called Sarra, that is to say Desert, is bound on the Southe wyth the kingdomes of the Nigrites, on the North with the mount Achlas, on the East w<sup>th</sup> the river Nilus & on the west with the Ocea. Numidia called in the Arabiā tongue Biledulgerid, (which is to say, a Countrey wherein groweth great store of dates) stretching frō the borders of Egypt to the Ocea, lyeth South frō the mount Athlas. Barbarie from the East to the West (cōtained within the same limittes and borders) comprehendeth all that which lyeth betwene Athlas and our Sea. And this is also divided into foure Prouinces: Mauritania Tingitana, which containeth the kingdomes of Marrocco & Feze: Caſariensis, wherein is the kingdom of Telenſine: & the .iii. part both in thold time & now is properly called Affrica, wherein in aunciet time the Carthaginians flourished, conteining now at this day the Citie Affrica, Tunice and Tripolis. After this foloweth Cyrenes, which is cōprehended in the kingdom of Bugia. At the first inuasiō and irruptiō made into this Prouince during the raigne of Ozmen, the Saracens swarming out of Egypt toke Cyrenaica & Affrica. But making peace afterward with the Emperour, they were cōmaūded to depart from all the places nere to the Sea coastes, and so they remoued further into the Conſines of Numidia and Lybia, and in the raigne of Muauias they againe entring into the Territories of the Carthaginians, subdued the countrey of Affrica, all about the Sea coastes. And nowe auaucing ſoꝝward their Standards they inuaded both the Mauritaines, & appointed ſoꝝ the limites of their Empire the Ocea & the river Nigir.ouer which prouince Vlite the chief Biſhop of the Mahumetane ſect, made Mucas high deputée, & appointed vnto him a ſtrōg power. But yet the part of Tingitana that lyeth ſoꝝward the ſtraites of Marrocke was vnder the rule of Roderike Viſigotte king of Spaine. For the Gothes expulſing all the Romane garrisons were lordes  
of



## The first Booke

of the whole countrey of spaine, from 300. yéeres almost passed, acknowledgyng for their King none but this Rodericke : who was not onely King of both the Spaynes, the néerer and further, but also possessed all that laye toward the strait Sea in Mauritania Tingintana. The Straites in Affrica, bath thre Promontories, makynge two Bayes or Elbowes into the landwarde : and in Spaine as many Promontories with so many bowmes or Elbowes of the Sea. The famous and noble Cities by the Sea, in Spayne, were Carteia situate by the Promontorie Calpe, which afterwarde was called Tarifa : in Aphrica, Tingis, of whom Mauritania Tingintana hath his name, standyng by the Promontorie Abylc: and Cepca, called of Ptolomæus, Essilissa.

The Romanes deuided all Spayne into two Prouinces, and sent into them two Proconsulles, or Propretors : whereof the one gouerned the néerer and the other the furder. But these partes were not allwayes of one greatnesse : for when as they had not yet the whole possession of all Spayne, the byther Spaine was contayned within the riuer Iberus and the Pyrence Mountaynes : and all beyond Iberus was of the further Spayne, which belonged to the Carthaginians. But after that they had driuen out the Punique Garrisons out of euery quarter of the Countraie, and had got the possession of all Spayne, they called that which on the East and south is enuironed almost Ilandwise wour Sea, on the West with the Atlantique Ocean, on the North with the Sea Cantabricum and the Pyrence Mountaynes (exceptinge Lusitania and Betica) by the name of the néerer Spaine : and those partes which be deuided by the riuer Anas and compassed about w the Ocean as far as to the Asturians, thei called the further Spaine, callyng the which marcheth vpon the Straits, Betica, which now contayneth Vandalusia & the Kingdome of Granado, & the which extendeth from the riuer Anas to the  
riuer

## Of the Saracen Historie. 27

riuer Duria they called Lusitanie and at the hyther part, Tarraconensis. Which tripartite diuision Geographers in their descriptions haue obserued.ouer these three Provinces and also ouer the Asturians and Cantabrians which be on this side the Pyrenes, by the North ocean, and also ouer the Province called Narbonensis so farre as the Riuer of Rhone, which was then called Gallia Gotica, this Roderike Visigot was (as we haue sayd king & gouernour at that time, when the Saracenes extended the limits of their Dominyon in Aphrica to the ocean, which was in the yere of our Lorde. 712.

This Rodericke made Iuliane Earle of Cepta (descended of the blood of Visigottes, a man of great power and wealth in Spayne and chief ruler ouer a certayne Ilande now called Viridis, lying in the narrow Sea, and many other places aswell in Spayne as in Tingintana) his high Deputie and warden in Betica and all other such places as were vnder his rule in Tingintana. Vnto hym hee committed the whole charge, to defend Spayne on that side from the inuasions of the Saracenes, and to kepe the narrow Seas. This Iulyan had a Daughter named Calba, a beautifull young Ladye, insomuch that for her personage she was no lesse pernicious to Spayne, then faire Helena was to the Troyanes. For Rodericke fallynge in loue with her, whether it were by force or by fraud (for it is repozted both waies) made a breach into her virginittie. Which vnpryncely trick she (as soone as she conveniently could) vttered and discovered vnto her Father. Who dissimuling as though he had knowne nothyng of this iniurie done to him in his Daughter, and keeping to hymselfe the desire of inst reuenge till a tyme for his purpose convenient, desired leaue of the Kinge to departe the Court and to go to Cepta, because being there (as he said) he could much better defeat the Saracens entended enterprises. Which request obtayned, he trusted by al his furniture

Beautye of  
a Woman.  
causeth  
much mis-  
chief.



## The first Booke

ulture of household & w<sup>th</sup> his wife went to Cepta. When he was come thither, sayning an excuse & his wife was soze sicke, he desired & king to geue Cabatis daughter leaue to come home and see her languishing mother, who was neuer like to see her any moze. For Caba with other Princes and Lozdes daughters (as the manner was) at that time waited in the Court. Having by this means received home his Daughter, he went to Mucas who was (as before we shewed) the head ruler of all Lybya vnder Vlite, and vnto hym he opened from poynt to poynt the whole cause of his comming away from the Court, and promysing to make hym Lord of all Spayne if he woulde geue the aduenture & take the enterpryse in hand. Mucas shewed the whole matter vnto Vlite, because he durste not deale in such a waightye case, withoute his will and pleasure first knowne. Of whom he receaued this answer, that the matter propounded was of great importance and difficultie, and that it were not best in such a doubtfull matter to geue rashe credite to a subtile person, and one altogether estranged from their Religion. Notwithstandinge, to trye the trust and faithfulness of the Carle, he was resolved, that the matter might be best assayed, by deliuering vnto hym a small crewe of Souldiours at the first: and if he sped well and had good successe at the beginning, after ward moze ayde and greater power might be sent. Mucas although he were thoughtlye perswaded by the Carles talke and motion, that althings would sozt to good effect, yet durst he not passe nor goe beyond the contents of his Commissiō, prescribed by Vlite. Wherefoze he deliuered vnto Iulyan, one of his Capitaynes named Tarife Auenzarca with a hundred Horsmen & 400. footmen. Who were all transpoyted in foure Ships, into a litle Ile lyinge in that Elbow of Sea that the Promontorie Calpe maketh, which Ile was afterward of this Capitayne Tarife, called Gelriza Tarif.

Vnto

Unto this place Iulian called and by gentle meanes al-  
lured all his friendes, and kinssolkes, recomptinge vnto  
them from poynt to poynt the commodities and plesures  
whiche by his labour, industrie and perilles the King had  
receaued, for recompence whereof, he forgot not to tell  
them the Kinges vngzatitute, and the spightfull dishono-  
r done vnto hys house by the rauishing and deflowryng of  
his Daughter, telling them further, that the King did vn-  
iustly vsurp that kingdome, whiche by rightfull succe-  
ssion of inheritaunce belonged to the Sonnes of Vitiza. For  
whiche causes he desired their helpynge handes in this so  
good and iust quarell to assiste hym, tellyng them that the  
next yere he would come with a conuenient army to per-  
forme asmuch as he then spake. He so much perswaded  
them with these and such lyke wordes, that they promys-  
sed hym when time shoulde serue their best seruice and  
furtheraunce: and there vpon retourned home every man  
to his owne house. Iulian because he would make a be-  
ginning of his purposed warre, inuaded the Ile Gades li-  
ing in the vtter part of the ocean, nere to the narrow sea,  
whiche Ile was afterwarde named Alzira Dalfrada:  
whiche with sword and fire he spoyled, carynge the In-  
habitanes awaye with hym prisoners, and after that  
shewed the lyke curtesie to Lusitania and Betica, and be-  
yng laden with aboundaunce of spoiles and booties retur-  
ned into Aphrica.

Mucas seeing this good successe and thinkyng it a begin-  
ninge good ynough, deliuered vnto hym twelue thou-  
sande Saracenes beside them befoze, vnder the conducte  
of the same Tarife. With whome hee arrived at the  
foote of the Promontorie Calpe, which Mountayne was  
thereof afterwarde called Gabel Traife, whiche is as much  
to say as the Mount of Traif, and now it is called Gibel,  
and setting his Souldiers on land, toke by force the citie  
Carceia, whiche afterwarde euen till our time was called  
Tarifa.



## The first Booke

The rumour of this great comotion being spread through out all Spaine, the kinssolkes of Carle Iulian gathering together all the power that they were able, and feigning that they went to repulse this Saracenicall inuasiō, went straight wayes thither and ioyned themselues with him. And so all their powers being linked in one, they wasted and haried al the coast about the Riuer Betis now named Guadalouir, and commonly called Andalusia or of the Vandales, Vandalusia. Roderike in the meane season, with as much speede as he coulde, gathered a very great Armie, and appointing his Cosen Germaine Ignicus to be Chienetaine thereof, sent him against his enemyes. Who making many conflicts and skirmishes with them was at length with all his Armie discomfited and overthrowne. The Saracens hauing made great pyllage & desolation in the Countrey, and laden with spoyle of many booties, and carying a great multitude of Prisoners with them returned into Affrica. At which time, Vlice being in Asia, and making preparation to warre with Constantinople, dyed, after whom Zulciminie the Sonne of Abdimelik was made high Bishop, during whose raigne the Saracens the seconde time besieged Constantinople. For immediatly after his creation, he sent Malsana with an armie by lande, and Aumar with an other by Sea against Constantinople, and he himselfe with a great power folowed after. But this his strong and terrible purpose was for a while defeated by Leo the Prator of Armenia: who they (seeking meanes to entrap and deceiue) were themselves by him entrapped and deceaued: for he stopping the passages & conuenient places through which they must needs goe, hindered their reckening.

Whylest these thinges were in doying, Mucas coming out of Affrica, to congratulate and doe his duetie to Zulciminie the new Bishop, declareth vnto him the state of their affaires in Spaine: whereupon he being merue-

lous

ious desirous to enlarge the limittes of his Empire, gaue him in commaundement, to send Tarife againe into that Province with a mightier armie then any he had befoze. Mucas therfoze retourning into Affrica, the next yere folowing transfreted with a huge armie into Spayne, keeping with him as a pledge or hostage, Richila Counte of Tingis, and cosen to Iulian, whom he halfe mistrusted. Which armie being once landed on the next coast, Roderike speedely gathered the powers of the Provinces nere about. And so with the ayde of the people of Gottalonia (now called Catalonia and in tholde time Lacetani) the inhabitants of Iberia now called Tarracon or Aragon, the Cantabrians beying at this day in the Kingdome of Nauarre: and the people of Gallia Gotica, where in are the Cities Tolosa & Nimes vnto the Ryuer Rhone, he so dainly and vnlooked for, encountred with them at the Ryuer Bedalaces whiche of tholde wynters was called Betis, nere to a towne called Xerez. The Saracenes at that tyme had encamped them selues on that side of the Ryuer where Andalusia standeth: and the King with his battaille on the other side, wherein the Kingdome of Castile is. For the Ryuer Betis springing out of mount Ortopeda in the borders of Aragon, and runnyng into the Ocean nere to the streights, diuideth Andalusia and the Kingdome of Granada from Castile: and runneth through the myddle of Betica, which is bounded wyth the ryuer Anas, springing oute of the same Mountaine. Lusitanie lying West from Tarracon, by a straight course reacheth from the mouth or entraunce of Anas south right to the ryuer Duria: and the ryuer Pisuerra seperateth the Castellonians from the Asturians. In this place, the .iiij. of September being Sunday, in the yere after the incarnation. 714. he aduanced his standerd and committed his fortune good or bad, to the hazard of battail. The fight was most fierce & deadly for the



# The first Booke

passage of the Riuer, whilist the one part woulde needes passe over, and the other wold not suffer them. This continued a good whyle in such equall match, that hard it was to discern to whether partie the victorie would encline: which was much to be merueiled at, considering how soze Spaine had so: two yeres last afoze, bene afflicted with dearth of victualles and the Pestilential plague. Wherby the souldiours had not the strength and courage that they had befoze, and the men, who in a hundzeth & fiftie yeres space had not bene trained vp in any warres, cockered and effeminated with ease, had lost in a manner all warlike discipline and right vse of handling their weapons, & were mozeouer withoute harnysse armour oz habilimentes meete so: the warres: because Vitiza, Roderike his Wydecessour, a most cruell and bloudie Tyrant, had caused all weapons to be taken away from the people and to bee broken. This battaile continued not onely that day, but during all the whole weeke till the Sundae folowing, there were dayly sharpe and terrible conflicts. And on the eyght daye which was the .xi. of September the two Sonnes of King Vitiza hauing the night befoze indented and conspired wyth Tarife, (who promysed them their fathers Kingdome,) drew backe and priuely conneighed themselves with their retinue out of the battaile, by meanes whereof Mucas with litle ado brought al his armie ouer the Riuer, and then was the Gothes araye quickly broken and they themselves vanquished. Roderike the first day of the battaile, obseruing the ancient guise of his countrey, came into the feld, apparailled in a golwe of beaten Golde, hauing also on his head a Crown of gold and golden Shoes, and all his other appaile set with rich pearles & pzeious stones, ryding in a hozselitter of Iuorie drawe by two goodly hozses. Which order the Gothes vsed allwayes in battailes so: this consideration, & the souldiours well knowing their king could not escape away

A most bloody  
battaile  
continuing  
a whole  
weeke.

How kings  
in those  
daies came  
into the feld,  
with what  
apparell, &  
so: what  
cause.

away by flight from them, should be assured that there was none other way, but either to die together in that place or else to winne the victorie. For it had bene a thing most shamefull and reprochfull to forsake their Prince and anoynted Soueraigne. Which custome and maner, many free confederate cities of Italie folowing, trimmed and adozned for the warres, a certaine Chayre of estate, called Carocio) wherein were set the Penons and Ensignes of all the confederates. This Chayre in battaile was drawe by many Oxen, wherby the whole host was giuen to vnderstand, y they could not with any honestie flee, by reason of the slow pace and vntweldinesse of those heauie Beasts. In this sort was king Roderike pompously caried in his horselitter during the battailes foughten in seuen dayes space. But on the eight day, seeing things brought to the last pulse and to stand vpon fire and seuen, of or on, he himselfe with others determined to fight it out valiantly: and therfore mounted vpon an excellent couragious courser, called Orell, and animating his Souldiours with a most vehement and pitheie Oratton boldly gaue the charge vpon his enemies. But when he saw the fronte of his battaile to shrink, he departed aside vnto a little hill harde by and stripped himself out of all his royal Robes: and fro thence beholding the mercilesse slaughter of his men on euery side, moued with repentance, because he knew himself to be the cause & occasioner of all this mishap, chaunged himselfe into another weede and fled into a deserte of Lusitanie, where he found a certaine holy man, lyuing solitarie, with whom he passed the rest of his life.

Nowe wheras it is reported and written that he followed a Starre or a messenger of God which conducted and guided him in his way: it may be so, and the same hath also happened to others. But it may aswell also be vnderstood of a certaine secrete Starre mouing and directing his will.

And



## The first Booke

And whereas they say he was put by that holy man into a Cate or hoale and a Serpent with hym that had two heads, which in two dayes space gnawed al the flesh of his body from the bones this beynge simple taken and vnder-  
 staded, hath no likelihood of any truth. For what sanctity,  
 what Religyon, or what pietie, commaundeth to kyll a  
 penitent person, and one that seeketh comfort of his afflic-  
 ted mynd by amendent of life, with such horrible tozments  
 and straunge punishment: Wherefore I woulde rather  
 thinke it to be spoken mysticallie, and that the Serpent  
 with two heads signifieth his sinful and gylty conscience,  
 which tozmenteth & disquieteth those that haue perpetra-  
 ted any heynous offence, as though it were the Furies  
 of hell, as the Poetes haue feygned of Orestes and others.  
 Where therfore in that place he died, and certaine yeres  
 after, his Sepulcher or Tombe was founde at Viseo in  
 Portugall with this Epitaph or superscription vpon it.

**H**ere lyes the Corps of Roderick, late King  
 Of Gothes, accurst and fraught with furie dire  
 Whose sensuall raigne brought dule and deadly sting  
 To Spanish soyle: because of Iulians yre,  
 Which would not be appeasde till he had wrought  
 The Toyle of strife, and brought all thinges to nought.  
 All mad with rage and spightfull rancours moode  
 By deuilish fate incensde, Gods heastes despisde,  
 His faith renounced, religion eke withstoode,  
 A foe to frindes, his Countnies wracke deuise:  
 Vnto his Lorde an arrant traytous Elfe,  
 A murtherous wight, and cruell toward hymselfe,  
 Embrued with guylt, for sheadding Christen blood  
 Which by his driftes were brought to fatall end.

An

## Of the Saracen Historie. 31

*An Homycide, of mangling Butchers broode  
Did ruine to his natue soyle pretend.*

*His memorie shall dye with men for ayes.*

*His name shall rotte, as doth his Corps in clay.*

In this battayle all the men of Armes and Gentlemen of the Gothes were slayne and the whole power of Spayne bitterlie ouerthrowne. Of the Gothicall Army there slayne, the number was infinite, but of the Saracenes onely twenty thousande: which happened because the factious rout of Iulian which had al the Armour and defence of the Realme of Spayne tooke parte with them. And the multytude of them was very great: but they which fought on the Kinges side were in a manner all vnarmed and naked men. A few escaping by flyght ranne whither fortune lead them and saved themselves. They which were comming out of fozeine prouinces to ayde the King, hearyng of this lamentable discomfiture, ioynded syndes with them that were fled to Egicia, and embattayling themselves againste the Saracenes which followed the chase, and pursued the poore vanquished fléts, set vpon them with a fierce recharge: fighting (lyke eigre Lyons robbed and bereft of their whelps) manfully discomfited the vauntgard of their Enemies Armye. But beyng not hable to sustayne the force of Iulians battayle which were strong men and wel armed, they were faine to retyze into the Citie. Tarife encampinge hymselfe there, where now at this daye the Well of Tarif is, and thence geuynge assault to the Citie, with litle a do wanne it. Which done, by the counsell of Iulian, he deuided his host into many bzaunches, assignynge vnto euery parte such Capitaines as he thought fittest: ymagining yea not doubtyng but the Chyistians before they coulde take any counsell what way were best to follo w o: be able to gather anye moze power, might be oppressed and all at once



## The first Booke

once disperced whersoever they could be founde. The  
Sonnes of Vicia and Byshoppe Opasius were appoin-  
ted Capitaynes ouer them. One Host addressed them,  
selues toward the conquest of Malacca (now called Ma-  
lega) a Port or hauen of Betica by the midland sea, which  
to be speedely taken, was much for their behoofe & aduan-  
tage. An other marched to sack Corduba, ouer whom was  
Chienetaine, a certayne chistian hauing a litle before re-  
nounced his Chistianitie and Saracenyzed, whose name  
was Magritar. And the third was conducted by Tarife  
himselfe, which toke the way to the Citie Mentefia, ad-  
ioyning to that part of Aquitania, which lyeth hard by the  
Pyrenoes and is called Guienne or Gascoigne. And sub-  
uerting that Citie (which chose rather to be utterly ruy-  
nated then to be come vassall vnder Saracenicall slauerie,  
he discomped to Toledo, wanne it, and after that, Gauda-  
lagiar & Medina Almeide, which Citie was so named of  
a pretie big Table made all of one greene pzeious stone  
like an Emeraulde, found in it. Then he toke the strong  
cittie of Amaia, wherin was kept al þ trespure for þ wars.  
After this he inuaded the Region called Gottici Campi,  
toke by surrendrie the Cities Asturica & Gigion (wher-  
of Mugnuza a Gothian was Captaine) and subiugated  
Gatalonia, being ayded by Mugnoces Prince of Cerdania,  
who also was a Gothian bozne. Wherefore the Sa-  
racenes made him Ruler of all the places confininge to  
Cerdania. An other Army, hauinge wonne Granada,  
marched to subdue Nurtia and Horiuela, where there  
was a bloudy battaile foughten betwene the Chistians  
and the Saracenes in the plaine fields which are to this  
day thereof called sangonarij: in which conflict (the Sa-  
racenes gettinge the bypperhand) the citie yelded. After  
this, the same host remoued to Valentia, and discomfi-  
ting þ Valentians yssuing out of the towne to fight when  
they saw the citie strongly fortificed & rampiered w walls  
and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 32

and diche they toke it by surrendrie, with this condition, that the Chzistians should be permitted to haue in it one Temple to inhabit, which was Saint Basil his Colledge, now at this day called Saint Barptolomewes. All the rest they dedicated to that Idolatrous verlet, their Prophet Mahomet, sauing onely that Temple, whiche stode in the Figge market, where holie Vincent was martyred, which was after ward an Hospital of chzistians. The citie was pestered & peopled with Mozes, albeit the Iews were suffered to remayne still in it, and a few chzistians, which dwelt in S. Basilles colledge. Whiche y inhabitants of Puigum, a towne of Encsa, hearing, wher ther was an other colledge of S. Basil, left their homes & fled, burying their great Bell & a certaine Marble Image in y church in hope one day of a returne. Whither the saracenes sent people of their owne to inhabit vnder the conduct of Cebole: wherof the same towne Puigum was afterwarde called Cebole: who also builded an other litle towne of the same name. And thus Valentia, Sogorbes, Tortosa, Lerida, Barcinon & Sarragoza with al Spayne, was bzought vnder the power and iurisdiction of the Saracenes. But Tarracon because it long resisted & stoutly stode at defiance w<sup>th</sup> them, they vtterly subuerted & rased, which was after ward new builded by Bernhard Metropolitane of Toledo, at y comandement of Urban y second of y name pope of Rome, in y yere 1090. By this meanes, al spaine in y space of. xiiij. Monthes was subdued: which was a thing easie to be done, considering y y people wer cleane without armour, weapon, munition or Capitaine, & O-  
pasius Metropolitane of Syuile euer exhortinge them to yeld, promysing vnto them y they shoud quietly enioye their religion & lawes as they had befoze done, whiche promise was not obserued, noz kept sauing in a few places, as at Valencia, Siuile, and Toledo, in which they left certaine temples for the Chzistians to inhabite.

All Spayne  
conquered  
by Saracenes



## The first Booke

Whereupon yet to this daye, in the chiefest Cathedra<sup>ll</sup> Church of the Citie, the Rites and diuine seruice among them celebrated, is Mozarabicall, that is to say, mingled with Arabian: which was allowed and confirmed by the Bishops of that time, according to the order and institution of Saint Leandre.

After these victozies, the number of the Saracens day by encreased in Spaine, in so much that the Spanyardes then chaunged not onely their religion and maners, but corrupted their language, and the names of their Cyties, Townes, Villes, Ryuers and all other places were likewise altered. Albeit many of them fled into Fraunce, England, Italic and Grecia, to craue ayde of other Ch<sup>r</sup>istian Princes. Some others planted themselves in that part of the Pyrenees that lyeth out into Asturia and reacheth within the Aquitanicall Ocean. And they whiche remained still with the Saracens, had in euerie place, their Prelates and Pastours, me deuout and holy. But the first recouerie and helpe of Spaine, sprang by among the Asturians. Which Countrey not only remayned safe and vnderminished of that Barbarous Nation, but also was the first that stopped their lewde inuasions, and there was the auncient and native language of Spayne conserued. Which thing that it maye the better bee vnderstode by what meanes it happened, we must briefly describe the whole tract and situation of the Pyrenees. We said before that Spayne was in forme of a Cherronese or almost as a Islande. environed with Sea on enery side, sauing onely in one place. The parte whereof, ioyneeth to Fraunce by a narrowe porcion of lande that lyeth betwene two Seas, and the Pyrene Mountaines lying a long from the Sunne rising in Winter, to the setting of the same in Sommer, environ it about lyke a wall. The bredth of the Istimos or narrow trench of land lying betwene the two Seas, being one distant but a litle from the

the

## Of the Saracen Historie. 33

the other is about CCliij. Miles. But the Pyrence mountaines stretch in length a great way further. For when they come to the angle and as it were into a Baye of the Cantabrique Ocean, which lyeth on the North syde of Spayne, they stretch out in length a great waye into the Equinoctiall West: and keeping of the Sea Cantabricum from the North part of Spayne, stretcheth euen into the plaine Ocean, that hemmeth in all the West parte of Spaine. That part of these Mountaines that lyeth toward Fraunce, is altogether barraine and vnfruitful: but that part which is next Spayne, is full of trees, and well peopled wth many townes and villages. We will therefore beginne our description of them, at the Ocean, where they ioyne in Spayne to the region called Guipuzque, but in Fraunce they border vpon the confines of the Vasconians. On the side of Spayne there is Stephans vally, aboue the which are Besaca and Guciutha, townes of the Vardulians, confining vpon the region of Nauarre & containeth Cantabria and Asturia: then are there other smaller hilles lying out from the Pyrences, within which are contained Basse and Squa, which doe make the vallayes Rocida or Ronus: on Fraunce side, nere to the confines of the Vasconians, is Iean Pedeportesburie, a strong & well fortified place. Nere to the valley Rocida, & arme which before wee talked of, is from them let into the Ocean, reaching and extending to the mayne Sea through Galicia or the Gallecians & the Asturians. But from the valley of Rocida, Eastwarde, they make y<sup>e</sup> valley called Salazar, wherein standeth a towne called Ociogauia: then Ronceuall wherein is Isaua: and the frontiers of the Kingdomes of Tarraconensis & Nauarre which was once called Nagiera. Next Fraunce are y<sup>e</sup> townes of Bierne. Now foloweth the hill of Camfrank: wherevnto in Fraunce is nere toyning the countrey of Peiraner & Vrdos, in Spain Villa noua, an auncient & noble Citie, Iaca, Saint Chri-



## The first Booke

stinesburie, and Iean Pigniasburie: and in the same tract, lower is  $\frac{1}{2}$  Mount Aragon. Hosca, and frō them, the Ocetanans and Cæsaraugusta now at this day called Saragoza. Out of the Mount that lieth ouer Saint Christines springeth the Ryuer Aragon: and because out of the mountaines of Ronceuall there springeth an other little Ryuer of the same name, called the lesse Aragon or Subordam, therefore thys is called the greater Aragon: and the whole region lying betwēne them, was of them called Aragonia. Where followeth in the Pyrennees a hill named Gauas, abutting on Fraunce syde, vppon Larount a countrey of the Bigorians, and on Spaynes syde, on the countrey of Tania. In which Countrey are the towne Salent, Saint Helens, and Biesca. Out of the hill Gauas, springeth a Ryuer named Gallecus, whiche hauing hys course through the valley Tania, falleth into Iber nēre to the Citie Saragoza. Then is there nerte, the Cragge of Horca, the steepest and roughest of them all, on which, on Fraunce syde consyneth the Countrey of Arne, and on that side towarde Spaine the same valley Tania, then the Clines of Tarla, from whom springeth the riuer Ara, which afterwarde runneth into the ryuer Cinca nēre to the towne Iuza, hauing on Spaines side the valleyes of Brote, and on Fraunce Votcia a valley of Guyenne. In the valley of Brote are these towne folowing: Torla, Brotum, Oto, Linares, Faulum, Bresse, Sarbise, Aierue, Larehitalla, Scartinum and Giasa. Then foloweth the craggie mount of Bielsa, from which a part of the Ryuer Cinca springeth, and the valley of Bio: and belowe, in this same very tract is the region Sobarbria: then in the Pyrennees, the vale Gistau, out of whose Hilles springeth an other Wyauche of the ryuer Cinca, whiche hauing hys course through Sobarbria, is augmented by receauing into it the ryuer Segre nēre to a towne called Scarpe, and then falleth into Iber nēre Meschinentz.

The

## Of the Saracen Historie. 34

The chiefest townes of fame in the balley Gistau are these: Gistaine, Senias, Serbetum, Jean Carauelsburie, Plannium, Poma, Gistaina, Cerquetum, Lamian, Catalaunica, Badaine. Then is there mozeouer in the Pyrenees the balley Bonasia, and the longe region of Ribagorge: wherein are Gabalaria, Grausium, Benauarre, Peralc and Paniello. Then are the Hilles of Castrum Leonis, vnder whome is the balley Aran or Fiscalia, which hath in it these townes: Biolla in Fiscalia, Lardies, Vorastrum, Saint Iustus, Ligarre, Aretiza, Sciabierre, Saint Olalia, Acortum, Tricase, Abese, Planiell, Saint Foelix, Safon, Silues, Spierle, Ascase, and beneath it, is the balley named Solana. Agayne in the Pyrenees, there followe Petre Blania, Altalauacce, where there is a passage throughe, the Hilles of Torre, and of the Countie Pimorent and Palladium. Under these, is the balley of Henui, wherein standeth the Citie Valentia, and Palasia: then the Clyues of Andoria, where there is a passage oute of Spaine, into Fraunce, wyth a balley of the same name, ouer agaynst which, in Fraunce is Arachsum in Aquitanie. Witherto the places of Nauarre.

Then a long Cerdania is the Mount Bellamir, the balley Bibesia, the Mount Liua and the pitche of Persa. Then they enter within the Countrey of Rocilion, ouer against the townes of Puigualed, Caudiese, Arotonie, Galamij Fanum, Perapertuza, Eitor and Leocara, where theye pprecindes & boundes end by the Mediterranean Sea. In the end wherof, in Spain there standeth Salses a Castle impregnable, haryng wia it a most plentiful fountaine: where in tymes paste stood the Citie Gerunda or Girona, & ouer against it, in Fraunce is Tēplū Veneris now called Cap de Creux. Directly on y other side in Gottalonia, other hilles do aunswere vnto it, which may be called y lesse Pyrenees or Antipyrenees.

These



## The first Booke

These beginning at the Mediterranean by a place called Coblure, extend through Pertuse, where is Bellaguarda Darnisium, Campredum and Canigum, a Mountayne famous by reason of many apparitions and delusions of deuilles. Then to Saint Nuries the virgins: where the riuer Segre springeth, which runneth hard by Lerida, Lunos Hill, Pandisium, Cadium, Vansa, Organa, by whom the riuer Segre beyng now increased to a bigge streame floweth, which in Gottalonia is called the Ship-water, and there agayne beginneth an other Mountayne, which reacheth to the towne of Setcomelse and Collagacium: where Nogera a riuer of Pallaresia doth end these Mountaynes, in which there be many Townes. Thus marking well this description, it shal easily appeare what part of these Mountaines the Saracens had in their power, and what parte resisted them. For whereas we sayd befoze, that Mugnoces Prince of Cerdania yelded hymselfe to the Saracenes: it is to be knowne that all the Region of Cerdania was in their subiection, which doth comprehend that parte of the Pyrennees next to the Mediterranean Sea, where Salles now standeth: as farre as the valley of Aran, and all Lampurdane, Puigcerdana, the Countrie of Rocilion and Pallase. But yet, soasmuch as all that Coast and region is very rough, bushye, and vnpleasaunt, many Christians remayned in these Hilles and Wooddes, many times making roades and incursions into the Townes to purueigh and get victuals, and alwayes infesting the Saracenes when they could espye any vauntage or oportunitie. Against whom Mugnoces with an Army marched, a fierce and a cruel man, who for that he knew well the region and situation of the Countrie, did great annoyance vnto them. Also in that part of the Pyrennees, wherin Benacum standeth, they had got into their possession Ribagorza, Camphrank and all the region lying along, even vnto the valleys of Gistaue and

and Bielsa. But farther they went not, by reason they were stopped and letted by strong holdes and fortresses buylt and set by partly before, and partly euen then for that onely purpose. Of which fort were in the region Sobarbria, Arcusa, Castellacium, the Castle of Moncluse, Scaniella, Clamofa, Abizanla, where the Castle of the King of Sobarbria stode: and on the other parte, Builium, Bucsa, Vicieni Fanum, Castellones and many more. In which region and tract all those christians were preserved which created Garzias Scimenefius King of Taraconian: and amonge them remayned and was conserued vncorrupte that language which the Gothes then vsed in Spaine. In that part of the Pyrenees whiche is nearest to the Ocean, that is to say, in Roncalia, Salazaria Squala, S. Steuens balley: and in the places nere adioyning as Alaba, Cantabria and other towne thereabout, the Christians liued safe and out of the Saracenes iniuries and tyrannicall oppressions, as well as earst they had remayned vntouched of the Romane Emperre: conseruinge their ancient tongue and language which was corrupted by the Armenian, tyll this day. Semblable those hilles which lye but right vnto the occidentall ocean, elbowing out that way, where the Asturians inhabite, remained free and cleare from the Saracenes tyrannie: and they also retained the Gothicall language, albeit somewhat altered.

In these quarters the power of Spayne began first to re-  
tinue & take hart agrace agayne. For Pelagius (whose fa-  
ther Fabla was by King Vitiza kyled to th'intent hee  
might carnally abuse his wyfe according to his owne  
fleshe concupyscence) fearing leaste Vitiza would no  
more spare him then he did his father before, fled into the  
Citie Logronia, once called Cantabria: and ther sojour-  
ned in the Court of Peter duke of Cantabria, both he and  
his sister with hym, a comely and moste beautifull  
Gentlewoman. But hearing of the lachrymable over-



## The first Booke

thow of Rodericke, and what hast the Saracenes bled in the pursuite of their victoꝝ, toke his Sister with hym and departed to Gigion, supposing y place to be safer for his securitie. But when Mugnuza duke of Gigion, contrarie to his hope & expectation had entred into league and was assistant to the Saracenes in their explotes, Pelagius dissimulyn. what he inwardly thought, and for the time bearyng two faces under one hood, remayned styll with the same Duke, untill Mugnuza fallynge soze in loue with his sayde Sister, and deuisinge whiche way to frame his plat to enioy his desired lust, sent her Brother Pelagius to Corduba, to consult & entreat about certaina affaires with the Saracen Princes. In whole absence, (bearyng her in hand that he would mary her) he had the spoyle of her maydenhead. Whereof Pelagius at his retourne beyng by his Sister certefied, departed thence with her, into the higher Country til a time fitter to bring that to passe which he purposed.

The great  
daungers  
and aduen-  
tures of Pe-  
lagius.

Mugnuza greatly moued with his departure, tolde Tarifa that Pelagius intended somewhat against the Pa-  
lestie of the Saracenicall Empire. Wherefoze Tarifa sent one of his Captaines with a band of Souldiours (if it were possible) to apprehend Pelagius. And now the Souldiours were come to Brette, (in which towne Pelagius was then resiaunt) who being priuely aduertised by a Christian, (one that was with them and knew all their counsailes) toke his Horse, and ridinge all vpon the spurre till he came to the great riuer Pionia, toke the water and sinamme ouer. Whiche they that pursued hym, not daryng to do so, dzead of drownyng, hee escaped their clutches, and came with heauy cheere into the Vale of Canica. Where by the prouidence of God hee mette with the Magistrates and Deeres of many Cities of Cantabria and Asturia, whiche were goyng to surrender and yelde themselves and their Cities to the Saracenes.

# Of the Saracen Historie. 36

cees. And when hee understode the errand and cause of their iourney, it is reported that he made vnto them an oration in these words follovyng.

Truely I cannot but greatly bewaile the calamitie of these times : & if it were not vngodly so to do, I would extreemly poure out heapes of accusations againste the fates and destinyes, which haue differred my natyuitie tyll these dayes, thus to see such slaughter and lamentable manquellyng of my deare Countreyemen and (which is moze) such despight and contempt of God and his deuine Lawes. For of whom Gods honoure and glozy is now adayes moze contempned and deryded, I cannot easelye iudge : whether of yonder barbarous Belboudes the Saracenes, who luyinge in the foggie mistes of diuyls the darknesse, (caste befoze the eyes of their mindes by that damned soule Mahomet) not knowyng the true God nor the honoure due to his holy name, do prophane the holie Temples. Wherein his praise and sacred woode was wont to be preached, trayning vp yonge Babes and Infantes whome Chyste commaunded to be brought vnto him, with their impious rites and diabolicall relligion : and nourselyng them in the filthye suddes of their detestable traditions : do perforce rauish and lyke deuilles pollute infinite Christian Women and Virgins & acknowledge the true & sincere relligion of the omnipotent God. Oppressing so many as they may once get into their hands with most horrible and vspeakable slauierye, disposyng them not only of their temperal goodes, wyues and Children, but also takyng away from them their faith the rock of their saluation, & finally dimme the glozy of God with a patched doctrine of most Idolatrous blasphemy, bringyng them to everlastinge perdition both of bodye and soule. Or els rather maye I iudge the same of you, who (despaynyng of the goodnesse and mightye

his pithe  
Oration to  
his Coun-  
treymen.

¶ if

power



## The first Booke

power of God, whom you know to haue shedde his most  
precious blood for your redemption, by whom you know  
that eternall saluation is purchased and freely geuen to you  
and through whose bounteous gift you haue so many sure  
helpes at your most neede, putting you in an vndoubted  
hope of victorie ouer your blasphemous enemies (yet will  
some thus shamefully and dastardly vnasked and of your  
owne accord to put your neckes into the halter, as though  
there were no more hope of helpe and better fortune, as  
though you had no God of whome redresse and ayde in  
aduersitie were to be hoped and craved, or as though you  
had no fortified townes and strong places of defence to re-  
pulse this present hostilitie. As though it were not a great  
deale better (valiantly fighting in Gods quarell vnder  
the banner of Christian faith) to chaunge this shorke and  
transitorie life with an euerlasting & glorious life, then  
to suffer these things befoze recited. And now behold, you  
which sometime were hable to encounter with the Ro-  
manes being Lordes and Conquerours of the whole earth  
you which could not be vanquished and subdued by them  
that were the warlikest and stoutest men in the worlde  
to whom Germanie, Britayne, Fraunce, Spaine, Grecia,  
yea Italie also the Queene and maiestie of all the worlde,  
all Europa, all Affrica and Asia obeyed: you which in no  
wise coulde be brought to liue vnder the lawes and iuris-  
diction of that very well gouerned Empire: you who a-  
lone remayned vnconquered of the Gothes, the fiercest  
wasters and crushers of the same Empryre: you I say (the  
power of all Europa being yet whole, and nothing thereof  
lost but the open places of Spaine onely, which also mys-  
caried partly by treason and partly by the foolish wilful-  
nes of King Roderike, whose sinifre fate brought him to  
a destruction and end agreeable to his vicious life, who not  
sparing for that ayde which was conuining hable to haue  
scourged and discomfited those that were the enemies of  
our

our Countrey vnadvisedly ioyned battaile with his foes, and being disloyally circumvented by his own traiterous subiectes, receiued the reward and by2e due for such rashnes and wickednes, which wilfull dealing of him beyng the head, must needs rebound to the generall harme of al the inferior members of the common wealth) will now wilfully enthrall and make your selues bonde slauies to beare the intollerable yoke a people of al others most vile, most abiect, most bastardly and wicked. If God for our manifold sinnes and offences were so highly displeased, and so much tourned away from vs, that he would not admitte our humble prayers and requestes (which I will neuer be perswaded to beleue: for he is wont neuer to forsake such as be vnfeinedly penitent, and tourne vnto hym with true contrition of heart and newnesse of life.) And if all the rest of the whole world were obedient to the Saracens Lawes, and that wee had no sure places or walled townes for refuge and succour left to resort vnto: yet were it much better valiantly to die vpon them then to see and suffer those thinges, which perforce we should suffer at their handes. Bute Creatures and sauage Beasts, if their whelpes be taken from them, most egerly and impetuously flie in the faces of them that haue taken them: whom if they may finde and overtake, they obiect them selues into the extremitie of any perill, contemning the sharpe edges of naked Swordes, yea death it selfe, for the rescue of their sely young ones. And you which are men, to whom nature hath geuen not onely the procreation of children and a care to bring them vp, which she hath geuen to other Creatures aswell as to you, but also hath entirely committed to your charge a speciall regard to their education, who ought so to instruct & traine them in the true feare & honour of Almighty God, if they may be enfrained, chysed and made heyres of life euerlasting in the Kingdome of heauen, will notue (alas the while) humble and,



## The first Booke

• subiect your selues willingly and willfully vnto the obey-  
• saunce of them which ere it be long will seduce and vio-  
• lently pull away your Babes and childezen from you and  
• plucke the feare of God cleane out of their hearts. Where  
• is now that auncient faith, godly zeale and deuout religion  
• that was wont to be, when younge childezen not yet pas-  
• sing the age of .xviij. yeeres, and holy Virgins had leiser to  
• suffer all kinde of Martirdome and punishment then to  
• worshippinge those false putatiue Goddesses, whom (notwith-  
• standing) most skoute and wyle nations worshipped and  
• reuerenced: Where be they, which haue aduentured their  
• liues in so manye manye battayles for their libertie and  
• freedome: What souldiers, glowing Plates, terrible Mac-  
• kings, sharpe swordes, bloudie Axes, al the sortes of tor-  
• tures & paines that could be deuised, in times passed were  
• not able to terrefie and turne Childezen from the true re-  
• ligion and worshipping of God, to Jooles and other phan-  
• tasticall trumperies of Sathans inuention: and now men  
• of growen and ripe yeeres, men of all others most skoute  
• and valiant, yea the chiefe Princes of cities, vpon whom  
• the lyght of the sacred Gospell of Iesus Christ hath shy-  
• ned and bene opened, tremble and shake for feare of a  
• lousie rable of Saracenes, and are goyng to submit and  
• prostrate themselves befoze them, wythout eyther hea-  
• ryng or sayng any weapon, or receyving sommonce of  
• any warre. But peradventure you hope to speade the bet-  
• ter, and that they will shewe moze clemencie to you if  
• you voluntarily yelde your selues, and that all your Reli-  
• gion and Lawes shall remayne safe and in suche force as  
• they did befoze, and that your Wyues and Childezen shall  
• not be corrupted, harmed nor vncourteously handled.  
• For wyth suche sayze glosing promyses these cutthroates  
• and villanous Traitors to theyr Countrey vse com-  
• monlye to deceyue and enueigle the simple people: as  
• though there could be any faith in them which haue be-  
trayed

## Of the Saracen Historie. 38

trayed their Lordes, their Countrey, their friendes, and  
 kinnsfolkes, yea God himselfe their Lord and maker,  
 Did not Valentia a most strong, maritimall, and famous  
 Citie yelde vnto them vppon this promise: and yet as  
 sone as they were entred and had possession of the same,  
 they eyther cast out all the inhabitauntes, or kylled them,  
 or else by compulsion enforced them vnto their Secte. Did  
 not Toledo the very same, and Siuyle and a greate  
 manye of other noble Cities, which being deceiued with  
 this hope and bewitched with these flattering charmes,  
 yelded themselues vnto them: These domesticall exam-  
 ples are sufficient to teache you, that it is a great deale  
 better, valiauntly to dye together like men, and so  
 much the more, so that as yet thinges are not so farre  
 spent but that they maye bee recured and holpen. You  
 haue hygge Craggie Mountaines for refuge, and in them  
 some places inaccessible, you haue some Townes moste  
 strongly fortified, vppon trust wherof many times a smal  
 number hath discomfited populous armies. And you are a  
 sort of tall men, whom the nature of the heauen and earth  
 hath made skoute and valiaunt, acquainted with labours,  
 and hitherto invincible. Also there lyue a great sorte  
 der the Saracenes, whiche (I put you out of all doubt)  
 will come from all partes and toyne them selues to you,  
 if they once sawe you peepe vp and auance your selues  
 in this your so iust quarrell. Behynde at our backes is  
 Fraunce, a Region at this daye most flourishing bothe  
 in Chyualrie and skilfull Capitaynes, from whence (no  
 doubt) we shall haue ayde and succour. For the  
 Frenche will not any longer suffer this cowardly na-  
 tion whiche hath already encroched as farre as the  
 Mediterranean Sea beyonde the Pyrenes, so saucely  
 and malapertly to plaie these cruell Pageauntes and fu-  
 rious pzaunkes against the borders of their Kingdome, in  
 suche sorte as they haue done to others.

And



## The first Booke

And God hymselfe (if we wyl tourne vnto hym with a mendment of lyfe) wyl layde and strengthen vs, who being on our side, euerye one of vs needeth not to feare a hundred thousand of these blasphemous Grynneagots and lewde vyllaynes.

This oration sank so deeply into their bzaines that beyng perswaded with the pithy force therof (so Pelagius was vehement and verie earnest in his matter, and so his wisdom and sanctytie of lyfe highlie esteemed among those people) they returned every man to his home and calling their neighbours together, tolde vnto them the causes of their retourne: to wytte, how that Pelagius (whose vertue and vnspotted lyfe was well knowne vnto them all, because as before we haue shewed, he dwelled long among them, myraculously deliuered out of the cruell handes of bloudy tyrants) met them as though hee had bene some messenger sent downe from heauen, who shewed vnto them what an heynous offence they shoulde commit, and what a pernicious acte they had purposed to doe. Wherefore not ceassing as well in open Sermons, as in priuat talke to perswade the people to constancie and godlynesse, he was by common assent of all the people created King of Cantabria and Asturia in the yere after Christ. 717 Which done, they all got them to mount Anseua. When the fame of this matter was blased abroad and knowne throughout Spayne, all the Gothes that could any way scape or by any meanes thyst themselves out of the handes of that barbarous nacion, conceyving great hope of libertie & good luck, toke them to their weapons and ioyned side with hym, and such as coulde not be the same out of hande, with all care and diligence sought oportunitie and occasion how to fle to hym.

Tarifa sent against hym Abraem Alcamack w a great Army, and with him Bysshop Opasius Sonne of the king of

## Of the Saracen Historie. 39

of Egica, and Metropolitane of Syuyle, who (as before hath bene tolde) adhered to the faction of Iulian and other traitours of their Countrey. Pelagius hearing what great preparatiō was made against him, & seeing himselfe not of equall power to repulse so great a multitude, entred w<sup>th</sup> a few of his companie (but of the valiauntest among his whole bande) into a certain Denne within y<sup>e</sup> Mount Anseua, appointing the rest to defend y<sup>e</sup> narrow passages and streight wayes. Whither whē y<sup>e</sup> Saracens were come, Opasius wēt about w<sup>th</sup> many glosing termes to perswade them that kepte the streites, to yelde them selues vnto the Moores, but when he saw his labour was all in vaine, there beganne a cruell and a bloudie bickering. The Saracenes shotte so many Arrowes and Dartes into the denne, that they seemed to rayne from Heauen as faste as dropes of water in a stormie sholwer, and to light among them as thicke as Hailestones. But God myraculously making their dartes to rebutte against the same persons that shotte them, there were so many of them either slaine or wounded that they were forced to recule and geue back. Then the Chyistians vndoubtedly knowing y<sup>e</sup> God was with them & fought for thē, yel- ded most hartie thanks vpo their knees vnto his diuine Maestie, y<sup>e</sup> it had pleased him, thus to relieue & visit his pooze afflicted people: which done, they boldly issued out, & vtterly repulsed all y<sup>e</sup> residue. There were slaine of y<sup>e</sup> Saracens in this cōflict about. xx. M. & of the Chyistians very few or none at all: for wryters make no mention thereof. Those Saracens which escaped from the battaile, fled into y<sup>e</sup> top of the hill: which by diuine miracle being shaken w<sup>th</sup> a terrible earthquake, and falling downe into the Riuer Iua, running by the fote of the same hill, they were all cast awaye and perished. Opasius and Mugnuza two Archtraitours, as they were fleeing (for they went not vp with their seloues vnto the hill) were taken: and

A miracle  
of God in  
deliuering y<sup>e</sup>  
Chyistians.

Traitours  
cannot perse-  
uer long.

¶

Mugnuza



## The first Booke.

Mugnuza in a place called Olaglias was straightwayes by the Asturians put to death, and the Citie Gigion vtterly ruynated to the perpetuall ignominie and shamefull reproche of the said Mugnuza p<sup>r</sup>ince therof. What was done with Opasius, Autho<sup>r</sup>s make no mention.

When Mucas heard hereof, suspecting that Iulian & others of the same conspiracie, were p<sup>r</sup>iuie to the counsells of Pelagius, he straightwayes commaunded Iulian and Sifibertus and Ebasius the sonnes of king Vitiza to be put to death, and thus in the ende they receiued a iust reward of their treason. Which example so terrefied many of Iulians retinue and faction, that they renolted from Mucas and went to the Asturians: and those whiche liued vnder the tyzannie of the Saracens, dayly by stelth and p<sup>r</sup>iuily flying to Pelagius, his power within shor<sup>t</sup>e space was so encreased, that they which a little before were scantly able to defende their owne, now recouered many of those Regions and Cities which the Saracens before had brought vnder their subiection. For the Citie Legio (at this daye called Leon) was immediatly to them surrendred: so also was Rota, Mansilia, Canicas (commonly called Cangas) Tineum and many other towne<sup>s</sup> of that Countrey.

The



¶ Containing the declination of the  
Saracenicall Empyre, till the be-  
ginning of the Turkes.



**T**he Saracens in the East being in a great  
phrensie that their Siege certayne yeres  
passed layd to Constantinople was frus-  
trate, and hearing that (Leo by whose on-  
ly meanes their attempte was repelled)  
was now Emperour, leuyed a mighty ar-  
mie againe and deviding the same into two partes tooke  
in hand the same enterpryse afreshe, purposing then or ne-  
uer to bying their desires to a finall effect and conclusion.  
Malsamas the Generall of thone armie, transfretting with  
his cōpanie into Thracia, spoyled a great part of that Pro-  
uince and geuing a sharpe assault vnto the chiefe citie and  
Imperiall Seat therof, encamped himself on y<sup>e</sup> West side  
of y<sup>e</sup> same Citie nere to y<sup>e</sup> walles, where there is an Isth-  
mos or narrow portiō of land hauing Sea on either syde, &  
on that part he laid battrie. Zulciminie the chiefe Bishop,  
laye befoze the citie on the Sea with a nauie of thre thou-  
sand Sayle, as many do affirme. For the citie Constant-  
tinople being both very buige and beautifull and aswel by  
nature as Arte most strong and impregnable, standeth at  
the mouth of the Thracian Sea Bosphorus, (where Asia  
and Europa do almost ioyne together, hauing no moze but  
one small streit Sea to part them) by which it is emptyed  
& hath issue into y<sup>e</sup> Sea Propontis: where there stretcheth  
out a little Cape or elbow of Sea full of wyndings & tur-  
nings in, as though they were Hauens. For which cause  
the place is called by the name of a Horne, because by rea-  
son of the seuen hilles of the Citie hanging out into it, it

Constantis  
nople againe  
besetged.



## The second Booke

bath as it were many boughes or bzaiches like y<sup>e</sup> hoznes of a Hart. Along betwene this Cape and Propontis, there runneth a certaine hill, in forme like a Cherronesc or half Ile, beyng on every side almost enuironed with water, contayning in length from the west into the East aboute thyrty furlonges, howbeit it riseth not greatly in anye height, but the ridges and clyues thereof do runne styll a long Propontis. On the North side, where his forme is lyke a Hozne (which a litle before we termed a Cape or Elbow) it hath seauen Hylls annexed vnto it, of the which foure, do hang out into the Cape, and that which is washed with Bosphorus, is the greatest and maketh the base of a Triangle: for the forme of this Citie and countrey beyng almost a perfect Ile is thre cornerde. This hath two Promontories, one lyinge towarde Propontis, west of Hebdomum, the other Northward, which defendeth the mouth of the Baye from the iniurie of wyndes, and is called Chrysoceras. From whiche if a streight lyne be drawen to the seauenth and innermost Hyll of all (which also defendeth the Baye from the west wynde) you must needs include y<sup>e</sup> plaine champaine of Pera (now called Galata) within the compasse of the Arche, made by reason of the continuall ridge and cliffe of the Cherronesc. The length of that Cape or Baye is about lx. furlonges in the innermost part whereof, are the mouthes of the Riuers Cydrus and Barbysa: the latitude or bredth thereof is diuers and not in all places alyke: where it is mooste, it passeth not sixe furlonges, and where it is lest, not aboue thre. The streits of it are very narrow. For on the north part, wherein the towne Pera standeth, there hangeth out a Promontory into the South named Metopicum and Cyclobium: and lyke wise an other on Asia side, direct ly abutting vpon the middle Streites of the Baye, named Damalicum. This Cherronesc on the west side, where

# Of the Saracen Historie. 41

the mayne Land of Thracia lyeth, doth seperate this Chobow or Bay from Propontis with a narrowe portion of land lying betwene the two Seas.

The bredth of that same Isthmos or narrowe share of Land, where it toucheth the seauenth Hill and inner corner of the Citie, is fifty paces: and further beyonde, it is greater. Thus in this plot of ground being a perfect Ile on all sides saving one, is situate the noble Citie of Constantinople, once called Bizantium, ouer againste whom, on the other shoze side of the Streit, standeth the towne Pera, once called Galata, which also maketh promontories into y<sup>e</sup> Horned Bay. And in Asia there is directly ouer against it, the Citie Chalcedon. The entries of this Créeke or Hauen in the narrowest places are enclosed and fast shut vp with a great Cheyne, which reachyng from the Tower Pharea to the Promontorie Chrysoceras is extended and drawen in length ouer to the Metopique Promontorie of Galata, where there is also an other strong fortresse or Blockhouse. The Citie it selfe is fenced and fortifyed with three strong walles, two verie broad and deepe ditches, and many Towers and Bulwarkes beside. It hath on every side a playne prospect. The middle part of the Citie ryseth vp a litle in height, by reason of the Hylles whereon it standeth. The whole circuite or compasse of the Citie is about xiii. myles.

Constantinople is in compasse xiii. myles.

This so noble, and flourishing Citie, Constantine in the place where before Byzantium stode (vndoubtedly y<sup>e</sup> enough as the sequelle proued) buylded, and translated the Imperiall Seat with all the riche Ornamentes of the Citie of Rome thither. For although the soyle where it standeth seemed to be a place most fit for an Imperiall citie, yet y<sup>e</sup> disposition of the ayre and destenie would not suffer this citie to be y<sup>e</sup> head seate & keye of the Romane empire. For as not only every Country but also every citie haue their proper fates, maners, fashions and rites: so they



## The second Booke

may not safelye be translated or remoued into an other place, no although the verye same persons and Lawes bee translated and remoued thither with them.

For the disposition and temperature of the ayre altereth mens manners, which being altered their destinies and Fortunes are also chaunged. Which to be true, the ende proued apparantlie. For the Empire being translated almost into the borders of Asia, the Emperors themselves and the Romane Legions were afterwarde chosen out of that Province, who being infected with their Greekeish lightnesse and ambition, seditiously practized sundry factions amonge themselves, and effeminated with the nyce wantonnesse of Asia, were not of power to repel the incursions of sordaine Barbaryans: when as in y<sup>e</sup> meane season, Italic and Rome, the Maistresse and Castle of the whole earth, lacking a head and hauyng lost the right vse of warlike discipline was made an open pray for all nations to inuade. And thus that Empyre which (lyke a good tree) in his owne soyle bare very good fruit, beyng transplanted into a strange aire and ground, within short time perished and came to ruyne.

But to retourne agayne to our purposed narration. Makhamas aduanced his power to besiege by lande, that part which we sayde stode in the Isthmos or strict pece of ground, betwene the Horne and Propontis, whiche could be oppugned none other way but onely by land. He because his purpose was, utterlye to disapoynt the Citizens that no victuall shoulde be conueighed vnto them, and for that his desire was to encroche as nere to the walles as could be, so politiquely lodged his Garrisons & Host on euery side that the fronte of his Armye, was as though it had bene a Hothe next to y<sup>e</sup> walles, & thence as the feldes farther of from the narrow land, stretch out in breadth & scope, raught out along about the Cape or Bay vnto the mouthes of the riuers which we sayd had their yssues

## Of the Saracen Historie. 42

yslues & fallynge into the same. For this Host was mer-  
ueilous populous, and so mydable, and therfore required  
great ground & elbow roome. From thence making many  
roades into the countrey adioigning, he lamentably distres-  
sed the same, and thzeatning vtter subuersion to the Citie  
laide battre and siege to it with Dynes, Bastiles and all  
kinde of Engynes that might any way further his pre-  
tence. On thother side, Zulciminie with his Pauye on  
the Sea enuironed the whole Citie, on that side towarde  
Propontis and Bosphorus from the narrowe lande to the  
Hozomontoye Metopick, insomuche that to them that  
looked out of the Citie, y Sea Propontis and Bosphorus  
seemed all ouer to be covered with wodde lyke a Forrest.  
He slept no moze in his businesse then Malsamas dyd: but  
with sea skalyng ladders and such Gunnes as then were  
in vse, assaulted the citie and most fiercely shooke it.

But the besieged Citizens were so vigilauit and so  
harry withal, that all their attemptes and deuoyzes were  
wholy frustrate. Therfore seing they could not this way  
preneile, they thought to win their purpose by long siege  
and tract of time. But Zulciminie in y meane season died  
in his owne Campe, whereby there arose a seditious tu-  
mult among the Saracenes for the chosinge of a new bys-  
shop, and so that cause the siege was for a time intermit-  
ted. At length Aumar the sonne of Abdimazid was cre-  
ated Bysshoppe in the dead mans place, in the yere 721.  
The wynter was then so extreemly colde, that all the ri-  
uers were hard frozen ouer with yce. And also they had  
victuall dayly bzought into their Campe out of Egipt, yet  
because the number of the men and Beastes was excē-  
dyng great and the winter extreemely colde, a great sorte  
of them dyed, some with colde, some for samyne and some  
of diseases, & a great rablement of them thinking to get  
some bootie abroad, yssued out of their owne Campes and  
made incursions into the frontiers of Bulgaria, where  
they



## The second Booke

Burning  
Glasses.

they were of the Bulgarians incountred withall, and in manner all slayne, as they were about their pyllage. At which time, there were (as some affirme) of them slaine xxx. thousand. Leo the Emperour also was with them to bring, by an artificiall devise of fireworke, wrought by a Glasse, as Archymedes of Syracuse aforesetime did. By meanes of which Glasse he set on fire the flecte of the Saracenes and so spoyled them that few of them escaped but burnt and they which escaped were take of the Grekes, by reason that the Captaines of them for feare of the fire, yelded themselves & fledde for succour vnto the Grekes. This fine inuention founde out by a certaine cunning Architect, merueilously appauled their spirites: for the Sea about the Shippes seemed to be al on a light fire. Such another kind of burning glasse as this, wee reade was at Alexandria in Egypt in the watche Tower named Pharus, wherewith the inhabitants when they lysted, holding the same ful against the Sunne Beames, set the Shippes of their enemies on fire a great way off.

During this while, Mucas & Tarifa hauing subdued Spaine, began to bee had in suspicion by Aumar. Wherupon they came both together to salute their new Bishop and to cleare themselves from all suspicious crimes that coulde be objected against them. Where Tarifa accused Mucas of extortion and layde to his charge that hee had purloyned the Princes treasure during his regiment in Spaine: of which crime he being attainted and found guilty against the high Bishop, took such inward griefe that he dyed. In whose place, Aumar preferred Gizid to the Lieutenantship of Affrica, and Tarifa he appointed Regent of all Spaine. Wherefore Gizid with a well appointed Paue of thre hundredeth and fiftie Saile, with the supplie of the other Legions and victuall, made his course directly toward Constantinople: but hearing by the way tidings, how the Constantinopolitans had consumed

# Of the Saracen Historie. 43

summed the most part of the Saracenes Ships with fire, he durste not aduenture any farther, but stayed vpon the coastes of Bithynia, robbing and makinge spoyle of the Country round about: In which place he had but a colde welcome geuen hym by the Romane Legions beyng there in Garrisons, who setting fiercely vpon hym, kyled many of his people and so skarred y residue that they were glad to retire. Yet neuertheles the terrestrial army vnder the conduct of Malsamas, desisted not their Siege befoze the Citie, and yet they were so sore pinched with famine and hungre, that they were fayne to eate the dead Carion of any maner of Beast: yea they eat dyed ordure and dung, and are reported also, to be so nere dyuen that for very neede they eate their owne fellows fleshe being dead, such an exceding desire had they to conqueze that Imperiall Seate and Citie royall of all the Romane Empire orientall.

Constantinople in the meane season escaped not free, but was plagued with as great mortalytie an other way. For the pestilentiall plague consumed wel nere .CCC. thousand persons. When tydings of these so great and so many ouerthrowes and infortunate calamities was brought to Aumar, he was therewith so dismayd that he immediatly addressed his letters to Malsamas, with commaundement forthwith vpon the receipt thereof to retourne home with all his Army left alieue. Wherevpon Malsamas shipped his Souldiours and departed. But there sodenly arose such a vehement tempest and boisterous wynd, that all their Shippes (sailing onely tenne) perished in the Sea, whereof five were taken by the Romans, the residue retourned home to bringe newes of this their heauy chaunce & myffortune. But Abdeluzite the Nephieu of Mucas, whome Mucas at his departure out of Spaine appointed his Deputie, marryng y Quene Egilona late wife of Rodericke, by her counsell proclaymed,

Lothsome  
fampne as  
monge Sara-  
cenes

Great  
plague in  
Constanti-  
nople.

Shiptwreck



## The second Booke

med, him selfe king of Syuyle. Whereat the Saracenes greatly fampng & chafng, kylled both him and his wife, and in his roome substituted an other of Mucas his kinsmen named Aiub, tyll such time as their high Byshoppe should take order for sendinge some other. This Aiub repayred and reedified the Citie Bilbilis (wherein the noble Poet Martiall was long before bozne) ruinated and much defaced during those warres, and many other Cities in Spaigne: and named it by his owne name Calataiub, which is now called Calataiud. But he coulde not performe his purpose so fullye aboute the rest, because there was diuers in sundrye partes of Spaigne, which (vsurpyng the Kingdome) were obstacles in his waye. For whereas Corduba was the head Citie and Seate royall of all Spayne, and the Captainshippes or gouernance of al the other Cities and Prouinces were distributed and bestowed vpon the noble men of the Countrey, euery one imitating the fact of Abdeluzite, called themselves Kinges of those places where their auctoritie and Iurisdiction laye. Whereby Spayne was deuided into many Kingdomes, as the Kingdome of Syuyle, Granado Giaen, Murtia, Denia, Sciatiua (which was once called Setaba) Valentia, Tortosa, Lerida, Fraga, Saragoza and many other les places not of so great fame as these. which Kinges so long as they agreed among themselves, oftentimes afflicted Christendome with great ouerthrowes and oppzessions: but after that they fell at discorde and intestine variance among themselves, they gaue occasion to the Christians, to recouer Spaigne againe into their owne rightfull possession. Which thing was first attempted (as before we haue shewed) by Pelagius, who vsinge his valiauntnesse, wisdom and myracles to his best commoditie, and happelye takyng occasion by this dissention and discorde of his Enemies amonge themselves,

Iuanus

## Of the Saracen Historie. 44

Wanne agayne many cities and deliuered sundry towne  
out of the miserable thraldome of their tyrannie. With  
hym did Alphonsus the sonne of Peter Duke of Calabria  
ioyne and take parte, being descended of the ancient line  
of Richard King of Gothes, vnto whome Pelagius gaue  
his Daughter Orismunda in mariage: and they two at-  
chined many notable victories ouer the Miskereunte  
Moores.

In the East, after the discease of Aumar the Caliph,  
Gizide the Sonne of Abdimelik succeeded and was in-  
stalled in the pontificate in the yere of our Lorde 722. In  
whose raigne, there stepped vp an other Caliph and Gi-  
zid in Persia, whose name was Moalabs. Against whom  
was sent with a great army Masabnak, who vanquish-  
ed hym in battayle and subdued all Persia: and thus Gi-  
zid the sonne of Abdimelik, was the onely Caliph of  
all the Saracenes, who raigned thre yeres and then died.  
After whom, his Sonne Euclide was created Caliph,  
who entred the Romane Provinces in Asia and Euro-  
pa with a huge power: but within a short while, without  
perpetrating any notable exployte worthy of remem-  
brance, he gaue hymselfe altogether to ydolencesse, sloth  
and voluptuousnesse. Notwithstanding, in the seconde  
yere of his Empire he sent Malsamas with an Host a-  
gain into Cappadocia, who toke the Citie Cesarea and  
Euclite he sent by an other way into Thracia, who ha-  
uing wasted and spoyled it, retourned into Syria.

About this time nere the Sea coastes of the lesse A-  
sia, the earth in the bottom of the sea burned, in such sort,  
that at the first there appeared nothyng but smoke, but  
within a while after such incredible store of heat burning  
Pyrmise stones (as though they had bene little hills in the  
Sea) swam aboue water, that with the same Pyrmises,  
all the shoares of lesse Asia, Lesbos, Abydos and Macedo-  
nia were full, and y Sea it self seemed all couered ouer, &



## The second Booke

certaine Island at that time appeared and was discovered nere the holy Ile. After this, Euclide sent one Muauias and Amer with an Hoste of. 90000. Saracenes to besiege Nicza a Citie of Bichynia: which being most fiercely and strongly with all arte and pollicie by them assailed, the Christians most valiantly defending, and beating them alwayes back with great slaughter and effusion of bloude, at length they raised their Siege and returned home without any harme doing, saving y<sup>e</sup> in their retourne they tooke a little Towne called Atcum. Afterward y<sup>e</sup> Prince of Gazaria, sonne to Cagan king of Bulgaria, warred vpon the Saracens in the borders of Armenia: and (Gradack the Prince of Armenia & Media a Saracene bozne, being in battaile vanquished and slaine,) he brought those two Prouinces againe vnder the subiection of the Romane Empire. And in the yere. 730. Malsamas with a huge power entred into the Streights of Caucasus, and gaue battaile vnto the Turkes (who at those dayes were called the Hunnes Teutazites which is to saye, Gentle) a fierce & terrible people dwelling within those Mountaynes. This bloody battaile continued a whole day, and many slaine on both sides, till night came and brake of their fight, vncertaine as yet to whether side the victorie woulde incline. But Malsamas retired into Armenia, so he had now concluded a peace with y<sup>e</sup> sonne of King Cagan.

During all this while, Pelagius hauing good successe in his Spanishe affaires against the Saracenes, the Tarraconians liuing in the mountaines, by the example of the Asturians created Garcias Scimenecius their King in the denne of Iean Pignia, called Panouio. And within a while after Pelagius when he had reigned. xiiij. yeres dyed, in the yere of our Lord. 732. After whom his sonne Fasila succeeded, who in the secōd yere of his raigne was in a woodde deuoured of wilde Beares, leauing no child behind

# Of the Saracen Historie. 45

behind him. These kings appointed the chiefe Citie of their Kingdome at Legio which is now called Leon, and bare in their Coate Armour, a Lyon purple in a Shielde Argent. Not because of the name of the citie where their Seate royall was, whiche hath his name not of a Lyon but of a Legion of Souldiours whiche Cocceius Nerua placed there: but because they fought so couragiously and eighely for the sauegard and libertie of their countrey, as though they had bene most fierce Lyons. In the raigne of this Fasila, the Saracenes passed into Fraunce by that part of the Pyrenées that was in their possession by the Mediterranean Sea. Fraunce was then possessed of the Frankes a people of Germanie, who about 400. yeres after the incarnation, departing out of their native Countrey to seeke some other place where to plant themselves, had that part of high Bourgoyne next to Germanie geuen vnto them to inhabite, by Aetius a Romane Senatour who then was Viceroy of the Province of Gaule, because he would haue some strong garrison and defence against the Hunnes (who were then issued in great plumes out of their owne Countrey, and vnder the conduct of Attila, spoiled and wasted Europa) if they shoulde fortune to inuade Gaule, which Realme is yet of their name called Fraunce. For the Frankes were the warlikest & stoutest people in all Germanie, inhabiting (as I thinke) that region or portion thereof which is yet called Franconia or Frankland: who after ward by little and little enlarging their dition, obtained at length the regiment and Empire of all Fraunce, in so much that the name of the Frankes extended very farre. But when the Franke or Frenche Kings addicted themselves to an idle and voluptuous life and degenerated from the former stoutnes and valiance of their progenitors, not executing the administration of their affaires in their owne proper persons but employed the same by vnderofficers of their Court and Graund

The Armes  
of the kings  
dome of  
Lyon.

How Fraunce  
was first  
named.



## The second Booke

maisters of their Household, Pipine the first of that name Sonne of Arnolph Duke of Bauaria first attained this honour and dignitie by subduing and getting the vpper hand of y<sup>e</sup> Lieutenants and Captaines of the kings Provinces, who seeing the King to be a weake and vnwarlike man, tyrannically ruled the Countrey according to their own sensual lustes & for their private commodities.

Then in the raigne of Theodoricus the second, the excellent dexteritie and worthy vertue of Charles Martellus second Sonne to this Pipine was in that office very conspicuous and renoumed throughout all the lande of Fraunce, in so much that he was accompted and taken as the Prince of all the people. At the same time, was King of Aquitanie (the called Gallia Gottica) one Eudo a Gothian bozne, whom King Roderik made ruler of y<sup>e</sup> Province, but bearing of y<sup>e</sup> discomfiture of y<sup>e</sup> King his Liege Lord, he made himselfe king thereof. This Eudo whyle Charles Martellus was buised w<sup>th</sup> other warres in Germanie, began to surmise certaine quarells, which brake out into open warre with the French Capitaines of the places nere adioyning to the limites of his Territories, whom (going about to defend their titles & rightes) he afflicted with many overthowes. Wherefore Martellus tooke the matter in hande and warred against him. And at the same time the Saracens passing the Pyrenices, had taken Narbon, and in it shewed all kind of outrageous crueltie, because they woulde by that example make the countrey afraide any more to withstande the. Wherefore Eudo considering with himselfe that he was vnable to warre at one time both with y<sup>e</sup> Frankes & the Saracens, and for y<sup>e</sup> Mugnoces a man in great fauour and estimation with y<sup>e</sup> Saracens was his Sonne in law, he thought it better for him to make a league & amitie with y<sup>e</sup> Saracens the with y<sup>e</sup> Christians. Which after he had by Mugnoces meanes and friendship brought to passe, looking big vpon the  
the

## Of the Saracen Historie. 46

the matter and bearing himselfe stoute by reason of the aide and succour, which they sent to him, he inferred much harme to the Franke Nation. But when he perceaued, that the Saracens fortified with their owne garrisons, and kept to their owne uses, al such Cities & townes as they entred into, he begā when it was to late to beshewe himselfe and wishe that he had neuer attempted any such enterprize. For they kept Nimes, Mountpelier, & Auinion with all the places thereabout in their owne possession. Whereupon Eudo gathering all his power together to profligate and drive them out, gaue vnto them battayle, wherin he was discomfited. Mugnoces by whose meanes and procurement the league and amitie was concluded, greatly complayned of the iniurious dealing of Eudo in falsifying his faith & infringing his promise accordingly as he had vndertake for him. Whereupon Abderama king of Gottalonia marching with an host against him, besieged him in y<sup>e</sup> Castle of Cerdania: out wherof, Mugnoces for scarcitie of water escaping, & fleeing into thickets and hillish places, fell into y<sup>e</sup> hands of another cōpany of Saracens, who tooke him prisoner & beastly slew him and sent his head & his wiues (y<sup>e</sup> daughter of Eudo) to Abderama: and thus all y<sup>e</sup> traitours of their Countrey within short space, came to a miserable end and confusion. Then Abderama hauing dispatched and ridde out of y<sup>e</sup> way all enemies y<sup>e</sup> were to be feared on his back, returned into Fraunce, passed the river of Rhone, and destroyed many places y<sup>e</sup> belonged to the Christians: and made such a slaughter at Arle, that a heape then made of the bones of the deade carcases remaineth there yet to this day in a place called Alices Campi. The went he with his army against Eudo who began again to gather more strength & make a new commociō. He besieged Tolose the chiefe Citie of Gallia

Gottica: in which siege, (for that the citie was very well rampyered and fortified with Ditches & walles, and also

Fraunce invaded by Saracens.

well



## The second Booke

Burdeaux taken and diuers other Cities and Townes.

well stozed with Engins and munitions of war and with all sorts of weapons beside a conuenient Garrison of soldiers with all other things necessarie there planted for defence) the Saracenes receiued great losse and were well payde home, especially by meanes of certayne Engins, deuised by skylfull arte of ingenious Architectes and by diuers other Stratagemes of warlike pollicie. Notwithstanding, Burdeaux was then taken and sacked of the Saracenes, and all the Inhabitauntes therein both man woman and childe vnmmercifully slayne and manquelled, and the Temples razed and laide euen with the ground. Thence by the confines of Perigot beyonds the ryuer Geronde, they made inroades into the Countrey of Xantongue and destroyed Angolisme and Blaye: From thence through Limosin and Poytiers they rushed into the Countrey of Tours, Where they spoiled the Church of Saint Martine, wherein was great forson and plenty of gyftes and offeringes that had bene geuen and bequeathed vnto it, and after ward set it on fire.

Great slaughter.

Eudo being soze afflicted with these vnmmanerly deailings, and diuen to great extremitie by the Saracenes, entred into league with Martellus, and they two (with both their powers ioyned in one) gaue battayle vnto Abderama before the Citie of Tours, wherein they discomfited hym and all his host. In this battayle there were slayne CCC. lxxv thousand Saracenes, and of the French no more but .xv C. And if the night had not come vpon them ere the battayle was fully ended, the whole route of the Saracenes had bene at that time vtterly destroyed. For Abderama in the night season, perceiuinge how the game went, and what a mortall overthrow he had receiued, had no lust to farre and expect the hazard of the next day: but trudged as fast as he could, by long iourneyes, with those fewe of his companye that were left and able to folow him, to the Pyreneces, entendinge from thence to retourne

## Of the Saracen Historie. 47

retourne into Spaine, leaving behinde hym in his Tents all his carriage and stuffe for a praye to his Enemies. But the Nauarrians hauyng stopped the streight passages where their iourney laye, killed them euery one. The next day as soone as the Sonne was vp, Martellus in good order marshalled his army and toke the feld, awaiting the commyng of his enemies. But when he perfectlye vnderstode that they were fled, his Souldiours fell to the spoyle, which they found in the Saracenes Campe most abundant and plentifull.

After the death of Eudo, Martellus added that parte of Eudo his Kingdome, to his Emperre. For which cause Hunold and Vaifar the sonnes of Eudo, incensinge that part of Gaule called Narbonensis Prouincia (containing the Countrys of Sauoye, Dolphinie, Prouance and Languedock) to take parte with them, renewed the warre afresh with Martellus. And passinge ouer the riuer of Rhone, with most barbarus cruelty destroyed, burnt and killed man and beast, makynge hauock of all Townes, Villages, & felds y<sup>e</sup> was in their way, without sparing either age or Sere. The chief burnt of which lamentable stozme and furious immanitie, that part of the Allobroges (now called Dolphinie) specially felt, befoze Martellus could prouide or prepare sufficient power to go against them. But when he was come, Visigot departed into the wast desert and wildernesse whiche hee hymselfe had so made, and concluding a league with y<sup>e</sup> Saracenes moze aduisedly and warely then Eudo befoze had done, that is to wit, by geuyng and receiuyng hostages on both parties, he estewes procured them to come agayne into Fraunce: who now not with an Host of bolde & tymorous, warlike and vnwarlyke, armed and naked persones, one mingled with an other as befoze, but with army of lustye Hermitozs and picked Souldiours thzoughly tryed by Sea and Land, well appointed and furnished with victuall and



## The second Booke

all thinges necessary for such an enterpryse wherfore was  
cheife Captaine one Atine, entred into the Province.  
And taking Auignon by treason of Maurice Capitayne  
thereof, they appoynted that Citie and Narbon to be the  
principall holdes and fortresses of their martiall proce-  
dings. Whom as they were boldly swarming & straying  
abroad & Country, as men fearing no danger, Childe-  
brand (sent for that purpose by Martellus with a great  
power against them) immediatly at his first commynge  
compelled to keepe within the walles of Auignon.  
Auignon is a Citie standinge by the riuer Rhone, and  
was at that time strongly walled, and well fortified  
with many Bulwarkes, Castles and Pyles, insomuche  
that Atine valyauntly and polytiquement defendinge it, (as  
he was a man both couragious and stout and also skilfull  
in the arte of Chenaurye) thought it to be inexpugnable  
and not able to be wonne. For he had placed his Garri-  
sons on euery side where he thought most expedient,  
and had planted the walles, Bulwarks and Castles full  
of weapons, Dartes and Engins to throwe stones into  
the throng of his Enemyes, beside wyld fire and matches  
to kindle Torchcs and bzands to cast in their faces when  
so euer they should assay to enter. He had also manned the  
same wth hardy Souldiours, & saw sure watch & warde to  
be kept at the Gates, neither lackyng stoare of victuall  
nor any thing els that for the defence therof was needfull  
and requisite. Every Capitayne, Centurion and decuri-  
on had their places and offices appoynted vnto them ac-  
cordingly. He himselfe in person went about and biewed  
the watches, for feare least any thing by negligence or o-  
uersight of his officers were amisse, a man that coulde  
well away with labour, watching and hunger, and such  
a one as kept his souldiours in due order and dutie by his  
owne example, rather then for feare of punishment, any-  
matyng and encouraging them to valyaunt enterpryses,  
and

Two balle-  
sunt & full-  
full Capp-  
taines com-  
pared toge-  
ther, Atine  
the saracen  
and Martel-  
lus & French.

## Of the Saracen Historie. 48

and martiall aduentures. Childbrand lodging his camp nêrer to the citie, gaue assault therevnto : whom Atine not onely repulſed but alſo enſozced to diſcampa & remoue his Armye ſurder of.

But when Martellus with his retinue and traine was come & both the hoſts ioyned in one, after he had ſurueied and taken view of y<sup>e</sup> ſituation and ſtrength of the citie and thzoughly vnderſtood of y<sup>e</sup> valiaunt courage of y<sup>e</sup> defenders within, he ſpeedely & with vndaunted courage ſetting foꝝ ward his matters, not only dꝛaue thē as they iſſued out of the towne within the walles againe, but alſo wan to the place where his army had befoze pight, & there ſtrongly encamped he himſelfe. Foꝝ Martellus being a man ſingularly wel ſkilled in warlike affaires, had vnder him in his army ſuch capitaines and ſouldiours as had bene in many bloudy battailes experienced & in ſundry warres vnder him practiſed: furthermoze very pꝛeciſe obſeruers of martiall diſcipline wherin he himſelf had trained & inſtructed them. Who whether y<sup>e</sup> Army were to be lodged and encamped oꝝ y<sup>e</sup> camp to be remoued, oꝝ themſelues to be ranked & ſet in array redy foꝝ y<sup>e</sup> fight, knewe euery man bys office, place & ſeruiſe only w<sup>th</sup> a beck oꝝ a ſigne geuen them by their Generall. When their camp ſhould be ſoztified foꝝ feare of being ſodenly ſurpriſed by y<sup>e</sup> enemy, immediately a man ſhould haue ſeene ſome, w<sup>th</sup> al dillygence buſied in peruſing & ſurueiynge y<sup>e</sup> place y<sup>e</sup> their General had assigned, ſome to ſet ſouldiours in good order, ſome to entrench the camp, ſome to pitch their tentes, ſome to place y<sup>e</sup> watch and assigne them their ſtandinges, ſome redy marſhalled without the Trench ready to repulſe the Enemy if he ſhoulde make any ſodaine irruption vpon the labourers. If caſe ſtoode, foꝝ the Campe to be remoued, euery man ſemblablye knewe his office and dutye. If they marched out to fight, euery one knewe at his fingers ende, where and in what ranke oꝝ place hee ſhoulde

P ij

Stand



## The second Booke

stande so that the forme and fashion were tolde them by their Chienetane, how he would haue the battayle ordered and appointed, and loke where they stode and set their foote in the fight, there would they rather haue dyed then to haue left it or shonke one foote backe, so desirous were they to wyne praise and glozie. If they should besiege any towne, some brought the scaling ladders, some Turrettes, some Bastyles and clymbling byldges surmounting the height of the Towne walles, struing who should first goe vp and mount vpon the walles. When they had got the Towne, they neuer bzake their aray for any pyllage or spoyle, nor for any greedines of bootie and prae, they neuer ceassed to occupie their blades and lay about them with their salchions, till they had thzoughly ouercome all such of their enemyes as would not deliuer their weapons.

With such a goodly trained host, Martellus aduaucing his Standard and appzoching his enemies, while the anger of his Souldiours was hoate and the courage of their mindes yet freshe & vnappaulled, as one that well knew the nature of his Countrey men, who at the first bzunt as long as an iniurie is fresh in memozie and their mindes with venturous anymositie and hope of victorie, gogled are most fierce and hardie: but within a shozte while if the warre continue any thing long, their former hoat forwardnes will be straightwayes abated and tourned into such kepe colde quietnes that whereas afoze they seemed Lyons, then would they bee as meeke and fractable as Lambes, geuing therfoze no time of rest to his Souldiours, but onely so much as nedes must be had to refresh the their bodies, with meate, drinke and slepe, he sounded the bloudie blast to the battaile, and gaue them a signe couragiously to giue the onset but first he whetted them and stirred vp their stomackes with this Dzation following.

# Of the Saracen Historie. 49

If your valiaunt hearts (most louing Souldiours and felowes in Armes) were not sufficiently already to mee knowen by the manifold aduentures and perilles in my companie to your perpetuall praise exployted, or if our enemie were vnto vs strange & vnknown then would I go about with many wordes to incense and pricke you forward: but sithens I haue experimented and tryed you in so many battayles inuincible, & that of late yeres you easely vanquished this very same enemie, (few of them left a liue) at what time they inuaded the whole Realme of Fraunce with a farre greater armie then they haue now, in hope to haue enioyed the Emprye & Dominion thereof to themselves: I well see that I haue no neede to stande long in putting you in hope of victorie, which I perfectly know to be already most certain in your hands, whereof the manifold examples of so many famous battailes happily and victoriously vnder our leading & conduct by you atchieued, may put you in an vndoubted assurance. Unlessse peraduenture some will thinke it to be a harder matter for vs now to ouercome these few (which like fearefull Hares) hyde and include themselves within walles: then it was for vs heretofore in the Countrey of Tours, to discomfite the whole power almost of all the Orient. As though Walles were of more force in Warres, then foure hundred thousande fighting men, whose swoordes and armour if they had bene layd together in one heape, had bene hable to haue compassed this Citie about with a hygher and thicker bulwarke then these Walles which you see are. Men (believe mee) seeke their defence not in Walles but in theyr weapons. Whereas they which put their trust in Walles, when they be dyuen to that pushe that they see themselves ouercome, their heartes fayle them, they runne away lyke the fearefull Deere, eyther casting downe their weapons, or else stande stone still dismayed.

A pleasaunte  
and comfoz-  
table Ora-  
tion of Mar-  
tellus to his  
Souldiours.



## The second Booke

, and amazed lyke sheepe. Addresse your selues therfore  
, to the assaulte lyke men, assuring your selues to fynde  
, suche great plentie of spoyle therein, that you shall fare  
, the better all the dayes of your liues. Daunt and oppresse  
, yonder odious and vile generatiō y are included in hoales  
, & dennes like birdes in a cage. Take your former vigour  
, and accustomed stomacks vnto you, and know ye y I am  
, he, which (ouer & beside their share and bootie of y spoyle)  
, will amply w my owne hands rewarde all them y in this  
, assault shal behaue theselues valiauntly. I my selfe will  
, not start one foote frō you, but will helpe you not only w  
, my aduise and pollicie, but also w doughtie blowes giuen  
, with mine owne arme as I am wont alwayes at a pinch  
, to do where I see neede. I wil be (I say) both the witnesse  
, bearer and the Iudge of your valiaunce on euery side, and  
, wil see you to suffer no woyle extremitie, and wrong, the  
, I my self wil be content to participate with you. Anaunce  
, I say once againe, mount vp liuely vppon yonder wall,  
, (which done) you shalbe sure to be celebrated and renowne  
, med of all men, as they that troyse, haue deliuered and  
, p̄tected their Countrey of Fraunce out of the thral  
, dome of a blasphemous Crue of cursed Sathanistes.

When he had made an ende, the Souldiours al toge  
ther gaue a great shoute, and then began the assault, the  
walles were couragiously shaken and battered, ladders,  
turrettes & brydges set vp, the assault geue in thre seuer  
all places & the whole army diuided into iij parts, wher  
of one was lead by Childebrād, another by Charlemaine  
the sonne of Martellus, & the thirde by Martellus himself.  
The Saracens rotolling downe great stones which they  
had for the same purpose prepared, tumbled downe & sca  
ling ladders & brake them a sunder, shot arrowes among  
the Assaylants as fast as baile, & threw pots of scalding  
pitch vpon them that appoched any thing nere, finally no  
kind of weapō was vnuoccupied. Atine himselfe goyng a  
bout euery corner, cheering by his Souldiours on euery  
side

side, & diligently looking y nothing were amisse, played y  
 part both of a skilfull Captaine & also of a valiaunt souldi-  
 our: many, which of a high and hautie courage first skaled  
 the walles, felt y smart & reward of venturous audacitie,  
 and were slaine. Martellus seing that his scaling ladders  
 were partly by his enemies & partly by the waight of his  
 owne souldiours climming by thicke and threfold broken  
 alinost all in peces, purposing to detrude and drine y de-  
 fendauntes fro some part of the wall, erected a Tower of  
 wodd, out of which, he shot w certaine deuised Engynes,  
 great waighty stones at the that stode vpon the wall and  
 in it he had placed a great sozt of Archers, which with a-  
 rows kept y Oppidaness so streict, y they durst not stad to  
 their tacklings, noz abide vpo the walles. This Turret  
 had a brydge which w a certain deuise in it, might both be  
 hoised by on high & let downe low, by into the which none  
 could ascend y stode on the ground. This Engine was co-  
 uered all ouer with raw Dre hides & leather, that no fire  
 could do it hurt. This being w strength of me set hard by  
 the walles (soz it went vpo wheeles) y Bridge was set to  
 the top of y walles, and so within a little while, the wall  
 was ful on y side with French souldiours. The bicke-  
 ring being so soze & terrible on both parts, y it was harde  
 to decerne who shuld haue the victorie, at length fine force  
 and puissaunt mahod of the Frankes got the better & pre-  
 uailed, who making a great shout, wet throughtstitch with  
 their enterprize, some ascēding & mounting vpo y walles  
 by ladders, which couered & saued themselves fro harme  
 by holding their Targets close ouer their heades, till they  
 were gottē by, killing o2 els thzowīng downe the defen-  
 daunts, that resisted. The rest being without all hope of re-  
 medie & victorie, pziuely shifted euery man soz himselfe.  
 Atine w the head men & chief officers of his cōpany, em-  
 barked theselues in Shippes readie in the ryuer Rhone  
 soz y same intent, & sayled away w the streame in safety.

pany



## The second Booke

Many of them were slaine in the chase, many crushed to death with falling one vppon an other, and many swimming after the Shippes that were now departyng and goyng awaye, were drowned and overwhelmed with surges. Acine with his Shippes takyng the sea, made his course directly to Narbon, a wealthy Citie and well fortified, standyng very commodiouse to receiue into it ayde from the Sea, wherein was planted an other Garrison of Saracenes. Whereof hearyng Martellus went also to oppugne and bessege it. So that now there was no lesse bickering & contention on both parties for the oppugnation and propugnation of Narbon: the one side meanyng to win the citie, the other not intendyng so to lose it.

At whiche time Amorreus, an other Saracen Kinge bringyng a bande of newe ayde to succour the besieged Narbonians, was encountred by Martellus, at the ryuer Illiberis. Where betwene them was fought a sharp and bloody battayle: but in the end the victorie fell to Martellus, and Amorreus valiantly fightyng in the batwarde was slayne with all his company, insomuch that not one was left aliue to carye any newes home of their vniuersall mishappe and calamytie. When Acine vnderstode of this discomfiture, he and as many as were with hym at Narbon shipped themselves and departed out of the French Province and Countrey.

At this time, when the Moores were thus dynt out of all Aquitanie, nyne of the chiefe Peeres of Martellus his Host, valyaunt men and hardye, warred vpon the Saracenes in Gotalonia: and Martellus dyed in whose roome his second Son Pipine succeeded. In the orient Malsamas spoylyng and depopulating y borders of Thracia (which now is called Romania) toke a stronge Towne of Cappadocia named Cursianum. From thence making an other biage with an Army vnto the Streits of Caucasus, found the same so wel defended and fortified by

by the Vnnes or Turkes, that not daring to meddle with them, he retzred back agayne. And two yeres after, another army of Saracenes whereof was Generall one Euclit the Sonne of Maunias inuaded againe the Borders of Thracia, where after he had made great spoyle, he returned againe into Syria. In which Prouince many thousands of Saracenes dyed of sundry diseases. Nevertheless they abstained nothing the more from making inuasions into the Territozpes y belonged to the Romane Empire. For Zulciminie with a buyge power the thyzd time pilfered and baryed Armenia and Thracia and toke the towne called Syderonium: after ward he went into Cappadocia w 60000 .men, and at the very same time Melike and Batal with a hundred thousand Saracens bzake the fourth time into Thracia But Leo then Emperour, marchyng with an Host against them that wasted Thracia, destroyed and slew them almost euery one. About this time died Euclid, in whose place was created Bysshop Gizit the seconde, in the yere of our Lorde 744. Who for that he saw the Romane Empire to be deuided into factions, because Constantine Copronymus y Son of Leo contended with Artabasdus for the Garland, addicted and bent his whole mind to dispose and set order in the Saracenicall Empire. And because y Ile of Ciprus beyng then well peopled, bzued seditious motions and rufyng disturbances, he sent the whole people thereof into Syria and left the Island without Inhabitanes. And when he had raigned one yere, he deceased. After him, Ices obtained the pontificate, who also dying within lesse then a yere, Maruane was installed and made high Bishoppe. Pipine the second bearing all thes way and rulyng all the roit in the Realme of Fraunce, the Saracenes estones passinge the Pyrences were by him surpysed and taken tardy, and payde so dearely for their lustinesse, that so long as he lyued, the neuer durste any more attempt any inuasion



## The second Booke

Charles

uasion or pillage towarde his land, Territoꝝ or domy-  
nion, for which valyance and magnanimitie, the French-  
mē, by the assent of Zacharie then Pope of Rome deposed  
Childerick to whome the crowne of Fraunce by lineall  
descent of inheritanncē belonged, and made Pipine their  
king: and with him annoynted as heȝe Apparaunt to  
the Crowne, his Sonne Charles, who was after surna-  
med the Great. Whom (after ward doyng many things  
of his owne pꝛoper will and anthozitie contrarȝe to his  
Fathers minde and contentment, as though he had bene  
already very kinge and in reall possession of the Regall  
Diademe) King Pipine his Father exiled out of his sight  
and commaunded to departe out of all the limytes and  
boundes of his Domynion and kingdome. Wherefoꝛe he  
not darynge to disobey the kinge his Fathers decreē and  
indgement, toke with hym many of the French po-  
bilytie which folowed hym, and went to Galasie kinge  
of Toledo, a Saracene boꝛne. Whiche Galasie vsed his  
helpe, aduise and ayde in the warre whiche then he had a-  
gainst Marsilius kinge of Saragoza, a Saracene also as  
well as he. In which warres Charles, being Chieue-  
tayne of all the king of Toledo his armye, behaved hym  
selfe like a woꝛthy knight, and many waies endamaged  
king Marsilius.

Afterwarde fallynge in loue with Galiana Daughter  
to the king his Master, aduentured and atchieued many  
woꝛthy enterpꝛises & notozious Actes for her sake. name-  
ly against Bramantes, an other Saracen king. Who be-  
cause he would haue had Galiana to his wife, maugre her  
Parentes good wyl, besieged Toledo, and discomfited the  
Souldiours both French & Saracene which serued vnder  
the king of Toledo, tyll Charles yssuing out to recharge  
vpon hym, cooped with him and slew him with his owne  
bandes. Whis boat loue continewinge for a time, at  
length brake out so far, y vpon a certen time as y damsel  
for

for her dispozt and solace was walkyng in the gardens oꝝ baynes by the bankside of the riuier Tagus without the walles of the citie Toledo (whiche are at this day called the Palaces of Galiana) Charles no longer hable to qualesye his amozous passion, stole her away and fled with her to Burdeaux, wher he buylded for her a sumptuous palace, as lyke in all poyntes to the paterne and situation of the princely Court of Toledo, as he could gesse, which palace is yet extant, and called also by the name of Galiana her Palace.

Maruane ruling in Syria, many sedicious mutines and factious partakings chaunced among the Saracenes, & many Tyraunts rebelliously renoulted, pretendinge title to the pontificate. Whose names were Tebid, Dadack, and Zulciminie. Whom Maruane as traytours to him pursued, & toke Tebid and put hym to death: Zulciminie hauing an ouerthrow, fled into Persia. But fortune smiled & fauored Dadack better then ether of y other twaine, for he ioyning battayle wth the Sonne of Maruane, vanquished hym and discomfited his whole Host. Albeit he could not long enioy the fruits of this victoꝝy, for wthin a while after, encountering wth Maruane, himselfe in a cruell battell was overcome and slaine. Constantine Copronymus taking occasion and conceyuing hope of future good lucke by meanes of y Saracens domestical sedition, inferred warre vpon Syria, & wanne a great part of that Province. Wherfoze Maruane hauinge now already gotten the vpperhand of Dadack with al his Adherentes: tourned his conquerous Armes to regayne Syria, and it recovered to y great slaughter & smart of y Chzistians. The same yere, a litle befoze y Chzistians receiued this great ouerthrow and discomfiture at the hands of Maruane, the Countrey Syria, Palestina, almost al Asia, Thracia, Grecia and Italic with many other Regions were terribly shaken with a dreadfull Earthquake.

¶ ij

After



## The second Booke

After this, more ruffling and commotion kindled in Persia, for Asmuline Prince and Kingleader of y<sup>e</sup> Sect (first reised and excited by Mutar, of whom we haue before made mention who affirmed Ali to be greater then Mahomet) dwelling and liuing among the Corasenes, a people of Persia, through y<sup>e</sup> counsaile & instinct of one Cataban, incensed and moued all the Slaues and Pezzants of the Countrey either priuely or apertly, by secrete conspiracie or by open force, to quell and murder their Masters. With whose wealth, the Slaues being enriched and made of great power, were diuided into two factions, whereof the one were called the Caismores, and the other the Lamonites. Now, Asmuline being Captaine of the Lamonites, subdued and cleane disperced the Caismores. Then beyng accompanied with his Lamonites and bys Counsellour Cataban, marched forth into Persia: ouer which Province was Lieutenant for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asmuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonites although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitate confidence in the promises of Asmuline and in Cataban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with Propheticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victozies, gloriously and happely atchieued, they were not afrayde to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army iij. hundred thousand fighting Souldiours ready appointed in the fiede, nere to the Ryuer Zabān, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the bridge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asmuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heeles and

# Of the Saracen Historie. 53

and in Egypt in a bloudy battaile ouercame him, and thus was all the Maraunian Lynage and Bedagretw expelled. The remnauntes of whose lyne and Progenie which had flourished and reigned so many yeres were disperfed and scattered abzoade, some fledde into Mauritania where being wearied, they planted themselves, and some went into Spaine. From this Asmuline after ward that house and family which now at this day raigneth in Persia, called Sophi is lineally descended.

After the death of Asmuline and Cataban, one Abubalan surnamed Muamat was Prince of Syria and Persia: and Saline of Egypt: and here began the first Emperre of the Sultanes or Souldanes of Egypt, which haue their imperiall Seate at Cayre. For by that name the Egyptian Caliphes would be called: which name (Sultan) by interpretatiō signifieth y highest Soueraigne Prince and King of Kings.

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers Steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonsus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeeded Fasila. This King recovered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucus, Tui and Asturica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Ryuers Stola, Carrion, Pisquerra, and Duerro: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesanium, Transniera, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viscum and Portum, (of whom Gallicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He fortified many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaie: in Nauarra, Ruconia, Sarracecasium and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrence Mountaines. And when he had raigned eyghtene yeres he dyed, after  
D. iij.
whom



## The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gave an overthrow to the Saracens which had invaded Galicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought all the region of Galicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murdered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploits done against the Saracens, and he also dyng within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Gallicians rebelled, wherfore because he might by better subdye and bring the to reasonable conformitie, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight yeres and the dyed.

*After this succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froi-*

which Province was Lieutenant for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asmuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonites although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitate confidence in the promises of Asmuline and in Cataban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with Propheaticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victories, gloriously and happily atchieued, they were not afrayde to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army th. hundred thousand fighting Souldiours ready appointed in the felde, nere to the Wyer Zaban, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the bridge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asmuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heels and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were overcome, and of them were slaine .lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken Prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doying in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuised among themselves by intestine sedicion and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and uprores were reysed against hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirmyng and p[ro]claymyng abroade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therefore they put on Armour to restore him againe into his rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slayne on both sydes, and great depopulation committed.

amongst of things.

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonsus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeeded Fasila. This King recovered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucus, Tui and Asturica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Ryuers Stola, Carrion, Pisuerra, and Duerro: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesanium, Transnara, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viseum and Portum, (of whom Gallicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He possessed many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaie: in Nauarra, Ruconia, Sarracecasium and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrene Mountains. And when he had reigned eyghtene yeres he dyed, after

D. iij.

whom



## The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gaue an ouerthrow to the Saracens which had inuaded Gallicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought all the region of Gallicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murdered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploit done against the Saracens, and he also dying within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Gallicians rebelled, wherfoze because he might y<sup>e</sup> better subdue and bring the to reasonable conformance, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight yeeres and the dyed. After who, succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froila, surnamed Castus, which was in the yeere of our Lord God. 780. Against him, by the counsaile and perswasio<sup>n</sup> of his vncle Mauregate, the Saracens made warre. Thys Mauregate had promised vnto them, that if he myght by their meanes and helpe obtayne the Kingdome of Lyon, which hys Predecessours and Ancestours befoze hym had enioyed, he would paye vnto them yeerely in the name of a tribute fyftie persons of noble race, and as many Virgins of baser birthe, with many other execrable and impious things. Whereupon, by the ayde of the Saracenes whiche furthered his pretence and quarell, with all their myght and power, he forcibly got Lyon with the whole Kingdome thereof and it intrusively vsurped by the space of fyue yeeres. After whose death, Vermudeces, Sonne to hys brother Vimarane succeeded: who after two yeeres, voluntarily and of his owne free wyll restored the Kingdome to Alphonfus. Whych when the Saracenes vnderstode, they sent a great army agaynst hym, vnder the leading of Mucas: betwene whom, nere to a Towne named Lutum or Ledum

## Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were ouercome, and of them were slaine .lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken Prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doyng in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuised among themselves by intestine sedicion and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and broyes were reysed against hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirmyng and proclaymyng abzoade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therefore they put on Armour to restore him againe into hys rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slayne on both sydes, and great depopulation committed.

After the deathe of Abubalan, his brother Abedela succeeded, who was traiterously and insidiously murdered by an other Abedela, which aspyred to the Bysshopprike, hoppyng to enioye it after hys decease as hee dyd in deede. During whose Raigne and Emperre, the Turkishe broode and Nation breaking cat of the Streites of Caucasus about the yere of oure Lorde. 800. made roades and incursions into Armenia, and when they had piteously spoyled and sacked it, they returned into their owne Countrey. And the yere folowynge, they yssued oute in great Plumpes, and fought with the Saracenes so long, till manie being slaine on bothe parties, the nyght made them to surceasse and make an ende of their battaile. Abedela the seconde of that name, in the eightenth yere of his raygne dyed, in whose place succeeded hys Sonne Madi. Who without any notable thing in al his tyme achieved, dyed, when he had raigned ix. yeres, leauynge behind him for his Heire and successeur, his sonne Moyse. Who in the second yere of his raigne dyed: and in his rowne was created



## The second Booke

created Caliph one Aaron. But now to retourne to the affaires of the Occident.

Charles the  
Great.

Ibnabala King of Saragoza, being expelled and driven out of his Countrey by the other Princes of the Saracenes in Spayne, came into Fraunce to King Charles, to imploze and desire ayd of hym, to reuenge the iniurie vnto hym done: and at the same time also, Ambassadors came to the same Charles from Alphonfus surnamed Castus, King of Asturians, to incense and moue hym to warre vpon the Saracenes in Spaine and to set the Countrey in good order, and by his promise to deliuer it out of the clutches of Tyrannicall vsurpers. Charles therefore gathering together not only the power of his owne kingdom but also hauinge a supplye of foraine aide, among whome were certaine younge Gentlemen of the Danes (which profered their seruice to accompaignie him, partly for a desire that they had to bellicall affaires, and partly to shewe their promise and couragious stomackes) with an Host not very bygge and populous in number, but yet competent inough and such as were skilful Souldiours and expert Capitaines, passed over the Pyrencees by Roncevall without resistance or stoppe of any man. And entring within the frontiers and borders of Nauarre, pitched his Pavilions before Pompelon, the head Citie of the Kingdome of the Cantabrians. Which Citie the saracenes had strongly fortified with a mighty Garrison. And for that they had bene already sufficiently schooled in the auncient tricks and feates of Spayne, they would no more commit the event of their good or ill Fortune to the hazard of one entire battaille as they had before done, but determined to protract and lyege out the warre with delays, tergiversacions and skirmishes where they might espie their best aduantage. Charles dispatched and sent an Herald at armes to summon the Towne, & to know whether they would yeelde or els abide the doubtfull hazard  
of

of war. They first, asked a tyme to consult among themselves what were best to do, ere they would be resolutely answer to y<sup>e</sup> Somaunce. Unto whom was granted the space of one day, wherein they demaunded and entreated that thei might haue space graunted to send to their kings Friends and Confederates, and geue them to vnderstand of their distresse, so that if they were not rescued and the siege reysed within xv. dayes, then they would wyllingly yelde themselves and their Citie into his hands. Alleadgynge, that it should be much for the auaille and commodytie of y<sup>e</sup> French, to conquere and wynn the Citie, being vnpershyed and neither by the Conquerour in his ragynge made defaced, nor by the conquered defendaut, thzough desperation blemished and disfigured. Neither that this tarypaunce should in any poynte hinder his Proceedings, but rather be greatly beneficiall for hym. For why, though he bent all the force he was able to make against the Citie, yet was it able to holde hym out for so many dayes as they craued. And furthermoze that the French, if their Fortune were to get the vpperhande in fight of their Freendes that came to succour them, should with a woode onely commaunde the Porteculleses and strong grated Gates of y<sup>e</sup> Citie to be broken downe & opened for them quietly to enter, whiche should be much for the honour, Dignitie, and profite of both parties: least other wise, those innocent Cities that haue committed no fault, for whose deliuerie and regaignynge the French protested themselves to be come, should suffer such ruthless and iniurious examples of warre on both sides, as the nature and insolencie of a Siege necessarilye bringeth.

Charles prudently perceiuing all these protestations and surmises of the Saracenes to be subtilly and craftely deuised for none other entent, but onely to abate the heat and courage of his Souldiours (being now most sharply



## The second Booke

set to haue their purpose) by protracting the time and getting longer day, would in no wise agree to graunt them any respite to make any further preparation and preparation for war, which might peradventure tourne hym to greater incommenience afterwarde, but immediately sendeth defiance against them, and commaundeth his Souldiours to provide and make ready such things as to the battrie and siege of the Citie were requisite.

The Siege of this Citie continued many dayes, and diuers assaults fiercely geuen. The Assaillantes were not so busie without, but the Defendaunts were as diligent within many times yssuinge out of their Gates, not after the Arabian guyse, but accordinge to the Spanish manner, armed with sword and fire, quick, swift, nimble and sodaine, deluding their enemyes, with many stratagemes and subtyll policies, facing and shifting from place to place, pretermittinge no occasion that made for their purpose, dealingye euery where and at all times so deceinablye, that when the other partye thought themselves surest of their purpose, they were fardest of, and when their desires were likeliest (as they thought) to sorte to effect, then were they soonest beguiled and lykely themselves to fall into the lappes of their enemyes: so secret and speedy, that they were many times in the midst of their enemyes slaying among them before any man suspected their coming, killing them and setting fire in their tents and gone againe out of sight, ere any resistance could be made or any time to go against them. They skirmished & ruffled w<sup>th</sup> their enemyes, in a maner within their owne tents. And although there was a band appointed at y<sup>e</sup> gates of the Citie to keepe them from comminge out, yet (notwithstanding) they could not be so pent in, nor debarred from their purposes, but with lyke boldnesse as afoze, they would often set vpon them, and by no means wolde be brought to kepe w<sup>th</sup>in y<sup>e</sup> wals of the citie, til y<sup>e</sup> same wer thoroughly entrenched and rampired, and all their works within

## Of the Saracen Historie. 56

within, finished to their minde. The did they stand at defiance valiantly, not as men defending their manhood with walles, but keeping & defending their walles with manhood. This Siege continuing somewhat longe, the other kings which were daily looked for to reyle the siege, came in dard, albeit furnished with any hoast, able to fight a maine battaile, but ever as they espied any aduantage or occasion, they would make out Minilaunces and light Hozemen by known pathes and waies, to annoy King Charles. Which Hozemen oftener by night then by day a little disquieted his Campe, and made some disturbance and enteries therein. An other crewe of them killyng the watchmen & perforce making way throught their enemies Bulwarkes and Fortifications, entred the citie, & greatly relieved them within, whereby thei conceived great hope of future successe. Charles with a courage vnappauled and inuincible exhorting his men, tolde them that the victory was to be obtained with paines taking & vigilancie, that martiall prowesse appeareth not only in the encounter and conflict, but a great deale rather in good discipline and obseruance of martiall orders, not to be lulled in ease and securitie, bestowing the greatest part of the night in sleepe and bodely rest, but in studie and deuise for the atchieuance of their waightye businesse, & in the day time incessantly to be busied, abstaining from riot & libidinous lustes & enermore abandoning iwerines and lingering of time. Geuing them further to vnderstand, yf y cages and walles wherin those Sachanistes had enclosed themselves for their sauegard, must either perforce be broke in piéces & beaten downe about their eares, or els y enemies themselves to be tamed and brought vnder awfull obedience. Wherefore he bad them to aduance their standards & with banners displaid, to march against the, & not suffer them to rest. When was ther made fortifications & habiliments, to serue ech way and on every side, wherby their Camp was kept both before, behind and on either side.



## The second Booke

Then they that fished and raunged out as thei did befoze, were faine to hyde their heades within their Fortrefle, or els were shamfully compelled to retire, and so the matter was brought to a perfect Siege. When beganne there a sharpe and terrible battre which continued day and night without intermission, fresh Shouldours ever coming in the places of y<sup>e</sup> weary, and fighting by course one after an other rounde aboute, with all kinde of deuises Engins, Minnace, Ladders, Bridges, pollicie and valyauntnes, in somuch that y<sup>e</sup> Saracenes courage being wel cooled, were now dismayed at their wits end, not hable to hold out any longer, but on enery side (do what they could) were by the valyant French Assaylaunts thowen downe from the walles or els layne out of hand. Within the Citie also there was a great slaughter of them, vntill the King had made proclamation that as many as were vnarmed and without weapon should be spared.

King  
Charles tooke  
led the saracens  
courage

Then so, the Saracenes, euer befoze that time, choosing and accustomed rather to die then to yeld as long as they had weapon & Armure, threwe downe their weapons, and vpon their knees holoing vp their vnarmed hands besought pardon. Then were the walles rased and the citie sacked. From thence the Campe remoued and went to Saragoza the head Citie of the Province Taracoenfis: which beinge terrified and feared by the example afoze, straightway condescended and agreed to accept the offers and conditions propounded vnto them, which was that they should admitte and receaue into their Citie such as preached the glad tydings of the Gospell of God, and receaue againe Ibnabala their King, and hym to acknowledge and obey as their Soueraigne Lorde. After this, he went into Gorrallonia, & compelled the two kings of y<sup>e</sup> Province (which were accused to haue expelled Ibnabala out of his kingdome) Abutarr & Desfize to come into his Pallion with Gittes and presents, & condescended

## Of the Saracen Historie. 57

to become Tributaries. Thus his name was had in feare and awe throughout all Spaine. But when he was returned home againe into Fraunce, some write that there came out of Africa, one Agoland, sent from the high Duke of the African Saracens, who kept his Seat royall at Marrocco) with a mighty army, to recouer all such Townes and places as Charles had taken in Spaine: with whom there were many other Princes, Potentats and valyaunt personages. And that Charles (after many combates, barraigned and foughten with hym hand to hand beinge thereunto by hym chalenged and prouoked) fought a bloudy battayle with hym at Baion, a Citie of Vasconia, wherein were slayne 400000. Christians, and among them Myles Anglere Father to Rouland, a stout Gentleman and a hardy, who had the leadinge and was Generall of the whole Army. Notwithstanding, all was regained by the pyllance and prouelle of Charles, and other fresh ayd that then came euen in the nicke out of Italy to succour the Frenchman in that distresse. Inso-much that Agoland pryncely fled and comelighed himselfe away.

But not long after, hauinge repaired his army with a supplie of more Souldiours, Agoland againe prouoked Charles into Vasconia, and besieged the Citie Gennum now called Baion the space of seven Monethes, and departing thence was in the borders of Xantongue in a cruell battell overthowen, after which discomfiture he fled back againe into Spaine. And howe that Charles (because he would at length bring his Spanissh warres to an end) tooke a greater army then any afore, entred into Spaine, where after many light skirmishes, he slew Agoland in a notable battell: after which victorie he brought under his subjection and rule almost all Spaine: with many more foyged reportes and mere fables of some aduised, all which, for the vntreuth and vnlykelyhood thereof we do heare pre-  
termitt



## The second Booke

permit. But if any be desirous to see them, let them reade  
 Turpine Byshoppe of Rhemes, to whom also I doe re-  
 ferre you, for the trueth of this which wee haue here  
 last recited. For we doe not fynde in any of those cre-  
 dible and approued wyrters whych wee folowe, that  
 Charles made any more voyages against the Saracenes  
 into Spaine but one, nor that they ever entred into  
 Fraunce during his Reigne. But this is manifest, that  
 Alphonfus King of Asturia, moued with the famous  
 renowne of his noble Actes and invincible valiaunce,  
 and for the common weale of his Kingdome and Sub-  
 iectes, because he had no Children of his owne, and saw  
 that the power of that onely Region was farre vnable  
 to beare out and maintaine continuall warres wyth the  
 Saracens, offered vnto him secretly by trustie Mes-  
 sengers and Ambassadors the Kingdome of Lyon, so  
 that he would ayde hym against the King of Corduba,  
 with whom he had then waged Warre. Charles ac-  
 cepting this offer and condition, sent ayde vnto hym.  
 Which composition when the Nobles and Pères of the  
 Realme of Lyon vnderstoode, they were sore displeased  
 and toke the matter greuously, spighting (as commonly  
 in like cases it falleth out) to haue a Nation hard bri-  
 der theyr noses to be rulers ouer them, and therupon  
 they compolled theyr King to starte from his Bargaine  
 and vndo his League. And not so contented to leane,  
 purposed also and deuised which way to dispatch and de-  
 stroye King Charles and all his Army: feareing, least he  
 seeing himselfe thus deluded and mocked would, reuenge  
 this iniurie done vnto him. Therefore gathering and  
 assembling all the power of the Asturians and Canca-  
 brians together, and sending also for ayde to the Sara-  
 cenes (in secreete wise preventing Charles) toke and kept  
 the narrow Streights of the Mountaines where the pas-  
 sage & way lyeth into Spaine by Ronocall. For Charles  
 was

was returned into Fraunce, and was now againe in his way going into Spaine, to revenge this wrongfull dealing. The Armie of King Charles was the at the foot of the Pyrence Mountaines on that side next Fraunce, in the valley (yet called Hospita) when there came newes unto them, that the Spaniardes were coming in warlike maner against him along by the valley called at this day Charles Valley, which was a faire plaine Châpaine. Therfore diuiding his host into three Battailles, by the fraudulent & traitorous counsaile of Galerō (or as some call him Gane) who the enemies had corrupted with money, he appointed Rouland his Nephew by his Sister, (commonly called of y vulgar sort Orland) Duke of little Britaine, a valiaunt Gentleman and a hardy, to leade y flauwarde, wherein he placed al the noble States & Peeres of Fraunce: in y second battaille, he placed innumerable Gentlemen and noble Perionages: and he himself with y third (wherin was the traitour Galerō) staid still in y campe, commanding Orland with the vaintgard to aduance himself forward. The Spanish army was embattailed in Roncevall, expecting their coming. Upon, who the fronte of the French host geuing the onset, was at y first bzunt so handled (for the Spanyardes had gottē the upper ground and al y strait passages) y they were in worse case which escaped their hands, the they which were slain outright in fighting: for they dyed & were quickly out of pain, but the other fleeing through thicke & thinne among y stones and craggy Clines & falling down fro high Rockes, had their limmes broke, & so continued for a longer season in extreme tormente and agonies. Thus, Rouland & all his traine being wearied, what with climbing vp the hill, and what with the waight of their armour were easely killed and brought to confusio. After the same maner also was y second battaille hadled, wherin were y. 12. Peeres of Fraunce, in whose power it is to create the king & decide al waighthe causes of the Realme.

xii. Peeres  
of Fraunce:

Charles



## The second Booke

Charles still abode in the Walleye, which for this cause is to this day called Charles Walley, whither he had removed his Campe out of Hospira. Who understandinge of the great overthrow and losse of his Men, rettyred with all speede againe into Fraunce. Alphonfus excused himselfe by Ambassadors vnto him, that all these things were attempted and done without his consent and knowledge, with whome Charles renewed the former amytie and league betwene them stroken and concluded. When deuisinge in his minde to procure an atonement and vniuersall peace to the whole world, sent his Ambassadors into Syria and Egypt, to conclude an amytie and peace with the Princes and Chiefe Rulers of the Infideles, to the ende that they should the better vse and entreate the Christians liuing vnder their subiection. Which he obtained, inso much that Aaron the high Caliph of Persia and Arabia) who not longe afoze, rufflingly inuadyng the Prouinces of Asia that were vnder the Constantinopolitane Empire with CCC. M. men, had enforced and by compulsion dyuen Nicephorus the emperour to redeme and (as it were) to serue peace at his hands, by paying yearly an annuall fee in gold) from thenceforth not onely not infected and bered the Christians, but also gaue yearly a great Masse and summe of moneye to the reliefe of those poore Captiues that liued vnder his rule, and also sent his Ambassadors with great rewarde to King Charles. For when Aaron had with many overthrowes and pillages miserably afflicted and frustred the Romane empyre, surpyzed and taken Tyana where he erected and dedicated a temple vnto Mahomet & an infinite numbze of towne moe: Nicephorus seeinge his matters goe to wycke, and distrustinge any better fortune, sent his Letters to the Arabian to obteyne and request a peace accordinge to the tenour folowinge.

Why thou shouldest thus vniustlie warre againste me

## Of the Saracen Historie. 59

me and my dominions sythens I haue not wronged noꝝ ,  
 offended theꝝ, oꝝ who they be that counsaile theꝝ therunto ,  
 I know not, neither do I se any cause reasonable to moue ,  
 theꝝ, vntles it be peraduenture, because thou hast a delight ,  
 and pleasure in murther, robberie and rapine. Foꝝ that ,  
 thou doest it foꝝ religion sake, thou canst not pꝛetend a ,  
 ny excuse, sythens Machomet thy high Pꝛophet, commaū ,  
 deth you to vse and account al Christians as Bꝛothers. ,  
 Doeſt thou thinke that Almighty God the creatour of all ,  
 thinges and the staie of both the Pꝛeople, whome he hath ,  
 created and made after his owne similitude and lykenes, ,  
 is delighted with effusion and shedding of innocent bloud? ,  
 God foꝝbid. Foꝝ your Pꝛophet Mahomet did not com- ,  
 maund you to offe vnto him any such sacrifice oꝝ satisfac- ,  
 tozie expiation. Oꝝ else perchance doeſt thou invade þ ,  
 territories and pꝛouinces belonging to other men, foꝝ ,  
 some neede and want of Syluer, Golde and such other ,  
 thinges? But alas, there is no such stoꝛe of these thinges ,  
 with vs: yea all pꝛecious ietwelles and wares that are ,  
 rare and hard to be gotten, are among you in great plen- ,  
 tie. But if there be any thinge in our Countreys þ may ,  
 do thee pleasure, why doeſt thou not aske it freēdly, and ,  
 we will bestow the same vpon the without delaye moste ,  
 louingly. If thou care not foꝝ man noꝝ any foꝛce þ moꝝ ,  
 tall man can annoy theꝝ with all, yet know thou that ,  
 there is a God, which ſeeth and remembꝛeth right and ,  
 wronge. Foꝝ sythens we be mortall, it is not comely noꝝ ,  
 fitte foꝝ vs to beare immortall grudge and endlesse ene- ,  
 mie one towarde another, & in that point to resemble & ,  
 imitate the Diuell, which euer spighteth at mans felicity ,  
 and soulehealth and is at perpetuall warre with all man- ,  
 kinde.

With these lettres, sent not without rewarde and  
 sumptuous pꝛesentes Aaron being appealed, sent agayn  
 many pꝛesentes and gyftes to Nicephorus, & concluded a



peace



## The second Booke

peace with hym vpon a condition, that the Emperour should pay yereley vnto hym xxx. M. Crownes, and thre for his owne head, and as many for his Sonne and that he should not reedifie nor repayre such Townes as were rased and wasted by the saracenes. But in the performance of this agreement, there was les faith in y Greke then in the Barbarian. For Nicephorus after the departure of the Saracenes out of those townes, immediately reedified and fortifyed them. Which dealyng when Aaron vnderstood, he furnished out an other Armye into Grecia, which tooke Thebes: and sendinge a Paury into Cyprus, subuerted the Churches and expulled the Cyprians. And when Aaron had raigned xxij. yeres he payed his debte to Nature, after whom succeeded in the Pontificate his Sonne Muamat. Who fallynge at moztall debate with his Brother Halad, and with him coapyng in conflicte wherein his side went to wack (fortune moze fauoring his Brothers part) grew to a composition w hym, y they twaine should ioyntly w egal authozty (hauing both one and the same tytle or style) enioy the Empire. Then ther were created foure Tyzautes whereof one had for his share Spayne, an other Aphrica, the thirde Egipt and the fourth Syria and Palestina. Wherebyon, the Saracenicall power began to decline, & for awhile y affayres of y Orient were indyfferently quiete among the Saracenes. And Muamat the Caliph of Syria woulde not now haue his imperiall Seat at Damasco, but buylded a newe cite neere where olde Babilon once stode, and called it Bagadat, and it constituted the Pontificall Sea of Syria and all the Orient: For the Persians were yet vnder his rule & iurisdiction. The Egiptian kept his residence at his Metropolitan Citie of Cayre: whiche was (as befoze we haue shewed) buylded neere the place where olde Memphis earst stode. Which after the Sea royall was in it appointed

## Of the Saracen Historie. 60

poyncted and kepte, so encreased, that at this daye it is thought to be one of the greatest Cities in the whole Worlde: the chiefe Sea of Aphrica was accounted by Elagleb to be at Caïoran, whiche Citie was builde in Affrica when Ottmen had the regiment and gouernance of the Emperre, and is distaunte from the Citie of Tunicc about an hundred fiftie miles, and from the Sea thirtie and six.

Spaigne although it obeyed & had in it many kings, yet they all acknowledged the Bysshop of Marrocco for their Diocesan: whiche is a Citie of Mauritanie Tingitana. He that gouerned Asyria was called the Caliph, whiche name signifyeth a successeur: because he boasted and bragged himself to be the Successeur of Mahomet. The Egyptian Bysshoppe was called the Sultane, and hee of Caïoran, (lyke as the Assyrian dyd) named himselfe a Caliph: and hee of Marrocco by the auncient name of the Founder and buylder of that Citie, was named a Miralmumine. Under these, there also arose certayne other lesse Kingdomes in Affrica: as the Kingdom of Tunicc, of Tripolis, of Algeria, of Oran, of Fels: and an innumerable sorte more, lesse then these. For as euerye one was Ruler ouer anye Citie or Prouince. So he called hymselfe Kinge of the same, and possesseinge the stile and name thereof, as due by inheritance, lesse and deliuered the same as it were by hand to his Succession and posteritie.

But yet notwithstandinge all these Kinges agnized and acknowledged some of these sozenamed Bysshops: and as euerye one fauoured thys Bysshoppe or that, so in hys quarrell dyd he make warre with the Kings of the other faction. Which sedicious discordes and multitude of Tyrantes so appaired & weakened the power of the Saracenes that after the regiment of the aforesayde Bysshoppes, they so decreased and theyr force so



## The second Booke

was enfebled, that at length the name of Saracenes gaue place and was almost cleane eatē by of the Turkes: and the state of their Emppze was at this time thzough the perturbation and hurlyburly about the soueraigntie, so obscured and vnknownen, that no certaintie in the succession of their Emppze can be had, [no not among their owne wziters. Neuerthelesse, mee obseruing the due order of tymes, will as bziefely as may be, compzebende all such thinges as are confusedly wzitten by diuerse Authoys, concerning the actes and gesses by them atchiued.

*xxx* *Arast*  
*the* *boy*  
*of* *the* *king*  
*the*

Thomas a  
ranke sedi-  
cious trat-  
toꝝ and fil-  
thy villain.

In the tyme that this Muamat the Sonne of Aaron ruled Assyria, and Michael the Sonne in law of Nicephorus (expulser of Leo out of Armenia) was Emperour of Constantinople, one Thomas bzued a great garboyle and commotion. Of whom the report and fame is tolde after two wayes. Some saye he came of a very pooze and base Parentage, and that he lyued long tymes in much pouertie and indigence, faine to get his lyuing with his handie labour, and sometyme with seruile byndgerie. Afterward, abandoning his native Countrey and comming to Constantinople, was retained in the seruice of an Alderman of the Citie where the gracelesse verlet so much abused himselfe with carnall lust and vicious life, that he committed adultrie with his Mistresse, and dubbed the Alderman his maister, Knight of the common Hall. Which lewde pranke being detected and come to light, Thomas partly for sharke shame and ignominie and partly for feare of the paynes and punishment appoynted by Law for suche as he was, fledde to the Saracenes: for whose Diuelishe deuises he was as fit an Organe and Instrument as any in the woꝝlde: with whom, he was had in a great credite, speciallre after that his conuersation and behauiour a long tyme contynued and shewed among them (for he had nowe dwelled

## Of the Saracen Historie. 61

dwelled among them. xxv. yeres ) had geuen sufficient testimonie & put them in an assured opiniō of his fidelitie towarde them. Inſomuch that renouncing and apoſtatiſing his Chriſtianitie and abiuring the holy Religion of the Chriſtians , he embraced the horrible doctrine of Mahometicall Religion. And beyng by them appoynted Capitane of a competent Crew of warlike ſouldiours was ſent againſt the Chriſtians. For he had promiſed vnto them, that if they would furniſhe him out with ſome competent power , he woulde undertake to ſubdue the Romane Emperre into their handes. And leaſt the Chriſtians ſhould haue any miſtruſt & diffidence in him thus working and contriuing the Toyle of their confuſion, or peraduenture taking him as a ſtraunger & forayner giue no credite to his wordes, he named himſelf Conſtantine, the ſonne of Irene. Which Conſtantine in very deepe (for his crabbed nature and peruerſe maners ) his mother lōg befoze had bereft of both his eyes and of the Empire alſo, and was then dead.

Some others there be, which do affirme that this Thomas was whilome in the houſe of one Bardanius ſurnamed Turcus, together with Michael and Leo. At what time ſoiourning at a place called Philomelium, & ſeking by all meanes how to make himſelfe Emperour, he diſcouered his counſaile and opened the very bottome of his ſtomacke to a certaine Monke ſkilfull in the prediction of fortunes and things to come, to which deuſe and plat he made Leo Armenus priuie. Vnto whome the Monke tolde, that if he firſt aſpired to the Emperre, he ſhould loſe both his eyes and his worldly dignitie : but of them, that brought hym his hoſe , the firſt and ſecond ſhould enioy the Diademe, and the thirde ſhould bee proclaimed Emperour: but not hable to compaſſe and thoroughly bzying about , his deſired purpoſe , he ſhould ſhortly periſhe and be brought to confuſion.



## The second Booke

The first was Leo, the second Michael, and the third this Thomas whom Leo the Emperour made Colonell ouer the Band of his Confederates. Which Leo, when Thomas vnderstoode to bee slaine by Michael, he partly to reuenge the death of him thzough whose beneuolence & goodwill he had bene promoted to diuerse dignities, and partlie to ease his owne Stomacke and bzing about the effect of his malicious mynde (foz Michael and he coulde neuer agree but maligned one an other euen from their Adolescencie) raysed warre agaynst Michael, and first found the meanes to inueigle and rayse by the Orientall power (among whom he lyued) to take part wyth hym. Thus he gathered together an armie not of weaklings and vnerpert Souldiours, oz of a fewe in number, but buyge, Populous and hardie, of Saracenes, Moores, Indians, Medes, Persians, Assyrians, Armenians, Chaldees, Iberians, Zigians, Cabirians and diuerse other Nations. Of whom, some by compulsion accompanied hym in that Warre, some foz good will, some in hope of spoyle, and some foz a rooted malice and hatred agaynst Michael, who foz his froward nature and peruerse manners was generally hated of all men. Foz Thomas although he was lame on one of his fete, and a Barbarian bozne, yet foz his gray heares and auncient age he was reputed among them venerable and woꝝ shipfull, in samplier talke and conference very courteous and affable (whyche are the thinges that most of all wynneth the heartes of Souldiours) and foz bodely strength not inferiour to any.

He thus furnished with an armie of Saracenes, to whom he had promysed the Constantinopolitane Emperre, and also with a great power of Christians which ventured life limme and goods with him, violently invaded and forcibly got the possessiō of the Orient. And bzing vnder his obedience the exacters of publique tributes with

## Of the Saracen Historie. 62

with great statelynesse of minde. folowed the chase of good fortune now seruing his turne and simpling vppon hym, Within a while, of a low Halkerd became a great Ruler and of a weake mungrell Dezaunt a mighty Potentate, by whom all Asia was with spoiling and pillage miserably afflicted. Some Cities for feare ioygned syde with him, and conformed themselves to his humour. Some because they would not reuolte from theyr true Liege the Emperour, were spoyled and the inhabitauntes caried awaye Captiue. So that there were none in all Asia but only the Opficians and Armenians which continued in their true allegiance. For which gratuitie & constant obedience, the Emperour released and frankly remitted vnto the their publique tribute called Fumariū. But Thomas was so puffed vp w<sup>th</sup> this successe, & he presumptuously toke vpon him the name of Emperour: & was crowned with the Diademe at Antioche, by Iob Pastour or Bishop at that time of the Antiochene Congregatiō: whom he (to requite one good turne for another) adopted for his Sonne, and made as his fellowe and Coadiutor in the administration of the Emprye, and then chaunging his owne name called himselfe Constantine the Sonne of Irene the Emperesse.

The Emperour knowing of this new stirre and commotion made preparation for warre: and sent one of his Lordes with an Army nothing equall (God wot) nor of power to match and encounter with his enemies: which was by Thomas discomfited and cleane ouerthrowē. After this, meeting with the Romane Flēte, toke the same, and with. lxxx. M. men toke his way to Abydus, which is a Citie of Asia the lesse, standing vpon the Sea syde, spoyling and destroying all where he went, & burning to ashes not only poore vplandish villages, but goodly towne and stronge Cities. And from thence in a very darke nyghte transfreted into Thracia, where many of the

Cua



## The second Booke

Emperours Souldiours renoulted and fled dayly vnto hym. He put to flight and dꝛaue downe all the Emperours power sent against hym. Wherof were chief Capitaines Olbian and Caracella, and (lyke a ragyng Streame, violently runnyng downe from a Hyll) pꝛodigatꝛed both by Sea and Land and boꝛe downe befoꝛe him, an other wel apoynted Flavy, manned out lyke wyse by ꝑ emperour against him. He burst asunder the yꝛon chayne that went ouerthwart the Haven & so layd siege to the citie both by Sea and land. But pꝛeuaillyng nothing that way, he determined to winne his purpose by long siege, and foztifying his Campe in very good oꝛder, sent parte of his army to subdꝛue ꝑ Townes lying by ꝑ Coast of Euxine. This done, with the rest of his power (which was very great) he on euery side beclipped the citie with a mighty oppugnation and gaue thereto a terrible battery. But by the valyaunt courage of the Defendauntes, all his attempts were frustrate. And his Flavy on ꝑ Sea by foꝛce of tempest was disperfed and disseuered, so that he was fayne to byꝛnge his boatt back agayne into Asia tyll the wynter were passed.

The Spꝛyng folowynꝛ, he agayne retourned to the same siege: but Michael being now better furnished and provided then hee was befoꝛe both with a Flavy of tall Shippes to scowꝛe the Coastes and keepe the Seas, and also with an army of lusty souldiours by land, first assaied by diuers flights to vndermine Thomas his souldiours & to sollicite them to renouonce and fozsake their Capitaine but al was in vayne. Wherfoꝛe setting all the Gates of ꝑ citie open, he sodenly with all his company issued out and set vpon Thomas suspectynꝛ no such pꝛetence and matter, and him there discomfited, and his whole Flēete on the Sea also.

There was one Gregory, Cosen to Leo late Emperour, who with a crew of god fighting Souldiours ayded Thomas

## Of the Saracen Historie. 63

mas, but now seeinge the world thus tournd, seperated  
 forthwith his Souldiours aparte from the residue, in  
 hope thereby to wyne the Emperours fauour and set  
 vpon Thomas behinde. Whiche when Thomas espyed,  
 being nothing therewith discouraged, nor yet therfore  
 remouing his strongly lodged Campe from the Citie,  
 set vpon Gregorie with parte of his Army and him dis-  
 comitted, who for his safegard flying away, he caught in  
 the chase and put to death. Then speeding himselfe into  
 his Camp agayne, he addrested his letters abroad into all  
 quarters, vntuly making report that he had gotten the  
 vpperhand against Michael in battayle: and sent for the  
 Paup that lay at Berycum, wherein were of Gallayes  
 and Halkes to the number of CCC. L. Sayle, with all  
 expedition to come vnto him, as though the matter should  
 forthwith be tryed likewise by Sea. Which dirste and  
 commaundement when the Armyalles and Capitaines  
 of the Romane Paup vnderstode and knew, they set vpon  
 them at vnwares by night in the roade, when they  
 lay at Anker, and with their sodayne comming, so starred  
 and affrayed the Mariners that they were at their wittes  
 ende and knewe not how vpon such a sodayne to defend  
 themselves: so y there many of them were by y Imperi-  
 als taken, and many burnt, and very few escaped, which  
 being quicke of sayle gott away and ioyned themselves  
 to the other Army that was on the land.

While this terrestriall army lay befoze Constantino-  
 ple, without any notable battayle sauing only many light  
 skirmishes, and small bickerings, wherein sometimes  
 Fortune smiled and sometime frowned vpon either part,  
 the same and reporte thereof was spread and bzuted  
 throughout the world. In somuche that Mortago  
 King of Bulgarie, (notwithstandinge the Emperoure  
 for greedynesse and miserable sparing of his money as he  
 was



## The second Booke

was by nature most courteous and a néere Prince, than-  
kyng hym for his good wyll, had before refused his ayde  
offeryng to assist him, saying that he had no néede therof)  
partly because hee was desirous of Warre and spoyle  
of his enemies, and partly to confirme the former three  
yeeres League made with Leo Armenus, marched with  
an Armye agaynst Thomas, and him in a place called  
Cedocto, not farre from Constantinople where the two  
armyes met, in Battayle overcame & vanquished, wher-  
in many a man was slayne, and after the ende thereof  
retourned home with many Prisoners and rich Booties.

When the Prayce that Thomas had left at the Siege  
heard of this notable discomfiture and ouerthrowe, they  
all reuoluted from Thomas and submitted themselves to  
the Emperour. Thomas gatheringe together the rem-  
nant of his Armye that escaped unkyllled at the last con-  
flict with Mortago, conducted them into a playne Felde  
called Diabasis, distaunt certayne Furlonges from the  
Cittie, a place very commodious and fit for excursions,  
and for plentie of water very profitable. Where hee a-  
new encamped. From thence makinge vagaries and  
roades, he wasted and despoyled al the Emperours sump-  
tuous buyldings and banquetting houses of pleasure stand-  
ing in the Suburbes of the Cittie. The Emperoure ha-  
vinge his Armye every daye more and more increased,  
strake by Alarme and gaue the charge vpon him in three  
seuerall parts, whereby he thoroughly put al Thomas his  
Armye to flight. For Thomas before had given com-  
maundemente to his men, that at the firste onlette, they  
should retyze and make a shewe as though they fled, and  
afterward vpon the sodayne tourne agayne and recharge  
vpon their enemies. After this discomfiture many of his  
men fledde to the Emperour. Thomas with a few of his  
adherents came in safetie to Adrianople and his adoptive  
son Anastasius escaping also by flight, toke for his saue-  
garde

garde the Castell of Byzia. After whom the Emperour without delay making pursuite, went firste to Adriano- ple where Thomas was. And least the Scythians dwel- lyng thereabout, should learne the knowledge of such en- gins and Artyllerie as serue for Battery and oppugna- tion of Cities, he determined by famine to bziue them to surrender and yelde, and so beclipped it rounde aboute with a strong Siege.

The Citie was well walled and beside that, surely en- trenched and fortified with Bulwarkes. But they were so pinched with Famine, that all their victualles beinge spent, they secretly had conference with Michael and be- ing at a poynde and composition with him for pardon of this their rebellious conspiracie, deliuered Thomas into his handes. The Emperour now hauinge in his posselli- on his deadly enemy, observing the auncient custome of o- ther Emperors in lyke cases, first made him to prostrate himselfe vpon the Pavement and Stones, whiche done, he set his seete vpon his necke, and trodde vpon hym.

Ende of  
Traytours

Then he caused his Feet and handes to be cutte of, and so setting him vpon an Asse, commaunded him to be caried about the Campe, for euery man to wonder at. Where, at the miserable captiue said in howling for these woordes: Haue mercie & compassion vpon me & thou art thou true King. And when he was about, vpon the Emperours interroga- tories & motions to haue betwailed & accused certen of his familyers, as pryue and of counsel with him in this rus- sing rebellion, the Emperour beinge aduised by Exam- bulius one of his Nobles, that no credite ought in such ca- ses to be geuen to a professed enemy, accusing the appo- ined frendes of his Paestie, would not heare him. And so geuing order for his execution, caused him, (longe lan- guishing in terrible torments) to be put to death.

They that fled to Byzia, folowing the example of the Adrianopolitanes, toke Anastasius and deliuered hym



## The second Booke

bounde to the Emperour, who also was put to execution. This end had Thomas, whose hystorie (although he were no Saracen) we thought good not here to omit, because he chiefly achieved and perpetrated the same by the aide and power of the Saracens, insomuch that he might right well seeme to haue bene the Emperour and Kingleader of the Saracens.

While these things were in doing in the Orient, the Saracens in Spaine, most arrogantly by their Ambassadors demanded of Ramire King of Asturias (who succeeded Alphonsus Castus) a Tribute which king Mauregat was wont to pay. Unto whom Ramire by the advice of his priuie Counsell answered, that he had leiser dye a hundred deaths then so to doe. And forthwith leuying an armie marched against them wasting and destroying their Territories and Countreys, as farre as Nagera. Betwene whom and the Saracens was fought at Aluelda a sore battayle, and sorer had bene if the night had not made an ende of the same for that daye, wherein soasmuch as the Saracenes were lyker to haue the victorie: Ramire by night with his companie rettyred vnto a certaine hill nere Clauigium: and there greatly fearing the doome of Fortune the next day, and what woulde befall on him and his, after so vnluckie a beginning, sought his onely refuge at Gods handes, bestowing (both he and all his retinue) the whole night almost in watching and prayer to Almighty God for his assistance in that they were greuous extremitie. Then and there (as some do saye) Saint James the Apostle seemed personally to appeare vnto him, promysing him his helpe and furtheraunce, whereupon Ramire the next day comming into the field in good aray of battaile, against his enemies, with an assured confidence of Diuine helpe and assistance, the sayde holy Apostle Saint James was sene in the battayle, sitting vpon a white horse and bearing in his hande a redde  
Crosse

## Of the Saracen Historie. 65

Crosse, and that in the same Battaille were slayne of Saracenes. lxx. thousand. Then were Albaida, Clauigium, Calagurra, and many other townes thereabout regained by the Christians: In token and remembrance of which victorie by the Diuine assistance of Celestiall presence atchiued, the Noble order of the Knightes of Saincte James was by the King instituted.

By whom &  
wherbyon  
the Knightes  
of the order of  
S. James  
were first  
instituted.

The Saracenes inhabiting the West parte of Spayne where Valencia standeth, pestred with multitude of people, and considering that the Countrey which was vnto the for their habitation allotted, was neither fruitfull nor wealthie, desired their highe Prince of Marrocco in Mauritania Tingitania whose name was Amerumen, to permit and lycense them to seeke some other place of dwelling, where they might moze commodiously rouse: and whither they might cary theyr people, and famylie and plant themselves moze to their contentacions. Whose requestes their Prince, as one desirous of new alterations and chaunges of the world graunted: and furnishing them out of hande with a Flaue of Brigandines and Gallayes, partlye because he woulde staunch their greedie appetites with other mennes goods, and partlye because he woulde by this meanes trie and seeke out whether there were any fruitfull Soyle and fertile Island, whereinto he might conveniently deryue a Colonie of his owne people, sent them to the Isles of the Orient. They landed first in Corfica, but thence they were repulled and dzyuen awaye by Abdemar, whom Pipine the Sonne of Charles the Great King of Italic, had sent with the Genaway fleet agaynst them. In which conflicte, Abdemar most valiantly and manfully fighting was slayne. From thence sayling to the Isles of Grecia (which were spoyled and disfurnished of the Flaue appoynted to keepe them, through the meanes of the Garrison that tooke parte

L.iiij.

with



## The second Booke

with Thomas) they sacked and robbed almost euery one of them vniuersally. Among all the rest, lykynge Creta best, both for fertilitie of the Countrey, and holmesomenes of Ayze, they laded theyr Shippes with pillage and retourned for that yere home againe, and in the Springe folowing, with .xl. tall Shippes well manned and appoynted for the warres, they hauynge a prosperous gale of wynde came straight agayne to Creta. And setting theyr men on lande at a Promontorie called euer after Carax, set theyr Shippes on fire, and there pitching their Tentes, strongly entrenched them selues, calling the place by the name of Candax. Against whom, the Emperour with all expedition sent a power vnder the conduct of Photinus Liuetenant of the Orient, and one Damianus who in a certaine skirmish against them, was slaine, whose death so much, as stommed and discouraged the residue, that they trusted to their legges and ranne away. Then there came vnto them a certaine Monke out of the mountaines of that Island, who tolde them that the place which they had chosen to builde a Citie vpon, was nothing fit for such a purpose: and withall, shewed vnto them a place, named Candaces, in all pointes farre more commodious. Where they builded a Citie, which should be as the Castle and fortrell of the whole Isle, and called it Candie. Out of which they made roades and inuasions into the whole Isle, insomuch that within a shorte space they brought the same wholly into theyr subiection, dispossessioning the inhabitants and carying the Citizens away into Captiuitie. At which time, Cyrillus Bishop of Gortyne, suffered martyrdom for the profession and testimony of Iesus Christ, our only Saviour. An other name of the about the same time, attempted once againe the winning of Sardinia & Corsica: the which was encountred and vanquished about Sardinia by the power of Charles, the brother

## Of the Saracen Historie. 66

brother of Pipine, being vnder þe conduct of the Countie Bucharede, & b. 99. of the saracens slaine, & all the rest of them after ward by him cleane driuen out of Corfica.

Pipine hauing warres with the Venetians, the Saracens in Spaine, taking occasiõ by the disorde and dissensions of the Christians to bring their own matters to desired effect, sodainly innaded Sardinia, from whence not long afoze, they had bene repulsed with a notable slaughter & losse of their people. But staying not lōg there, they sodainly departed thence: cutting their course directly to Corfica. And lacking þe Citie Aleria, beside þe Bishop and a few other old mē, all the other multitude & common sort they caried thence away wth them. The Emperour Michael, sent out another Panie wherof was Captain Craterus the Lieutenant of Cyberetes, against the Saracenes which roused & nestled in Crete. Who with lxx. Sayle of his owne and an infinite number of Gallies of other Ilandes, well manned & appointed, conragiously landed in Crete: where he found the Saracens neuer a whit abashed of his arriual, neither refusing by dent of sword and stroke of battaile to darraigne their quarell. Whereupon, they mette together in a place meete for such a purpose: where betwene the was fought a sharpe and cruell Battaille, lasting from the dawning of the day till sone, in such doubtfull fortune that hard it was to iudge, whether part in the end would cary away the victorie. But at length toward Evening the Saracens were overcome and fled: wherof many were slaine in the fieldes but moze, throwing away their weapons were taken: insomuch that þe daye they Citie was lyke to haue bene taken and wonne, if it had not bene so nere nighte. Which night and victorie was the destruction and overthrow of þe Greekes as after ward shall appeere. For being now in their iollitie and payde, hoping the next day following wth small labour or none at all, to bring those fewe of theye enemies yet.



## The second Booke

Dronkenes  
the cause of  
a generall  
mishap and  
laughterr.

yet left a liue into their power) gaue themselves to bib, ynge, ryot and bellychere as though they had not bene in their enemies p̄ecinde and daunger but at home in their own houses, taking no regard to let their watch kept, or any other expedient order obserued: Insomuch that minding no other thing but sleepe, ease and sloth (the vter ouerthrowers of al goodnes) they were set vpon in the dead time of the night, inoytinge with their dronken nowles, by the Saracenes (who espyed the aduantage and oportunitie) and were slayne every Mothers sonne, not somuch as a Messenger left aliue to carry home newes of their yll spede. Onely Craterus the Captaine, imbarkeinge himselfe in a Marchauntes Craer, sought to save his life. But when the Chieftayne of the Saracenicall Armye after longe seekinge and tumblinge among the dead Carcasses and Prisoners could not finde him, knowing him then to be escaped and fled, sent in all post hast to pursue and hunt him out. Who being taken and apprehended in the Ile of Coo, was hanged vpon a Gibbet.

The Emperour Michael hearing these newes commanded Orypha a wise man and verie skillfull in Marti- all affaires to gather together the Pratorian Legion (which because every souldiour of that Legion had for his wages xl. Crownes was then called Quadragenaria) and with them he spedde himselfe against the saracenes, whome he greatly endamaged, sometimes killinge them as they raunged licentiously and excursiuely abroad into other Ilandes for spoyle, partly breaking out vpon them out of Stales and Ambushes, layd for the nonce to intrap them; and partly by open combats & pitched battailes. He also cooled the courage and abated the pride, & immoderate audacitie of them that vsurped the Countrey of Crete.

At this time, there was one Euphemias, Capitayne of a certayne Band of Souldiours in Sicilie who not able to master the lasciuious passions of inordinate loue, perforce

## Of the Saracen Historie. 67

perforce took a virgin out of the Cloyster wher she was  
professed Nun, and had bowed chastitie from her tender  
age, and her by the example of his Lozde and Maister the  
emperour (who also had aforetime perpetrated y<sup>e</sup> lyke e-  
uozmity) rauished and carnally knew against her consent  
and wyll. For whiche impyous acte, her Bzother made  
complaynt to the Emperour with humble request y<sup>e</sup> this  
detestable exāple might not escape y<sup>e</sup> penalty & punishmēt  
due for such a villanye. Whereupon the Emperour sent  
Commaundement to the Regent of Sicilie, that if this  
were true) he should sitte and cut of Euphemius his nose.  
Euphemius vnderstanding what sentence and iudgment  
the emperour had geue against him, entred into a conspi-  
racie with his owne Souldiours and other Capitaynes  
besides, and they altogether fled to Ambulak Bysshop of  
the Saracenes in Mauritania. Bzomysing vnto him that  
if he might by his help and meanes be proclaymed Em-  
perour of Romanes, he would deliuer and bzing all Sy-  
cile in subiection vnder him, and woulde mozeouer paye  
vnto hym a great Tribute. Whiche offer and condition  
Ambulak not refusing, inuested hym with the tytle of  
Romane Emperour, and furnished him with a great Ar-  
mye, by meanes whereof he wan the possession of Sicile:  
but Euphemius making his pzogresse and walkes about  
Sicile in the habit and stately gesture of Emperour, was  
at the Citie of Syracuse slaine.

Then began the Saracens to set foote into Calabria and  
diuers other partes of Italye, making therein great hauck  
and spoyle: of whom, one Nauy perished and was cast a-  
way about the Coastes of Sardinia, the other (for there  
were two sent out) in fleringe wyse retourned home.  
Whiche caused Ambulak to conclude a peace with the  
french Kinge.

But within a while after, Bernard the Sonne of  
U Pipine

Inferiours  
take exam-  
ple of their  
Superiours



## The second Booke

Pipine raigning in Italy, the Saracens despising and reiecting the peace that Ambulak had made, innaded Corsica: who in their returne homwarde beinge laden and full fraught with booties and great stoze of Wyllage, were in the mayne Sea encountred by one Ermengarius, a man of great power in the greater of the Balearc Ilands, & to the behoofe of the king of Italy maintained a garison ther, by whome the Saracenes at the first onset were cleane discomfited and put to flight, and diuers of their Shipes intercepted and taken, beside 500. Christian Prisoners in them, which were rescued and saued. Notwithstandinge all this misfortune and discomfiture, the Saracens would rest, but coasting about Italic with their Fleet sodaynely landed and surpysed a towne, in the Coast of Hetruria, named Centumcel, whiche now is called the olde Citie. Which being so taken, they sacked and with Sword and Fire defaced most rudely. From thence holding on their voyage toward Narbon they destroyed, haryed and spoyled the Country al about, and that done innaded Sardinia where they practised all kinde of wast and robbery. But as they fetched their vagaries and licencious roades, Ermengarius agayne with the power of the Ile by hym assembled, vpon a sodayne gaue the charge vpon them, put them to flight, and with great slaughter on their side, dyaue them to the Sea, where so fast as they thicke and threefolde strined, who might first get a boorde they were killed downe right at the pleasure and full desire of their Enemies. Being thus grievously afflicted and hauynge lost a great part of their Navy, they waighed by their Ankers and sayled into Africa. And they which were in Sycile, hearing that the Venetians (to gratysie the Constantinopolitan Emperoure) vnto whom that Ile was subiect) purposed to send a Navy against them, filled their Bagges and stuffed their potches with such spoyle and pray as they lyked and went their way.

After

## Of the Saracen Historie. 68

After this, Haido whom Lewes Kinge of Fraunce and the Emperour had made Ruler of Aquitanie by treacherie and guylefull dealinge surprysed and ruffled the Citie Ausonia, and because he was not of power hymselfe to keepe the same, he procured ayde from the Spanissh Saracens, by whose helpe he spoyled farre and nere both Aquitanie and the hither part of Spayne. Whose purpose and pretence, Lewes within shorte space repressed. And Alphonsis surnamed Magnus, Kinge of Asturia and Lyon, nere to the river Duerro vanquished two Armies of the Saracenicall King of Toledo, whiche were thither sent to besiege and oppugne the Citie of Lyon. Moreover hee rayled the Siege that the Saracenes had bent agaynst Coimbra, and set the same free from their dreadfull oppugnation.

And when hee was in buyldinge the Citie of Zamorra, the same Saracenes vnder the conducte and leadinge of a Prophet of theirs, named Alchama, came agaynst hym, whom he vanquished, and of them slew a great number, and among the rest their Capitayne Alchama: and toke Abboaline prisoner, a Capitayne of great fame and estimation among them, who ransomed himselfe for two C. D. Ducates and so was deliuered. With which money the Kinge newe buylded the famous Temple of S. James in Ouiedo of Marble, whiche was before but of Brick.

A Church  
buyldt with  
the money of  
a Saracen  
payde for  
his ransom  
some.

But in Italie the Saracens had taken Palermo the most famous and noble Citie in all Sicile, neyther was there any man that woulde take vpon him to resist their furious attemptes or once goe about to preuent or repress their malicious depoyzes, sayunge onely Boniface Countee of Corfica, who accompanied with his Brother Beatrius and a fewe other of the Barons and Lords of Hetruria sayled into Africka and landynge betwene Vtica and Carthage slew so manye of his Enemies



## The second Booke

Rome spoyle  
d by the  
Saracens.

in foure cruell Battayles, that like as the Carthaginians  
whilome were enforced to call home Anniball out of Ita-  
lie, so the Saracenes were faine to call home their people  
that were then in Sicile: and so Sicile was deliuered from  
the pestiferous oppzession and extreme daunger of Sara-  
cenicall Hostilitie. After which victozies glouiously by  
Boniface atchieued, he with great foyson and plenty of  
pzeay and riche booties retourned home with his victori-  
ous spauie out of Africa. But the Saracens could not in  
any sauce abyde to be long quiet, but within a while, w<sup>th</sup> a  
greater power and ppyssaunce then at any time befoze,  
they inuaded Italie, and againe toke the Citie Centum-  
cell. From thence in post hast with a running Campe  
they spedde them toward Rome, and with little labour  
got the possession of Vaticanum, and after they had spoyle  
d the goodly Church of S. Peter (which standeth in that  
place) and take away the Dozes of Syluer which it had,  
of pzeice and valew inestimable, they pzophaned it with  
fire and swoorde most sacrilegiously. And tarying there  
certaine dayes they were fully bent to haue layd siege to  
the Citie, but hearing that an armie was leuyed and in  
comming against them out of Lumbardie they departed  
and ruthfully wasted al the Suburbes and billages nere  
the Citie that laye betwene the two wayes Appia and  
Latina. They spoyle and robbed the Cathedral Church  
of S. Paule in the way called Via Ostiensis, and consu-  
med the most part of it with fire: from thence turning in-  
to Latina Via, they spoyleingly rushed into the pzecincte  
and Chafe of Calsinum, and robbed the Temple of Calsi-  
num of all the holy Dynamentes, Vestures, Reliques,  
and Gytes whereof it had marueilous great store, and  
utterly ruynated a great part therof. Then keeping their  
way by the right side of the riuer Leire, they spedde them  
apace toward the Sea, in such populous blumpes, that  
they were like vnto a violent swifte strome or terrible  
whirle.

## Of the Saracen Historie. 69

whirlewinde : and fraughting their Shippes with their  
spoyles and booties, which lay there ready, they hoysed  
up theyr Sailes and launched into the maine Sea.

And in Hispaine, Abduramen King of Corduba en-  
tring into the borders of Biskaye, fought most valiantly  
and fiercely the space of a whole day with the Armies and  
power of Ordonius King of Lyon and Garcias & Igni-  
genius of Biskaye : and fortune seeming for that daye to  
dispose and encline the victorie to neither party, departed  
the Battaille. Ordonius meaning to requite & pay home  
Abduramen, entred into his Countrey, and subuerbed  
the Towne of Cincilia, which is now called Santiliana.  
But in Asia, Imprael & Caliph of Syria, succeeding Mua-  
mat, with a huge power brake into the confines and li-  
mittes of the Romane Emperour. Against whom, the Em-  
perour Theophilus marched with his royall Army, and  
hauing in his company two most valiaunt Capitaynes  
Theophobus and Manuel, in whose prowesse and dexte-  
ritie in armes he reposed his whole trust and confidence,  
was fully resolved and determined to giue vnto him bat-  
taye : of whose appoche and coming, Imprael heeing  
certified whether he did it vpon an arrogance & disdain,  
or that he feared the euent and fortune of Battaye, lea-  
uing behinde him one Abuzachar with. lxxx. thousande  
good fighting and well appointed men to try the quarell  
by stroke of mortall conflicte, departed and went bys-  
way with part of his Armye. The battaye heeing  
ioyned and clasped together, and the Saracenes get-  
ting the upperhande, Theophilus with his Prætorian  
bande and two. m. Persians and Theophobus, escaped  
and attayned into the toppe of a little Hill, which be-  
ing fiercely assailed and beset with Saracenes, whose  
only desire was to take the Romane Emperour Pri-  
soner, the Romane Souldiours most valiantly figh-  
ting for the safegarde and incolumitie of theyr Lozde  
and



## The second Booke

and Maister the Emperours sacred Maiestie, defended. The conflicte continued, sharply and desperately foughten on both sides tyll the Euening. But as soone as night was come, Theophobus by a pretie sleight and Stratageme deluded the Saracenes and brought themselves out of that present danger and extremitie. For he commanded his Souldiours, as loude as they coulde to shoute and make a noyse, and to sounde theyr Trumpettes and play vpon their Harpes and muscalle Instrumentes, as though there had come some freshe ayde and succour to releue and rescue them at that present pynche of distresse. Which deuise fell out accorpyng to his first imaginacion. For the Saracenes surely thinking that moze ayde was come, and fearing leaste they should be entrapped and on every syde enclosed by their enemyes, discomped and remoued fure Pyles further of, and so the Emperour with all his retinewe and Host being deliuered out of danger, came safe to the residue of his Armye, whiche saued themselves by flight at the last conflicte. For which politique Stratageme and wyse shifte, the Emperour made Theophobus chiefe Generall and Lieutenaunt of the whole Armie. And the yeere folowing, makynge another voyage and expedition against the Saracenes, vanquished them in a notable Battayle at Charfianum, and so wyth twentie and fure thousande Prisoners he returned home.

Agayne, the thyrde yeere he lencyed his power and marched against them and loyning Battayle with them was so circummented and beset with his enemyes that he had almost fallen into theyr handes. Which danger of the Emperour, Manuel chiefe Capitaine of the Army vnder him percepyng, encouraged and incensed the mindes of his Souldiours with a belement Motion and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 70

and made a way perforce to the place where the Emperour was distressed, and hym (beeing notwe wearied and bitterly dispayning of any escape or remedie, yet mynding to abyde the uttermost hazarde, rather then he woulde dismaye and leaue his shouldours comfortlesse throught hys departure, saying that he woulde not by flight betray the lyues of his pooze vassalles into the mercylesse talantes of that wicked generation) deliuered and brought out of that daunger, not without, threats and menaces that he woulde kill him, lesse he woulde consent to folow him openyng the way and passage for him to escape. And the fourthe tyme, both the Armies wyth all theyr powers comming into the filde without any notable thing done worthe of remembzaunce, retourned home. The fift yeere, Theophilus leadyng his Armye sarre within Syria, wastling and spoyling all the Countrey in hys waie, wanne and Conquered Zozopetra the Countrey and Seate of Imprael, which so nettled and chaused Imprael, that he assembled all the power hee was hable to make wyth intent to invade Amorium the Countrey of Theophilus. His Armye mette all together at Tharsus: whither when Imprael himselfe was come, he sent hys Sonne wyth parte of his Armye before, to skirmishe and dallye (as it were in the waie of an assaye) with the Romane Hoaste, whiche was lodged and encamped at Dorylaeum thre dayes journey from Amorium. And vnto hym he appoynted fenne thousande Turkes and all the power of Armenia. Who beeing thus furnished and appoynted wyth men and armour and encamped at Drazymenum, Theophilus went against him and lodged his Hoaste in a place called Auzin, purposing before he woulde ioyn any Battayle to espie and discover the multitude and number of his enemyes.

A pitifull  
state.

Being



## The second Booke

Being therefore by Manuel brought vp to the top of an high Hyll, he iudged his Enemies Armye to be stronger then his, wheras Manuel aduised him, not to consider noz weighe & multitude of them, but y<sup>e</sup> Forrest & thick Wood of their Spears. Neuerthelesse, after much deliberation & sage aduise first had, the battayle was begunne most vigorously betimes in the morninge, wherein the Romane Legions acquitted themselves so valyauntly that the Saracenes were discomfited and compelled to flye. But behold, the Romanes in folowinge the chase, were so galled and payed home with the shot of the Turkes arrowes which were as thick as Hayle discharged againste them, that then ensued a cleane contrarye consequence, and the whirling wheele of mutable Fortune by a newe hzoyls turned vpside downe. For the Romane Legions not hable to sustayne and abide the force of the Turkish Arrowes, shamfully left their Emperoure and fledde, albeit their Capitaines and Kingleaders the Persians manfully and vndauntedly started stylle and fought for his preservation and safetie.

But there was an other thing also that helped the Emperour at that pinch very much, hapning by the qualitie of the weather. For there fell a small Rayne (verye little in comparison) which (notwithstandinge) so butt wishted and weakened the Turkes Bowstrings, that the same could stand them in no stæde at that time. Whereby it came to passe, that the Romanes beinge notwe out of the feare of arrowes, toke therby occasion to help theselues.

When Imprael knewe of this successe and victorie of his Men, he toynd his Sonnes Host and his owne all in one & marched toward Amorium, which was strongly Bulwarke and entrenched with a verye deepe ditch, about the which he planted his siege with all the might and power he had. But when hee coulde nothinge preuayle but saw all his laboure frustrate, one Batidzes

an

# Of the Saracen Historie. 71

an Amorien and a Traitor to his Countrey being corrupted with bribes & glutted with great gifts, bewzaied and discovered to the Saracenes the state of the Citie and on which part of the same they might best and with most ease mount vpon the walles and enter. And thus by treason, was this Citie, the sayest and noblest of all the Cities Orientall wonne and subuerted. Whiche victorie and conquest so enflamed the proude stomack of Impracl that he calling befoze him the Ambassadors which the Emperour befoze y<sup>e</sup> Siege had sent with great rewards vnto him to perswade him to desist his inuasion and purpose whom till this time the sayde Impracl had deteyned and kept in Prison. And commaunding them first to beholde and surueighe every place from point to poynt sent them home as messangers to intimate and shew to the Emperour they<sup>r</sup> Maister, the present newes of this calamitie. Of whom the Emperour being certified of the truthe, sent them againe vnto Impracl to take some order for the ransomes of the Noble men and Gentlemen Prisoners, being many in number, taken in that Citie, for whose ransome he offered. 2500 li. of Golde: whom the barbarous Tyranne spightfully and contumeliously sent backe againe, with this answer, that he might woorthely be accompted a dolte and a foole, if he shoulde deliuer his Prisoners for suche a small Summe of Money, sithens he himselfe in that Warre had disbursed and spent fenne times as much as that valewe amounted vnto. Whiche mysshappe and losse so grieved the Emperour Theophilus, that for very sorrow and thought he dyed.

After him succeeded hys Sonne Michael, who following the noble steppes of his father yode wyth an armie against the Saracenes, and layde Siege vnto Samolacca, a stronge and wealthie Citie of their iurisdiction, situate vpon the Ryuer Euphrates. But while hys

£.

Armie

The Citie  
by treason  
wonne by  
Saracens.



## The second Booke

Armie (so that the Saracenes as though they had bene a frayde, kept their beades within the walles of their citie) was lulled in securitie, geuyng no regarde to orderly behauiour, no to the good keeping of their watch, the Saracenes all in armure vppon the thirde day after the Siege was planted, whē al þe Romane Souldiours were assembled & congregated together to heere diuine service (so it was vppon a Sundaye) setting open their Gates and issuing out todaynlye, kylled and manquelled the Romans on euery side: insomuch that the Emperoure himselfe had much a do to escape, lossing and leauyng behinde him all his carriage and prouision. And agayne within thre yeres next after, the Saracenes entred within the dition and lymites of the Romane Empire with xxx. M. men, wherfore Michael meaning to wyne his Spurres againe & to be euen w<sup>th</sup> the saracens so: þe soyle lately taken at their handes, leuied an Armie of xlv. M. Thracians and Macedonians, and marched against them. Which when they knew, by dangerous iourneyes and compendious pathes they p<sup>re</sup>uented his purpose, settinge vpon him todaynly and at vnawares being in his iournay and out of order. Wherby he was discomfited and compelled to flee. And at that time, they saye that Michael had fallen into the handes of his Enemies, if Manuel had not venturously entred and violentlye broken into the b<sup>re</sup>ast of the Enemies Armie and disturbinge their arraie deliuered him from daunger.

Two yeres after this, Mamume the Son of Imprack beinge Caliph of Syria, the Saracenes with an Armie of xl. thousand men spoiled and ouerrunne Armenia and all the Sea coastes cruelly. At whiche time, the Caliph is reported to haue done as Xerxes longe afoze did, commaunding the Sea to be whipped and beaten with scourges, because it stopped his intent, that he could not haue

## Of the Saracen Historie. 72

hane his will to go any further. Michael who could not with patient minde bꝛoke and digest these iniuries, sent his Uncle Petrona (Lientenant of Thracia) with a great power against Mamume. Who encamped hymselfe in a certayne place called Lalacxon, and settinge Stales and Ambushes on euery side to surprize and entrappe his foes when aduantage should be offered, prouoked Mamume to the encountrie and battayle. Mamume being thus beset, and on euery side circummented by his Enemies, lyke vnto a Byrd in a Cage, or a Deere in a Buckstall, was at his wittes ende, not knowynge how to escape or shift hymselfe out of that imminent perill. And demanding of one of the Romane captiues (whom he had taken Prisoner) the name of that Countrey and place wherein he had pight his Banilions and Campe, and by what name the riuer there harde by, was called, answere was made by the Prisoner, that the Countrey was called Lalacxon, the place Ptofon, and the riuer Gyris.

Whereby he presaged and by the appellacions of the same places (so hee was a man well sene in the Greeke and Latyne Tongues, and earnestlye geuen to y study of Philosophy) immediatly considered y those names portended his confusion and some notable overthrowe of his people, and signified that hee and his retynne should be on euery side beset and caught lyke Fishes in a Net by the Romanes. Notwithstandinge, he encouraged his men not to quayle and despayre, but to stande lustellie to their tackelynge and to determyne with themselves to withstand their Enemies.

Wherefoze the next morning, as soon as the day appeared, well perceiuing hymselfe to be hemmed in on euery side, he determined to seeke a way and egress by that part and place which Petrona guarded, and thereupon geuing vn-  
to



## The second Booke

**A** Saracen  
Prince and  
all his host  
slayes.

to his men a watchword and token to geue aloude shoute all at once, there set vpon his enemies. But seeing his attempt and purpose to be all in vayne, he a little retyred, & after a small breathing, gaue a sharpe and freshe onset agayne, and vsing this order sundry tymes by startes geuyng a blow and away agayne, at length desperatly with a belement violence and force rushed into the middes of his enemyes, and was there slayne, both he and all his Host utterly.

**An example**  
of greatloue  
and libera-  
ltye toward  
learnynge in  
a Saracene.

His Sonne whom he had sent on roving and spoyling with parte of his Armye, bearinge of his Fathers death and confussion, retyred in hast to Melitena. But he was pursued and taken by y<sup>e</sup> Capitaine of y<sup>e</sup> Charsian Streits, and presented to Petrona. This Mamume was surerly a man garnished and endued with many excellēt qualities and notable vertues. For beyng himselfe singulerly well learned, he cherishe and entyerlye loued all them that were learned, esteemyng and entertayning them very honozable, as by that example following shal appeare, which for the worthynesse and commendacion thereof, I haue thought good here to disciphere.

There was in Constantinople (somtime called Byzance) a certayne Philosopher named Leo, somtime byshoppe of Thesalonica, and now depriued from the Byshopricke and Byshopricke thereof by reason of a deuision and controuerſie touching the hauyng and woꝛshipping of Images, which at that time merueilouslye frushe and disturbed the Latine and the Greeke Church. Beinge for this cause thence exiled, hee came to Constantinople, where he byered a pꝛyꝛ Cotage, and set vp a Schole, pꝛo-  
fessing to traine and instructe such Scholers as resorted to him, in what Arte soeuer every one was best disposed to learne. Inſomuch that out of his pꝛyꝛate Schole ther came many notable Clarkes, very skillfull in the studies of Artes and Philosophy, and among the rest, it so chann-  
ced

## Of the Saracen Historie. 73

red about this time that a certayne young man one of his Scholers, hauinge by his Maisters industrious labour and diligence attayned to an exact knowledge and skyll of Geometrie, was taken Prisoner in the warres by the Saracens, & chaunced into y<sup>e</sup> service oz rather seruitude of a noble man of great estimation and name amonge them. Whom Mamume by report and common bzuite hearing to be well sene in the Mathematicall Disciplines commaunded to be bzought befoze him. And causinge hym in a disputation to be thzoughly apposed, found, that he so farre passed & surmounted the Arabian Geometricians, that of those thinges whereof they alone thought themselves to haue the vse and experience, he was well hable to alledge and bzinge the proper reasons and causes. Mamume greatly wondzing at his pzeise and pzofoound knowledge (soz he had thought that no nacion had had the skill of that Arte but the Arabians onely) asked him of tohom he had learned his Arte, and whether his maister were yet liuing. The younge man answered, that his Maisters name was Leo, a poze man, and as yet vn- luckie to the wo:ldly godes of Fortunes giftes and disposition, but geuen altogether to his Booke and Studie. Wherevpon Mamume straightwaies addzessed his Letters to Leo in effect as foloweth.

Euē as the Tree is knowne by his fruit, so we by the Scholer doe well know the exelencie of the Maister. These therfoze shalbe to requeste thee, that (sozasmuche as God hath blessed thee with a gyft so incomperable, and sithence thou lyuest there in poze estate, vnknowne oz at least vnraged of thy Citezens and Countrey men, reappng no fruite of thy rare wisdoms and supernaturall speculation) thou wouldest daigne to come vnto vs, and make vs pertakers of thy admirable learninge. This doing, make thy sure account, that all the Saracenical nation shall submit themselves vnto thee and be



## The second Booke

readie at thy best and commaundement, and thou shalt  
bee enryched with such rewardes, rycheſſe and reue-  
nues, as neuer yet any man hath bene. These letters  
he deliuered vnto the young man to carie to Conſtan-  
tinople, ſetting him free at libertie and rewarding hym  
moſt honozably.

When Leo had receiued theſe letters, he opened and  
ſolde the whole matter to certayne of the Emperours  
familiers. And by this meanes hee became knowen to  
the Emperour, who appointing vnto him a competent  
ſtipend and pencion commaunded him to teache publi-  
kly. Mamume diſpairing of Leo his comming, ſent vnto him  
certayne Geometricall and Aſtronicall queſtions  
and ſome of the other Sciences, deſiring him therein to  
haue his reſolution. The which beyng cunningly by Leo  
aſſoyled he ſent backe againe to Mamume, wherevnto  
he had alſo annexed certaine tokens and Signes tou-  
ching the prediction of future thinges. Which Letters  
when Mamume had read, it is ſayde, that he was rani-  
ſhed with ſuche an ardent deſire and zeale toward Leo,  
that he exclaymed in thys ſort: O happie and thyſe hap-  
pie are they I ſaye, (O Diuine Leo) which haue the  
compaignie and fruition of thy preſence. Then ſortly  
with he ſent a ſolemne Ambaſſade with great rewardes  
and ryche preſentes vnto the Emperour, and wraite bys  
Letters alſo vnto him as foloweth: I was fully deter-  
myned (as it becommeth an vnfeigned friende) to haue  
come my ſelfe vnto thee: but ſithens the waightie affai-  
res of our Emprye and the gouernance of a moſt fierce  
and wylde people, by God committed vnto my charge  
(from whom all power and ſuperioritie floweth) wil not  
ſo permytte: I am faine in my ſteede to ſende vnto thee  
my Ambaſſadours with requeſt, that it may pleaſe thee  
to ſende vnto me Leo, a man endued wyth great ſin-  
gularitie in the knowledge of Philoſophie and other  
Sciences

## Of the Saracen Historie. 74

Sciences, sojourning and making his abode wythin, the Citie of Constantinople. That he dwelling a while, wyth me, may geue me instructions and make me partaker of his doctrine, where he is so frequently enamoured and as it were inuincible. Doe not (I pray thee) deferre the same, but doe as my request, because of any diuersitie of things, as for any kinde dealings betwixt me and thee, I will be as thou shalt here in like a friende. For which cause and curtesie thou wilt giue vnto thee a .p. It is God, and wil enter into an infrangible league and perpetuall amitie with thee and all thy Dominions.

Which request the Emperour would not graunt, leaſt the Sciences (for which the Romanes were renowned and had in admiration among all Nations) should be communicated & diſcovered to the Barbarous people. Where in he being a Greeke and a Chriſtian, might full well haue learned at the hands of a barbarous person and Idolatrous Infidel to reuerence and conſignely eſteeme verſue: which thing would God, Princes and noble men in this age, admoniſhed by this goodly example would doe. For euer after ward, he had Leo in great honour, and promoted him to great wealth and dignitie, and reſtozed him againe to his See and Biſhopprike of Theſſalonica, where he was highly honoured and of all men reuerenced for that through his ſorecaſting wyl & ſurpaſſing knowledge he conuerted and brought the land and ground of Theſſalonica from barainneſſe & ſterilitie, to fruitfullneſſe and fertilitie. But now it is time for vs to retourne to diſcourſe of Occidentall matters.

The Saracenes of Mauritania, tranſſreting out of Sicile (wherein they had taken and of longe tyme ſurped manye Townes) into Italic, vnder the guiding and conducte of Saba, beſieged Tarento. The Greeke and Venetian ſhanies loyning in one, arrived



## The second Booke

Victory of  
Saracens, over  
the  
Greekes and  
Venetians.

ued in Calabria, to raise the Siege and to rescue the Citie. Wherefore hearing Saba, saying as though he had beene afraid, to th' intent he might the rather allure and provoke the enemy to cope with him, repyled his Siege and discompe, and like as though he had bene loath to meddle, repyled into the region of Crotona: where being afterward assailed and set upon, at the first burst he discomfited and put to flight the Greekes, and the whole pusillance of the Saracens was all bent & turned against the Venetians fighting and defending themselves manfully: and a few of them in number being by a pause so strong and mightie circumvented, were partly slain, partly drowned, but the Venetians in that conflict perished and were brought to confusion everichone, which victory set Saba so a flote & ingenerated in him such haughtinesse and pride, that speedely coasting over the Ionian Sea, he arrived in the coast of Illyria, practising therein along the provinciall borders great pillage and robbery, and hearing that the Venetian fleet was returning homeward, laden with Wares out of Syria, he brought about his pause with all expedition into the Bay of Trieste, and from thence insidiously and sodainly setting upon them, spoiled and killed the Marchauntes and Mariners, and all the Rowers, their rooted hatred and spightfull rancour toward y<sup>e</sup> Venetia name was so unappeaseable. Letting thence, he cut his course toward Ancon a noble Citie of Picene, where there is a goodly haven, and it forcibly took and being taken, sacked and last of all consumed it with fire, and a few of the Oppidanes or Townesmen which taried still, were taken. For the rest being brought into sodaine feare and amazednes through this violent irruption were fledde almost all into the mayne land and mediterranean region.

Within a litle while after, an other pause of Saracens landed in the coast of Etruria, with purpose and full intent

# Of the Saracen Historie. 75

tent to besiege and take the Citie of Rome. Whose so dayne arrivall and terrible approche filled all the Citie with terrour and dread. Wherefore Pope Leo the fourth of that name assembled the people together, and unto the made this Oracion following.

What is the matter my Children whereof you are somuch affraide? or why are your mindes thus troubled and appailld? Certes there happeneth nothing unto vs without the providence and wyll of the almightye God, neither is it sent unto vs undeservedlye on our partes. When ought we to feare & dread their tyzannie, whē we fall at ciuill strife and goe together by the eares amonge our selues, when one Brother conspireth his Brothers death and destruction. For all they whiche do beleue and confesse Chyste to be their Saniour and Redemer, are Brothers. When I say when the Bands of these mischiefes are kindled amonge vs, we ought to feare, leasse God being highly displeased with vs therfore, should send these or rather worse plagues vpon vs. For if you think that these impious and barbarous people are sent unto vs without the will and pleasure of almighty God, you are far deceived. For holy Scriptures do in many places testifie & dayly examles euery where teache & confirme the same. God saying by his owne mouth, that he wyll vse the wicked blasphemers and the enemies of his sacred name as whippes to scourge, and meanes to pursue by vnfaithfull, wyllfull and disobedient Children. And we do know, that the ciuile disoord and flagitious dissolutenes of the Greekes gaue first occasion to this pestiferous and diabollicall nation, to extend their rage and practise their first cruell invasion vpon the Christians. Did not the lewde lyving of the Gothes and Kinge Rodirick, allure them to set soote into Hispaine. Whome although these bellish Impes discomfited and condinglye punished, yet when they once conuered their force and moued warre

Oracion of  
Pope Leo  
the fourth,  
to encourage  
his Romans  
against the  
saracens.



## The second Booke

against god and godly men, they were repulſed, put to  
ſight and ſlaigne even of a ſew. What do we feare this  
moſt baſtardly rable and loſſie nacion moze then we do  
Almightie God: ſoz we doubt not alwyt, every howe  
and enerye mynute of an howe to offend his Di-  
uine Maieſtie, to prouoke his wꝛath and anger againſte  
vs, to reuile and blaſpheme his holy name: to ſhewe our  
ſelues wilfull, diſobedient and ſtubborne to the loze of  
his ſweet woꝛd and commaundment and by our owne  
phantaſticall deuices to heape vnto ouer ſelues the grie-  
uous ſentence of his heauy diſpleaſure: but at the onely  
bearinge of this reprobate generation, wee tremble and  
quake ſoz feare, as though humane foꝛce and moꝛtall  
Armes were moze to be feared, then euerlaſting paynes  
and eternal damnation. What is the auncient pyſſance  
and knightly prowes that was wont to be in the vndaun-  
ted Romanes: What is become of their valiauntnes,  
paynfulneſſe, trauaile and courage that in all extremyte  
and aduerſitie was euer inuincible: Our Anceſtoꝛs  
and foꝛefathers, befoze Chriſtianitie was embraced, oz  
Chriſt to the woꝛld notyſied and beleened on, being yet  
blinded and noſeled in Idolatrye and ſuperſtitious Reli-  
gion, feared no foꝛce, no violence, no multytude of ene-  
mies, but oftentimes with a ſmall handfull and power,  
banquiſhed the mightie & populous armies of their ene-  
mies: The Gaules & French, being a people and nacion  
moſt fierce and at that time by reaſon of the buygenes of  
their bodies ſozmidable and dreadfull (the limytes of the  
Romane Empire being yet but ſtreit and narrow, & the  
Cittie nothing ſo great as now it is, mens courages alſo  
thꝛough the ſodayne irruption and coming of ſucha ſirce  
and big nacion marueilloſſie abbaſhed) toke in dede (I  
cannot deny) this Cittie, hauing in it at that time no foꝛte  
of defence noꝛ comodus place made by art ſoz reſiſtance:  
but yet the Capitoll, they were neuer hable to take. And  
not

## Of the Saracen Historie. 76

not suffered long there to rouse, were by the valiaunce of  
 one banished Romane thence repulsed and driuen away  
 with notable slaughter of a great mainy of their people.  
 And behold, the Romane empire was not of such power  
 and strength at that time as it is now. For the limytes  
 of the Emperre extended no further but to the Romane Ter-  
 ritory. Now whereas the greatest part of Italy is sub-  
 iect to the Romane State, and the Citie with people well  
 replenished, hauing now not the Capitoll onely for your  
 fortress, but a whole Towne also by our industrie and  
 procurement annexed and vnited to your Citie, fortified  
 and strengthened with all maner of Artificiall device and  
 policie, hauing (I say) so many noble Personages and  
 approued Capitaines both for skill & courage renowned,  
 and the Sea of the most Catholique Religion here resi-  
 dent, you now stand in dread and feare not of the Gauls,  
 which be a worthy and noble nation not of the burge and  
 populous armies of the Gothes, nor yet of the Hunnes,  
 the Subuerter and destroyers of many moste flourish-  
 yng and noble cities: but of the most cowardly and rogissh  
 nation of all Asia, a pilfering rable of Mauritanian, thienas  
 and Agarantes. The Hannes head that was founde  
 in the ground where the Capitoll standeth, gaue such a  
 destinie and fate therunto, that no nation shoulde be habile  
 by conquest and force to take it. Do you think that the Ca-  
 pitoll was earst moze safe and holie, beinge the Seate of  
 Saturn, then it is now, being employed to a Castle of sin-  
 cere and true religion? Belæue me, belæue mee, neyther  
 the Saracenes nor anye other wicked Nation whiche are  
 the professed Enemies of Christs name and Religion  
 shall euer buylde their Towre & plant themselves in this  
 Citie. Rome was buylde vnder such a lucky Constel-  
 lation, that the Emperre thereof shall neuer quayle but  
 continue perpetuallie: and vnder this same destenie is  
 this Towne therunto annexed and adioyned that it



## The second Booke

▪ should be the See of Religion, which thing the most em-  
▪ periall and Cathedrall Church of him that is chiefe of the  
▪ Apostles assuredly promisseth. But peradventure you  
▪ thinke, that God being provoked and moved to wrathe  
▪ by reason of our manyfold sinnes & offences, hath given  
▪ them leave thus to extend and shew their villanous rage  
▪ against vs. I grant, we haue demerited these and farre  
▪ greater Plagues, and that this ruffling stirre is sent vp-  
▪ on vs not without the speciall foresight and prouidence of  
▪ God, that taking warning and occasion by these aduersi-  
▪ ties and oppressions, to amende our naughty liues, wee  
▪ may the better renounce our former haunt of licentious  
▪ lustes, and with penitent hearts turne vnto him. And so  
▪ long shall they haue power over vs, as we persist & wil-  
▪ fully wallow in the stinking puddle of our vngenerous  
▪ wayes. But if we truly repent and imploze his mercy,  
▪ this wicked Nation shall straightwayes geue place and  
▪ flee before vs like sheepe, whom wee shall kill and slea  
▪ down right before vs, and reuenge the iniuries that they  
▪ the yeres passed haue done vnto vs and vnto the Maiesty  
▪ of Almighty God, whose Temples and consecrated houses,  
▪ they haue wickedly polluted and most horriblely profane-  
▪ ned. Hereof may you make your full account, vnlesse  
▪ peradventure you thinke that the Asturians, the Canta-  
▪ brians and French (who haue oftentimes vanquished and  
▪ with noxious calamities discomfited them) to haue been  
▪ better and more valiant against me then you your selues be.  
▪ But they were not (believe me) and God is no lesse mer-  
▪ ciful to the present state and inward mindes of me now  
▪ dayes, then he was in the age and life passed. For at the  
▪ public Sermons and zealous admonitions of Pelagius  
▪ and other holy men, they renounced their vicious wayes  
▪ and turning vnto God besought his helpe to assist and de-  
▪ liver them out of thraldome. He is so mercifull, and so  
▪ ready to heare the petitions of the faithfull that he neuer  
▪ forsaketh

## Of the Saracen Historie. 77

forlaketh nor leaueth destitute and comfortlesse them, that vnsleignedly and hartely craue ayde at his handes. Amende your lyues therefore, and well thinke with your selues that you must wyth toth and nayle, so endeuour your selues, that you may not in any wise for godlynes and faith geue place to any passion in the worlde. Call to memory the p̄stinate valiance, of the Romane name, couragiously aduaunce forward, handle your weapons manfully and deale your payssaunt blowes doughtily among yonder miscreant people, I my selfe will be your Capitaine and goe before you, and participate wyth you what euent soeuer Fortune sendeth. I doe assure you, the victorie is most certainly in your handes, if you will doe as before I haue directed you. They whose chaunce shall be to dye in this most godly quarrell and Battayle, shall not onely wyne in this worlde, a glorious fame & renowned praise, but shalbe afterward transported into the Kingdome of euerlasting lyfe and haue theyr names registred in the Booke, of lyfe among the electe of God for ever.

After he had made an ende, as many as were habile and fitte for warfare, tooke weapon in hande, and followed hym to Ostia. There meanyng to receyue at pulke of the Pyke, the enemye, so soone as he shoulde set any fote on lande. When they evidently descryed the enemyes appoche, and in sight perused their order, the Bysshoppe estones commaunding his souldiours to bowe the knees of their heartes and earnestly to pray vnto God, imploied the diuine assistance and mercifull ayde of hym that is the geuer of all victorie, whose wordes and prayer were in effecte as followeth.

O almightie and most mercifull father which against thy prayer, the victorie vnto Gedeon wyth a small number ouer, the hygge multitude of his enemyes, then which neuer,



## The second Booke

yet, leste thy seruantes and true woꝛshippers succour  
 , leste and without helpe, mercifully encline thyne eare  
 , vnto vs and heare our Prayers: and soꝛ thy deare sonnes  
 , sake whiche shedde his pꝛecious bloude soꝛ our redemp-  
 , tion, graunt that we thy Seruantes here assembled to  
 , fight against the enemies of thy faith may be coꝛroboꝛa-  
 , ted and strengthened with the mightie hande of thy Pa-  
 , testie. And thou O Sautour Iesus Chꝛist, euen as thou  
 , diddest saue and deliuer Peter from dꝛowning as he wal-  
 , ked in the wanes of the Seas, and saued another of  
 , thy Apostles after thꝛe dꝛaungerous shipwꝛeckes from  
 , beeyng swallowed vp of the, Sources thereof: so Lorde  
 , now at this present pynch, deliuer vs from this scoꝛne  
 , and tyꝛannicall inuasion, make vs stronge and giue  
 , vs a courage to claspe and barraigne thy quarrell ba-  
 , liauntly against these thy swoꝛne and pꝛofessed enemies,  
 , that putting them to the soyle and tryumpbyg ouer  
 , them, thy blessed name may be gloꝛified, and the puif-  
 , saunce thereof reuerenced, honoured & sanctified thꝛough-  
 , out the whole woꝛld.

When began the Battaille most fiercely, toherin the Ro-  
 mans so couragiously and valiauntly quit themselves, as  
 neuer in any Battaille befoꝛe better, insomuch that they  
 seemed as me not fighting in a battaille depending in any  
 doubtfull hazarde, but rather as persons most certaynely  
 perswaded of victorie and conquest. Foꝛ a while at the  
 first, the battaille was so hardly & fiercely foughten, that  
 hard it was to tell to whether side the victorie would fall:  
 Many were slaine, moe wounded, but in the ende the  
 Saracens were put to flight, and with great slaughter of  
 their men dꝛyuen backe to theyꝛ Shippes. Very many  
 of them by dyuerse chaunces came to theyꝛ death & con-  
 fusion: and many were taken: of whom, some were  
 strangled wyth roapes and hanged ouer and aboute the  
 Hauen to the terrour and example of others, albeit the  
Bishop

## Of the Saracen Historie. 78

Bishop being a man of a mylde and gentle nature was unwilling therunto and would not haue had such crueltie and slaughter executed vpon the Captiues. The rest were brought to Rome and employed as Iudges for the common and publique woorkes of the Citie. For this Leo had builded in Vaticanum a fine Borough which he named Leo his Citie, now at this day called Borgo: and thereunto had deuised and appointed a Colonie of the Corsicans, when the Saracens had expelled and perforce cast out of their native soyle and Countrey the Isle of Corsica, unto whom he assigned by the Polle, ground for their habitation and tillage about Vaticanum. This Borough he dayly more and more fortified, adorned and beautified. After this, the Saracenes which intrusively vsurped Creta, landed a great fleet in Illicum and Histria and besieged Grade a Citie belonging to the State and Seigniorie of Venice. But hearing of the Duke of Venice his speedie approche and coming agaynst them, they without any more stay waighed vp their Ankers and toke the maine Sea. This happened in the yere of our Lord. 865.

In the Orientall parties, Basilus Macedo warring vpon the Saracenes of Creta was by them vanquished and many of his men slayne, insomuch that he hymselfe escaped verie hardly from being taken. Neuerthelesse theyr lustie courages and desperate boldnesse was within a whyle after well cooled by a hardie and valiaunt Capitayne called Christopher sent by the same Basilus agaynst them with an Armye into Creta. And the Emperour himselfe in person with an Armye went into Syria where hee tooke certayne Holdes and fortresses and spoiling the Countrey all aboute as hee went, at length planted bys Siege agaynst Tephrica a noble and famous Citie of the Saracenes.

But



## The second Booke

But perceiuing that the same was not possible to be taken but by long Siege, he thence discamped and passed the river Euphrates by a bridge of Shippes. And spoiling the the Countrey and places there aboutes, assaultynge and battering many strong holdes, whereof some he tooke by surrender, he retourned againe to y<sup>e</sup> citie. Where he rested not long, but agayne making a warlyke voyage & expedition into Siria agaynst the Saracens, bent his whole force to winne Germanicia and wanne it. From thence he remoued to the Citie Adana, which he fiercely besieged and burnt the Suburbes. Whiche Citie albeit the Citizenes and Inhabitanes defended very slackly and negligently, yet could not he wyne and take it. Basilius wondring to see them so secure and negligent in such imminent danger, demaunded of them the cause thereof, vnto whom an ancient man of the Citie answered: that it was decreed by destinye that he should neuer winne their Citie maugre all his force and battary, notwithstandinge there shoulde come one of his lygne and race called Constantine which should obtayne the same by conquest, but it should not be his Sonne Constantine, who was with him in his camp at that present.

At whiche aunswere Basilius so fozmed and fumed that he gaue the assault farre moze fiercely, and violently then at any time befoze he had done. But when he saw he could nothing pzenaile, he rayled his Siege and went his way, but befoze his departure, he commaunded all his Prisoners to be slayne, least they should stir vp some disturbance and commotion & also because he would be out of feare and not neede to appoynte keepers vnto them. Shortlye after, the Saracens of Tharsus infesting the Roman Provinces, he sent one Andrew surnamed Scythia against them, who acquiting & behauing himselfe against them very honozably & knightly, their courage was alaid and their malicious attempts well byidled. Whereat the  
Kinge

## Of the Saracen Historie. 79

King of Tharsus so stamped and stared, that in most horrible and blasphemous tearmes he belched out words full of threates and spightfull contumelies against God, in his Letters addressed and sent vnto Andrew: Wherein he wrote, y if he had inuaded and come in person against hym, it was not the Sonne of Mary that should haue holpen or deliuered him.

A reuilinge  
Blasphemer.

But it was not long befoze he felt the deserved smarte and due guerdon of his odible myscreatunce. For comming himselfe with moze ayde to his Hoast, Andrew on the other side in good order marshalled his Campe and gaue vnto him battayle: Where betwene them was fought a cruell conflict, but in th'end the Saracenes turned theis backs and fled, in which Chase, most of them were slayne, and among the rest the Kinge himselfe, was there bereft of lyfe and limme.

It chaunced within a while after, that by the knisser meanes and enuious rancour of some backfrindes which spighted at his good successe and valyaunt prowesse, this Andrew was accused to the Emperour his maister, that when he well might, he wou lde not take and wyne the Citie of Tharsus: vnto whiche surmised accusation, such credit was geuen, that Andrew was discharged of his generallshippe, and one Stypiota placed in his Roome. The Saracens which followed no time nor occasion that might further their Affayres and proceedings, perceiuing & vnderstanding y through this priue gruge & new change, the watch was nothing at al looked vnto, in the night time set vppon them and slew of them very many, and the rest put to flight. On the other side, the Affricane Saracens besieging Ragusium (whiche is a Citie standinge in the borders and coastes of Illyria) and the Ragusines sending to the Emperour for ayde and rescue, Basilus furnished out a hundzeth tall Shippes of Warre for their reliefe and sauetie. Whereof the Saracenes hauing intelligence,

Z

re led



## The second Booke

Italians dis-  
comfited the  
Saracenes.

reysed their Siege and toke their iourney into Italy, and  
takng the Citie of Barry, most lamentably afflicted and  
in a maner vniuersallie destroyed with fier murther and  
raptne the Calabrians, Apuliana Lucanes and Salentines.  
And being now in minde to deuide Rome and the Em-  
pire of all Italy, share and share lyke among themselues,  
beholde Pope Iohn, greatly moued with pitie and com-  
passion to see his Countrey in such extreeme perill, im-  
ployed ayde and besought Alberick (whose power was  
greate in all Hetruria) to assist and ioyne side with hym,  
for the repulse of this dangerous inuasion. Whiche  
Alberick with a mighty armie that he had leuied in his  
owne Countrey and partly also mustered and taken vp  
in and about Rome, encountred them, after they had set  
foote within the Romane Territoire: and at the firste not  
far from the Citie, in Battaille them vanquished: but af-  
terwards at the river of Leyre about the Citie Minturne  
he so notably discomfited them, that they were now resol-  
ued, and fully purposed altogether to depart quight out of  
Italy. Wherfoze burning all alonge the Sea coaste as  
they went, they departed into Apulia, and buyldinge a  
Castle vpon Mount Gargan. and vnder the rydge of the  
same Mount a Towne strongly fenced and fortifyed for  
the warres, they continued there for many yeres, soze  
infesting and spoyling Italye. Then they toke Beneuent  
and it ransacked and after fiered. Whiche terrible exam-  
ple so amazed and astounded the other cities adioining, that  
without resistance, they receined the Garrisons of that  
nacion within their walles. But ayde beinge sent by the  
Pope, the barbarous Pawmettes doyng all rather with  
pyllage and robbrie, then with any iust war, departed  
without any battaille out of the Romane limits and domi-  
nions. And an other sate of the same nacion comminge  
out of Affrica, after long and cruell Siege toke the citie  
of Geane, and at their first entree slew all the defendants,  
but

## Of the Saracen Historie. 80

but the Maydenes, Damocelles, Patrones and younge  
 boyes they shipped and caried away with them into Afri-  
 ca. But Dandulus Venetus writeth, y<sup>e</sup> al of the Male se-  
 retourned afterwarde home againe into their Countrey,  
 but how and by what meanes that came to passe, is by  
 none declared nor written. Geane was wonne and taken  
 in the yere after the incarnation 935. And the Saracenes  
 being first dispossessed of the Castle of Mount Gargan by Geane taken  
 the Dalmatians, and afterwards in many ouerthrowes  
 weakened and vanquished by the Pannonians, were last-  
 ly by Ocho Emperour of Germanes in the yere of our  
 Lord 969. quight expelled and driuen out of Italy. The  
 Greekes, doe here make their auant, that Italy was de-  
 liuered and rid out of the seruitude and dreadfull oppres-  
 sion of y<sup>e</sup> Saracens thzough the aide and helpe of their Con-  
 stantinopolytane Emperoure, in that the French succou-  
 red and relieved them, for the good wyl and friendshippe  
 that they bare to their Emperoure. For they say, that the  
 Italyans bearinge Rhagusium to bee rescued and deli-  
 uered from the Siege by the Greekish Party, submitted  
 themselves vnder the obeisance of the Emperre, and re-  
 quested ayd also for themselves. Whereupon, Basilus by  
 his Letters directed & addressed vnto y<sup>e</sup> French King, treat-  
 ed with him to aide them, and by him was the Sultane  
 taken and brought to Capua: who afterwarde by the fa-  
 uorable meanes of the Commons of Capua (with whom  
 he had conspired against the) King was set at liberty, and  
 the King being thence expelled, he inferred warre vpon  
 the Capuans, but by the ayde of the Greekes which came  
 against him, he packed and went away. This French  
 King of whom they surmise this talke and Historie, I  
 thinke shoulde be Carolus Crassus the fift Emperoure of  
 Germanes, but for the trueth thereof, I referre you to  
 my Authours the Greekes, whom I wyl, shall shifte for  
 themselves touching the credit of the p<sup>r</sup>emisses.



## The second Booke

Which although it were so, yet were they not altogether banished and driven out of Italic at that time, but a long time after, during the raigne and Emperre of Otho. For the Saracens kept and possessed their Fortresse and Castle in Mount Gargan a long while.

And in the Orient, Esman the Caliph with a great Flaue gave the attempte to haue surprized the Citie of Euripe, but he missed his purpose, for in y<sup>e</sup> same oppugnation he receiued his deathes wounde. An other Flaue of Cretensian Saracens hovering & coasting along the Sea Egæum and the Isles therunto adioyning, spoiled and destroyed the same, & after they had there played their reue, they chanced to meeete with the Romane flecte, by wh<sup>o</sup> many of their faire Shippes were burnt to Ashes, many broken and moe drowned. Which daunger and misfortune so tickled and fretted those that escaped, that in great rage and p<sup>er</sup>uersion they bered Peloponnesus and the Isles neere aboutes most cruelly. But the Armyall of the Byzantine Flaue, arriuing at the Port of Cenchrea, and learning that his enemyes Shippes vsed oftentimes to harbo<sup>ur</sup>ough about Methon, Pylos and Patras, dispatched out with all expedition possible his Gallayes by the Streites of Corynthe, which sodainly set vpon them: who being at vnawares taken fardie, were so dismayde and astonned, that they were at their wittes end, not able in that extremitie to deuise for anye remedie: so that of their Shippes, part he burned, parte he sonke together with the men and slew their Captaine whose name was Photius. And. l<sup>o</sup>. great Shippes comming out of Africa, of purpose to waste and spoyle the Romane Provinces, were come as farre as Cephalen and Zacynth: against whom was sent Narsam the Armyall of the Constantinopolitane Flaue, but by reason that his Rowers & watermen fled away from him and left his Gallays in manner destitute, he durst not adventure to coape with his enemies

## Of the Saracen Historie. 81

enemies. Notwithstanding after that by an extreme kind of punishment he had threatened and terrified certaine Partners of the Saracenes whom he had taken prisoners, and commaunded in mariners wæde to bee pitched on high and set vpon Stakes: they for feare, consented to do their vttermoſt deuoyze againſt his enemies, their Countrey men and friendes, and ſetting vpon them by night ſlew of them many, tooke many Priſoners and the reſidue diſcomfited. After this, they ſayled into Sicile and waſted ſuch Cities as were vnder the Saracens. During this while, the Meſembriack Saracens with a great ſcæte landed in Phænicia and Syria and dyd much harme therein.

Afterward, while Leo (the Succellour of Baſilius Macedo in the Empire) was occupied and buſied about building and erecting Churches and houſes of Prayer, they inuaded Lemnos and ſlew therein many Chriſtians. The for a while they were quiet, till the Empire of Romanus Puer. Who ſent out with a competent Crew, Nicephorus Phocas, againſt the Saracens in Crete: who after he had vanquiſhed in ſeven Battailles, in ſeven monethes ſpace afterward, he ſubdued & regained all the Townes which they had gotten befoze into their poſſeſſion, & razed Candace their chief & Metropolitane Citie. And bys brother Leo was ſent w another power into Syria againſt Camada Lord of Chalep, a Saracene Potentate, whom in battaille he overcame & ſlew a great part of his hoſt, taking y reſidue Priſoners. In which hard conflict y Captaine himſelfe was ſo nere pynched, that with great difficultie he eſcaped hauing but very fewe in his companie. After which glorious and renowned victoꝝ, Leo triumphantly retourned home into the Citie. But Camada muſtering and reſſing a new power, Nicephorus at his retourne out of Creta was againe commaunded into Syria. wher ſigning battail w his enemies he had ouer the



## 18 The second Booke

a most noble victorie. He wasted and subuerted Berrra  
 al sauing the Castle, where he found great store of riches  
 and treasure, and taking innumerable of them prisoners  
 deliuered many Christians out of thraldome. Afterward  
 this Nicephorus Phocas being aduanced to the Empire,  
 Duke Manuel, the Bastard sonne of Leo, was sent with  
 a mighty Raie against the Saracens into Sicile, where  
 through negligence & want of skill he with all his host  
 was slaine. And at the very same time, Iohn Zimisca (af-  
 terward Emperour) being sent into Cilicia, had the vp-  
 perhand of the Saracens at the Citie of Adana. The Nic-  
 ephorus himself in person, with a great power entred into  
 Cilicia and tooke Anabarza, Rosa and Adana three pro-  
 per Cities of that Province, with many other stronge  
 holdes and Castles: which done, he returned into Cappa-  
 docia and there wintered. In the beginning of the next  
 Spring he went thither againe, and sent his brother Leo  
 with a part of his army to Tharsus, & himselfe laid siege  
 to Mopsihestia, through the middle wherof, there ranne  
 a riuer named Sarus. While the Emperour layde harde  
 siege and soze distressed the one side thereof, the Saracens  
 seeing no remedie set fire in that part, and departed vnto  
 the other part, which being also conquered and wonne he  
 slew of them euery man. When the Tharsians hearde  
 thereof, they submitted themselves to the Emperours  
 grace. And within three daies after, a Raie was sent out  
 of Egypt to aide the Tharsians, which could not attaine  
 to land, and in their returne homeward, what with force  
 of weather and blustering windes, and what with incur-  
 sions of the Romane Gallayes, they were for the most  
 parte all lost and cast away. When the Emperour was  
 returned home to Constantinople, he caused the brasen  
 gates which he had brought from the winning of Tharsus  
 & Mopsihestia, of excellent workmanship & curious art,  
 to be set on the East & West side of the Castle w<sup>th</sup> other  
 new

## Of the Saracen Historie. 82

new ornaments & garnishments of his owne cost added  
thereto. When he invaded Syria and having partly beaten  
downe and partly wasted the Cities about Libanus & the  
Sea coast, he came befoze Antioch, which Citie standeth  
vpon the riuer Orontes. But the Antiochians standing  
at resistance, and also victual in his Camp waxing very  
scant beside such continuall raine, that the ground was all  
ouerflowen & covered with water, he was faine to builde  
a Bastyle on the Mount Taurus, which is at this day is  
called Maurus, leaning there behind him to infest & skir-  
mish with y<sup>e</sup> Antiochians, Michael Burze whom he had  
aduañced to be one of his chief Nobilitie, & inuested with  
the tytle of the Capitaine of Mount Taurus. And appoin-  
ted one of his Eunuches named Peter, a valiant, constant  
& skilful warriour, master of his Tentes and Pavilions  
to see order taken & p<sup>r</sup>ouided for the wintering of his host  
in Cilicia, after which order so takē, he returned to Con-  
stantinople. Burzes with many venturous Rodes & ex-  
cursions laid soze to the charge of the Antiochian Sara-  
cens, and them greatly molested, studying by all meanes  
to wyne honour and glozie by deedes of Armes and to  
take the Citie. Vpon a time he p<sup>r</sup>iuily measured out  
the altitude and height of the Tower of the same, and  
p<sup>r</sup>eparing scaling Ladders equall in height therewith,  
in a very darke and snowye Winter nyght, he came se-  
cretely and without making any noyse vnder the walles  
of the Citie: where setting vp his Ladders, with CCC.  
men that he had brought thither with him for the same  
purpose, he mounted vp, and kyled the watchmen and  
keepers of the Tower and as many as hee could meete  
withall: and straightwayes dispatched a Currou to  
the Maister of the Tentes and Pavilions to aduer-  
tise him, how the case stood and what he purposed to do,  
willing him speedily to come with more power to ayde  
him and be partaker of that glorious & noble enterpryse.

The

Antiochet  
ben.



## The second Booke

The Antiochians knowing their chiefe Towre to be taken, ranne couragiouslye to repell and dispossesse the Romanes out of the same.

Now the Master of the Tentres had in charge from the Emperour, that he should not in any wise invade Antioch, because the common brute went, that the captiuitie of that Citie did portende within awhile after, the Emperours confusion, whiche bred in him such doubt, full cares, that he knew not what to doo in that case, nor which way to take. Neuerthelesse loath, that so manye valiaunt men should through his default perishe, & thinking it no point of humanytie to see them thus fall into the lapse for want of a small ayde, marched with all his power and invaded Antioche: at whose comming the Saracenes were so dismayde that their hartes fainted and their stomackes immediatly quayled. Burzes & his company which befoze dyspayred of any help or remedye, looking for nothing but present death, toke new hart agrace and were reuiued, and bursting open the Gates with his battayle Axe, made free passage and ingresse for the master of the Tentres and his traine to enter.

Thus was Antioche one of the noblest Cities in the world, brought into the power of the Romanes, whiche shortly after, in the time of the Emperoure Iohn Zimisca, the Saracenes with all their ioynt powers and forces both of the Orient and occident attempted to recouer. And so vnder the conduct of the Caliph of Cairoan in Affrica, (because the power of the Caliph of Syria was now soze weakened and brought to a lowe ebbe) they planted their Siege about it. Whose inuasions and malyce the Citizens and Inhabitauntes manfullye and constantlye withstode, tyll the Emperour might hereof be certyfyed. Who hauing intelligence of this generall conspiracie of the Gentiles, commaunded his Pryncesse of Mesopotamia to ayde his besieged Friends and Subiectes. Who according

## Of the Saracen Historie. 83

according to his charge and commission in a pitched battaile (wherein the Saracenes were in number farre more then the Romanes) them disparcled, chased and discomfited.

Now because I see the empire of the Saracens to dzawne apace toward an ende and small ruyne, we must befoze we procede any further, briezely and compendiously wyse of the remnauntes and reliques of them that yet lurked in Africa and Spayne: and firste wee wyll speak of Spayne, then afterward of Africa.

In Spayne therfore Ramire Kinge of Lyon in the yere of our Saviour Chyist 901. making war vpon the Saracenes, destroyed a Towne of theirs named Madrite and put them to flight nere vnto Osma and made Beniam King of Saragoza Tributary vnto hym. Whom (afterward rebelliously ioyninge in league with Abduramen King of Corduba and turninge to his olde domyt agayne) Ramire ellesones vanquished and toke Prisoner in battaile nere to a Towne called Symancas, wherein there were slayne of the Saracenes thyrtye thousande, and many other annoyances and harmes did hee vnto them. Afterward lying at the Siege of Talauera, he overcame the Toletane Saracenes whiche came to reple the Siege and to rescue the Citie, of whom vii. M. were taken and xii. M. slayne. After this Sancius kinge of Lyon beinge depriued and dzyen out of his kingdome by his owne people came to Abduramen King of Corduba to be cured of a certayne disease by the help of his Physicians, whom for conning and knowledg he had heard to be the expertest and skilfullest that were then in al the world. Whom the king of Corduba did not onely cause to be healed, but also with his power and help (mangre all his foes) restored him to his kinne and dignitie. But after that hee was dead, the Saracenes wanted Symancas, Duengas Sepulueda and Gormas, Townes belonging to the kingdome of Lyon and raised Zamorra. And within a while

Aa

after



## The second Booke

after, destroyed and everted Portugall the head of all Lusitanie and Compostella. After the death of Abduramen, Allagib his Successoure in that kingdome, naming himself Almanzor (which is as much to say) as the Protector of king Mansor his Lozde and maister, because he hoped thereby rather to allure the peoples goodwills, and under that colour to insinuate himselfe into their fauours (for at that time Mansor reigned at Marrocco. Which Citie (as we haue afoze shewed) was the Seate royall of all the Saracenes Empire Occidentall, vnder whose iurisdiction and rule all the inferiour kinges of the Saracenicall nation in Spayne lyued) gathered a mighty power and invaded the Territozies of the Castellonians, Lyon and Biskaye.

The Citie of Lyon he almost utterly defaced, the Towers and Bulwarke thereof, which were all of Marble, he rased and beat downe to the ground, leauinge onely one, vntouched and vblemished, to the intent that the memozye of the beautye and gorgeousnes of that Citie might appeare and remayne to posteritie. He toke Asturia and Coiaca which is now called Valenceja (not that Valentia which standeth vpon the midland Sea, but another in the kingdome of Leon by the Pyrenes) and Sangnium with many other Townes. And in the Presint of the Castellonians, he destroyed Osma, Alcobetla, Berlanga and Atienza; and of the Gallician Townes, he toke S. James and commanded the Belles to be carryed away thence to Corduba, where he vsed them in steede of Lampes in his prophane Temples, & in this sorte he continued outraging and keeping sharpe warres for the space of twelue yeares. Tyll at length Bermudes King of Lyon with the powers of the Castellonians, the Byskayes and his owne had vnto hym battayle in a place called Calataicor. This battayle was fierrely foughten on both sides for the space of a whole daye, where were

aine

## Of the Saracen Historie. 84

slayne of the Saracenes many thousandes, and in the end Almanfor with all his retinew and adherents fled and shortly after died for sorrow of his overthrow. The Spaniards ruffling and spoiling their camp, found therein great booties & prizes which they at their flight had left behind them. Abdimelech greatly moved w<sup>th</sup> his fathers misfortune, and purposing to recover and haue amends for the same, was also vanquished. But afterward in the reigne of Alphonsus the Son of Bermudes, the Saracenes agayne invading the borders & frontiers of the Castellonians, destroyed Auila & toke Ormetum with any other townes. And Alphonsus redoubled the cite of Lyon. After all this, there sprang by ciuile warres among the Spanish Saracenicall Kinges and Princes, whereby the power of the Christians in that prouince dayly increased, insomuch that Mahomet Enasir Bishop of Marrocco being vanquished in Gotalonia nere to Valentia and by the Saracenes slaine with him in the yere of our redemption 1150. the Christians within xxx. yeres folowing, recovered Valentia, Denia, Alicante, Muria, new Carthage, Corduba, Syuile, Iuen and Vbeda, and the Saracenes had no more in their possession but onely the Kingdome of Granada, from whence at length they were utterly expelled and driven out by Ferdinando the last king of the Tarraconians, (or Aragon) Grandfather by the Mothers side to Charles the first late Emperour.

In Africa a newe Prophet haunting himself to be one of the right ligne & race of Mahomet whose name was Elmahelis, a man both borne & brought vp in the Mountains, about the yere of our Lord 1000 bred a newe boyle and set abroch certayne quarynte fashions about Religion. He expelled out of their Kingdomes, the high Bishop of Cairoan (which Citie befoze we shewed was not farre off from Carthage, & was the head Citie in the mayne land of Africa) & also Abraem the king of Marocco: which done, he

A ii

subdued

Granada  
w<sup>th</sup> came from  
the Saracenes  
& Infidels  
by King Fer  
dinando  
Grandfather  
to Charles  
the first Anno  
D. 1492.



## The second Booke

subdued both the Mauritanies, all Africa, all Numidia, and Lybia unto the borders of the Negroes and Egypt, constituting his royall and Pontificall Seate at Marocco. The King of Marocco, fleeing from Habdulmumen who pursued after him with part of Elmahelis Army, arrived and came to Oranum, a Citie situate vpon the inland Sea in Mauritania Casariensis. But the Citizens not receiuing him, the poore wretched King being costlesse and without all hope of better fortune, with his wife, who for want of better stoe roade behind him (both on one horse) went vp into the toppe of a very high mountaine lying into the Sea and there dashing the spurres into the horse sides, cast himself, his wife and horse down headlong from a Craggie rocke, and so all three dyed together at one instant, and were found in the Shore all bruised and dismembred. And Habdulmumen returning back to Marocco, found Elmahelis dead, and was created King and Bysshop in his place. Whose posteritie and Successours, that is to wit Iosippus his Sonne, Mansor his Nephew and Machomet Enasir, of whom we made mention before, his Nephews sonne, enioyed & possessed that Kingdome. But when the tenne Sonnes after the death of Mahomet their father, contended and bickered among themselves for the Garlande, the house of the Marinies popped into the Kingdome of Fess, and the Habduludean familie invaded the Kingdome of Telenfine, and displacing there the Tunctane Magistrate, created and made there a King. And all the other Kings & Princes of Africa renounced their homage and revolted from the Kings of Marocco: wherby the power of the Saracens decreased in Africa aswell as in other places and the name of their Emperre utterly extinct.

A miserable  
king depos-  
sed frō his  
kingdome,  
by despera-  
tion brake  
his owne  
necke and  
his wydes,

The

*Wherein is expressed and plainly de-*

clared the euersion of the Saracenicall Empire and the originall beginning, continuance & increase of the Turkishe domination, till the first yeere of the raigne of Ottomanne, from whom, Iouius and diuerse others both Greeke and Latine Turcographers begin their Histories: also the first originall of the Tartarians, Mamalukes, Assassines, and Sophians: Containing a true and perfect discourse of Turkishe Affaires for three hundreth yeeres space before Ottomanne, for pleasure and varietie very delectable.



At now must I procede in a newe kind of order, and discourse by matters most worthy to be remembred: for we haue already so orderly & successively treated of Saracenicall affaires, that now we be come by order of Historie, to speake of those times, wherein (the ancient and true Saracene Empire decaying and as it were the lawfull stocke and offspring of Mahomet excluded and dispossessed) Bastards and bystartes of an other ligne stepped in and vsurped the principallitie, A people (I saye) shuffling in for the best game, and bearing themselves, not (as the other) vnder a painted shewe and coulozable glose of gate Religion and holines, but planted themselves in a more firme and harde Emprye, mainteining and amplifying the same by force of Armes and violence. Whose State differeth as much from the former Empire, as the hardnesse of Iron from the softnesse of Leade. For albeit the hyrgenes of the Sa-

Saracenes were as the right childre of Mahomet and Turkes in comparison but Bastards.



## The thirde Booke

racenicall dominion were great and mighty, (insomuch that vnder the patched cloake and pzetēce of false doctrine and diabolicall Religion, it ouerflowed and almost drowned the whole woꝛld) yet the violent rage therof was by the valiaunt encountrie of couragious Souldiours and Partiall knightes from time to time either bybled and repressed, or at least, brought vnder such awe, that many times they were faine to keepe bill vnder wing, and to be pent within narrower rōme then they were before. Yea many times, such flames of ciuil discorde among theselues burst out, that y same being dispersed into sundry partes, & farre disseuered from the fire where it was first forged about Babilon and Arabie, wared in pꝛocesse of time so kepecold & frostbittē, y they were not able to wagge & bestirre themselves as they did before.

And so beeyng distract and pulled from the whole Masse, and consequently made weaker, were either cleane vanted and buried in the pit of Obluion, or else with another Fire in some other place newly kindled, were consumed and quite burnt euen with their owne flame: which thing hapned vnto this also; enamed Forge, till such time that new and stronger Smithes tooke y office in hand, & forged a harder mettall vpon the Anvil, to harden and strengthe y softnes of this Leade, & thꝛoughly to beare out y dignitie of y Shop. For although (as it euidently appeareth by y which hath bene already declared in the two first Bookes) our Ancestors & Predecessors haue continually warred w the Saracens welnigh 400 yeres space, with diuers fortune and doubtfull victoꝛye, in so much that although their power euen from their firste beginning were very mightie and great, and Chꝛistendome all that tyme neuer quiet, but continually floted in ciuil discorde, beside the often incursions of Barbarous Nations, the Emperours of Constantinople shewing themselves (that while) no better then Pꝛycookes & effeminate per-  
that

## Of the Saracen Historie. 86

sons: yet dyd they oftentimes plague them with manye great ouerthrowes, and recouered out of theyr possessions sometyme Syria, sometyme Armenia, nowe a part of Persia and nowe some other prouinces: but yet alwayes and styll they kept in their possession all Europa, sauyng a peece of Spayne onely, Asia the lesse, Media, and the Kingdomes of Parthia Bithynia and Cappadocia with many other Realmes and Kingdomes. But the power of the Turkes encroching and wyning vpon vs now almost for the space of. 600. yeres, they neuer could represse, neyther hinder the course and proceeding of their Emprye, neither yet expel and dzyne them out of such places as they had once gotten. Of such force is warlike discipline and so much differeth the fiercenes of the North people from the tendernes and effeminacie of the Southen. How, wherof and by what occasiō, they bzake out, we shall now declare.

Basilus Porphyrogenitus being Emperour of Constantinople about the yere of our Lord 1000. many Tyrannies wrestled for y<sup>e</sup> Carlad and diuided among them, the Empire of Saracens, as befoze in the last Booke was shewed, wherof foure alwayes contending for y<sup>e</sup> Supremacie, & keeping deadly warres one w<sup>th</sup> another for y<sup>e</sup> tryal of their titles, there began great diuision & hartburning betwene Mahomet Prince of Persians, Corasmiorsians & of diuerse other people on the one part, and the Caliph of Syria whose royall Seate & Metropolitane Seate was at Bagadet. In which wars, Mahomet being put to y<sup>e</sup> woze and by y<sup>e</sup> Babilonian (thzough helpe and ayde of Sclerus and y<sup>e</sup> Roman captines) banquished, sent to y<sup>e</sup> Turks for aide, whose helpe and furtheraunce at a pinche (as afoze hath beene specified, the Saracenes for certayne yeres passed were accustomed in theyr warres too vse and ioygne vnto them, and the rather because they professed and embraced euen at the firste eruptions,

Antioche taken.



## The thirde Booke

and inuasions that they made into the saracenes Territories, the same Religion, Rites and Ceremonies that they themselves did. These inhabited all the region that is within Mount Caucasus and beyond it also northward, and by this name doth Plinie tearme them. As for the opinion of them that suppose they were Tartarians, the Historie it selfe manifestlie disprooueth it as false and and vnlikely: they were also called by the name of Hunnes Teutazites or Tulsagetes. Neither am I ignorant, how that these names are so distincte by Plinie, that he reckoneth the Tulsagetes, Turkes, Mosches and Vdines (whom we take to be the same that the Hunnes be) as diuers people: the same also be so confused & mingled together by the Greke Byzantine Historiographers, that in their Bookes, they call them by all these names, without any difference, or distinction. Which peradventure might be, because of the neerenes and propinquitie of the Countreys.

Now, although in my iudgement the Bizantine Historiographers are altogether in their writings to be credited, neither in the meane season would I derogate Plinie his authoritie being a most grane and approued writer: yet to reconcile both their places and Textes, seeming in this poynt to farre and disagree, I thinke thus: That the People of Scythia inhabitinge the region betwene the great Mount Taurus and the North Ocean, from the river Tanais to the uttermost partes of the Orient (wich long tract containeth the half part of Asia) were in the olde time (as they also at this day are) distributed and diuided into many Tribes: among the which, were these Hunnes or Vdines, Mosches, Turkes and Tulsagetes which inhabited the Countreys adioyning to Marotis and Taurus. And as they (sometime the one and sometime the other) encreased or excelled in partiall seates and greatnesse of power, and had the rule and domination

ouer

*Greek Hist.  
unformed people  
or names*

## Of the Saracen Historie. 87

ouer the other partie : so the other people were surnamed and called by the name of that nacion or people whiche boze most sway and chiefly ruled the rest in those quarters. By reason wherof it came to passe, that Historiographers tearme all these People, sometime by the name of Hunnes, sometime Mosches and sometime Turkes. But the state of the Hunnes, which inhabited the Countrey, confininge vpon the Scythian Ocean (as Plinie and diuers other writers testifie) flourished longe befoze the power of Turkes carped any countenance.

Now, when they were departed out of their native soile to innade Europa, the Turkes Tussagetes and Mosches beganne to enlarge their Boundes and to amplyfie their Seignories.

The Mosches dwelling hard by the Mount Moschus, wyning the Regions and Countreies aboute Tanais, planted themselues there, and of them was that countrey called Moscouia. Now for proue that the Mosches bee Turkes, Cedrenus, Zonaras & other Greke Authours doe affirme, naming the in many places Hunnes. And therefore it should seeme neuer a whitte absurde nor greatlye amisse, to say they are all descended of the Hunnes, whose first Founder and beginner was one Hunnis the Sonne of Tuiscon as witnesseth Berofus Chaldeus. And afterwarde being deuided into sundrye colonies, in processe of time had diuers names, of their Guides and Capitaynes. Provided alwayes, that for a difference sake from other Scythians, they euer retayned the Surname of him that was theyr first founder. And of them such as styll remayned in that Countrey whiche their Ancestours had got, retayninge and vsinge these Artes of their Fathers and Progenitours, that is to witt, Magick and the compaignie of Deuilles, were without anye other surname called Hunnes. For we doe read, that the Hunnes were so addicted to Magicall Artes, that many were per-

Wb

swaded

*Greek Authority  
of no value*



## The thirde Booke

finde that they were begotten and dyd come of the  
wyld Faunes.

But the Turkes and Tulsagetes descendynge of  
their race and inhabityng the Northside of Mount Cau-  
casus as befoze wee haue shewed, differed muche  
from them as well in lyfe, as manners and Lawes:  
beinge (notwithstandynge) so lyke amonge them-  
selues and so lynked together in League one with an  
other, that they were taken and accompted for one  
People, and peraduenture they were all one, and were  
so called and named (as prophane Persones) by the Ar-  
menians their Neighbour, from whome they recei-  
ued their Rites, and whiche were called Sagax (as  
much to saye) as holie. For this worde Teuta-  
zites (as in the Seconde Booke was shewed) signify-  
eth in their language Gentiles or a prophane Peo-  
ple. For these names are of many Writers so min-  
gled and taken together, that the one seemeth to be  
theyr name, the other their Surname.

Procopius saith, these People were nothing nere  
to the other Hunnes, neyther had any thinge to doo  
with them: but that they bordered vppon the North  
partes of Persia, that is to witte Armenia. For  
Armenia was euer lyghtly subiect to the Crowne of  
Persia. Neyther were they Wanderers from place  
to place, (as hauynge no habitation saynge there,  
where their Cattayle stayed and grazed, as the other  
Hunnes or Scythians were): but had in their Posses-  
sion and inhabtyed the beste Plottes and moste fertile  
Regyon that was amonge the Donnes and Moun-  
taynes rounde aboute, and amonge the Hunnes, they  
onely were white of complexion and colour, and not so  
duglye nor so sterne visaged, neyther lynyng so sauagelye  
and beastlye as the others dyd: but lyke true Subiectes  
liued orderly in due obedience and humble subiection vnder

*These are of  
Ephthalites  
or White Hunnes  
as Procopius  
calls them.  
in C. 1. c. 2. of  
Persian Wars*

## Of the Saracen Historie. 88

der one Prince, whome they accepted as their head and King: having also a well ordered Common wealth, with due execution and imbraynge of Justice and other politicall Lawes, both at home amonge themselves, and abroade with other sovraine Nations bozderynge vppon them, as the Greeques, Romanes and dyuers other ciuile and well gouerned Nations dyd also.

The chiefe Citie of all their Kingdome was called Gorga. The noblest sorte and wealthiest persones amonge them, had continuallye seiourninge at their Houses as Gestes, twenty or moe of their famylier Fréendes, accordinglye as their Substaunce and Rycheesse extended; with whom, both wealth, authoritie and power was in common: as the same Procopius sheweth, and as their institution and manner of lyuinge to this day witnesseth.

Some there be, whiche referre the firste originall of the Turkes, to those tenne Tribes of Israell: whiche (as wee reade in Iosephus) were translated into Media. For proufe and Testimonie whereof, they alledge the likenesse and similitude of their maners and conuersation.

Some referre their pedigree to Gog and Magog, of whome there is mention made in the holie Scriptures: from whom, we rather be of opynion that the Tartarians yea and peradventure also the Gothes be lineallye descended. And some there bee whiche doo deriue the offspringe and Progenie of them: from the auncient Troians. Whose seuerall opinions by waye of Argument, either to confirme and allowe or confute and disproue, is no parte of our purpose and intent in this place, sythince our onely meanyng is not to reason vppon probabilities, but to bringe such certaintelye known



## The thirde Booke

truthes, as are in the histories and Chronologies of ancient writers as well of Greekes and Thracians as of the Turkes themselves and other Nations confining unto them, published and mentioned which is even so as before we have declared.

Muchumet therfore desired ayde of their Prince in his warres against the Caliph of Babilon, through whose helpe and valiaunce (sent unto him vnder the conduct of Tangrolipix Mucalct,) he encountred with Pisafire the Babylonian Caliph, and him with little labour and lesse daunger discomfited, by reason that the Arabians were not hable to abyde the thicke shotte of the Turkische Arrows. Being from this warre retourned home with victorie, he mynded also to vse the ayde of y<sup>e</sup> same Turkes in his warres against the Indians. At which season the Turkes weary of that service, desired leaue of Muchumet, not onely to retourne home, but also that a garrison might be appointed to waite them in safetie ouer the bridge that stood vpon the Riuer Araxes. Which request he tooke in suche disdain and impacience y<sup>e</sup> with frowning looke he charged them from thenceforth not to byge him any moze with that sute. The Turkes had no other way in their retourne homeward, but must needs passe the said Riuer Araxes, which is y<sup>e</sup> limite and Border of the kingdome of Persia: ouer the which there was no other Bridge but onely this, which was on bothe sides merueylous strongly garded and fortified with Blockehouses, Turrettes and Garrisons. The Turkes dreading further daunger priuily shanke away & as closely as they could, departed into the desert of Carbonitis. For considering their number was not aboue thre thousande men, they durst not aduenture to fight and buckle with such a great multitude. Being in those desertes, they made many bagaries into the Saracenes Territories, and wasted theyr Countrey terrible. Whereat Muchumet

## Of the Saracen Historie. 89

muchmet merueilously stomacking and stozming, sent an Armie of 30000. men against them, committing the charge and conducting of the whole Armie vnto tenne Tribunes of y noblest, stoutest and wisest in his traine. They beyng come nere to their enemies, would not aduenture to enter into the desert, for feare they should be distressed for lacke of water and victuall, but encamped themselves euen in the verie entraunce into the same desert.

The Captaine of the Turkes, hauing intelligēce by his Espialles, of the Persians appzoch, called his Souldiours together, and making them priuie to his deuise, purposed sodainly to set vpon them and vnatwares to surpze, both the Saracenes and Persians, while they were yet secure and mistrusted nothing. And speeding apace toward them by great iournayes, within two dayes was come nere vnto them. The thirde night he set vpon them beyng in their Tentes carelesse and quiet, suspecting nothing lesse then any such matter: whom he put to flight euen at the first onset. After this discomfiture of his enemies, hee fell to spoyle and ransacke their Tentes, where finding great stoz of Wagons, Hozles, and Honeys, lyued no longer by Robbery and Theft lyke a Wagabonde or fugitiue (as afoze) but from thence forthe pitched hys Tentes and encamped himselfe abzoade in the open playne. When the repozt of his victorie and good fortune was blowen abzoade, there resozted vnto him from all quarters thereabout, all suche Cutthroates and Villaines as for their vngracious demerites feared punishment, wyth a great route of Slaues and pylfering Roges lyving of the spoyle of others, insomuch that within a whyle hys Armie grewe to the number of 50000. men. Muchmet stozmyng marueilouslye at this ouerthzowe and discomfiture of hys Hoaste, caused the eyes of those tenne whom he had appoynted Capitaines

Tränge of  
Muchmet  
toward his  
owne men.



## The thirde Booke

taines to bee pulled out, and threatened the rest of the Souldiours which fledde out of the Battaille, that so sone as he had vanquished his foes, he woulde cloathe them all, in womans apparell, and leade them as gazing stockes in Triumph befoze him. This done he himselfe in person marcheth against his Enemies. His men, who befoze had bene vanquished of the Turkes, considering the thzeates and shamefull handling that was ment towarde them, reuolted from Muchumet and fledde to Tangrolipix. Who now hauing his Armie encreased with such a warlike Crewe of freshe Souldiours, with all his whole power together, came against Muchumet, by dinte of moztall battaile to trie and finally determine the cause of controuersie betwene them.

Muchumet with hys power of Saracenes, Persians, Arabians and Cabirians well appoynted and armed, to the number of syue hundzeth thousande, and a hundzeth Elephantes wpth Towers on theyr backes, mette his Enemye at a place called Aspacha: where betweene them was fought a cruell and bloudie Battayle and many slayne on bothe partes. In this conflicte, Muchumet, as hee rode vnhedely from ranke to ranke, cheryng his Souldiours and exhorting them to doe valiauntly, by meanes of the foltering and stumbling of hys horse, fell downe and brake his necke. He being once deade, his Armye fell to a Parley and composition wpth the Turkes, and so wpth one consente and wyll of all sides, Tangrolipix was proclaymed King of Persians. Who immediately opened a waye and passage for his people into Persia. Of whom a great multitude went thither, and oppzessing the Persians and Saracenes, perforce possessed all the Countrey of Persia. They also honoured Tangrolipix by the stile or tytle of Sultane, whiche is asmuch to saye as a

What a  
Souldane  
signifieth.

most

## Of the Saracen Historie. 90

most Soueraigne Emperour or Kyng of Kinges. He displaced the Inhabitauntes of the Countrey out of theyr Offices, Roomes and Dignities, and placed his owne Nation and people in the same, and amonge them (empowerishing and utterly oppressing the Countrey bozne persons) divided and parted the whole Region of Persia.

Also Daber, Prince of Egypt, being in League and amitie wyth the Romanes, falsified bys othe and promise whiche befoze hee had condescended vnto, and destroyed the Temple at Hierusalem wherein was the Sepulchre of our Saviour Chryst, and all the other holie places in the same. For Hierusalem at that tyme was vnder bys obedience and dominion. And wythin a whyle after, hee sent a Flaue into the Isles called Cyclades to trie some maistries there: which Flaue was encountred and mette wythall, by the Duke of Samos, who tooke. xii. of them as Pryzes with all the men and Capitaines therein, and the rest to bys hygge laude and gloze disperfed and scattered.

After this, Argyropylus being Emperour of Constantinople, the Arabians wanne all suche Cities as Nicephorus and Iohn Zimisca had taken in Syria and betwixt the Carrysons that were lefte to keepe them. And the Prince of Chalep wyth continuall incursions infested Antioche and dyuerse other Cities and Countreys confyning vppon Syria, that were subiecte to the Romane Emperre. By whom also the Capitayne of Antioche (Constantine being yet a lye) was shamefullye banquished, and hardly escaped wyth the losse of manye of bys men. In whose office and roome the Emperour appoynting another, went himselfe wyth a competent number of well furnished Souldiours to snaffle the pretended outrage and insolent demeanure of the same Prince of Chalep.

The



## The thirde Booke

The Chaleprians hauing vnderstanding of his appoche, sent Ambassadors with giftes and rewarde to meete him on the way and to desire pardon for their former temeritie and vndutifull behauiours towarde him, offering agayne to submit themselves and from thenceforth to become his true Vassalles and liege people. Whiche submission and peace, although manie of his Lordes and Capitaines exhorted him to accepte, yet hee hoping easely to subdue the Saracenes and thereby to purchase vnto himselfe a great name and glozy, would needs march on, and continue his voyage into Syria. And when he had strongly encamped himselfe nere to Chalep, the Arabians beinge bolde and nimble fellows, and naked, with good swift Horses vnder them, lyke Dimyplances, planted themselves in euery corner in Ambushes. So if any of their enemies went out on foraging or to fetch water they sodenly bzake out and either slew or tooke the prisoners. By reason whereof both the Souldiours and their Horses fainted for thirste and were not hable to doe any seruice.

Emperoure  
in great dan  
ger.

Thus they being better acquainted and enured with these incursions and skirmishes tooke heart a grace, accusing the Romanes of Slouth and cowardyse, and shewing themselves in great plumpes, descending sodenly from the Hylles with great shoutes and cryes, so terrified and dismayed the Romane Host, that they tourned their backs & fled. The emperor himself being there in great danger of his lyfe and forsaken of his Petozian Souldiours which for feare shifted for themselves and left hym alone, had falle in the Lapse and bene taken Prisoner, yf one of his company had not set him vpon his Horse and aduised him to save him selfe by flight. The Saracenes supposinge this their fleeing to be done but for a pollicie and for the nonce pursued not the chase, but entred into the Emperours Tentes, where taking a few noble personages

## Of the Saracen Historie. 91

sonages and spoylinge his rich Pavillion wherein was great store of Treasure and princely furniture, departed thence and retyned back lading their Horses with as much as they could cary away.

In their retourne back they overcame the countrey of Mesopotamia. And the Egyptian Fleet wasted the coast of Illyricum, but they could not goe cleare away. For the Greekish Fleet encountered with them and burnt many of them: the rest which escaped by flight, by tempest were drowned in the Sicillian Sea. Also an other Party of a thousand Sayle or there about, being sent out of Africa, spoyled many Islandes and places bordering vpon the sea Coastes. But the Romane gallayes chaunceing vpon them toke certayne, sonke many, and sent 500. of them prisoners to the Emperour. And George Maniaces, patron of all the Cities along the Riuer Euphrates, lying at Samosata, conquered and raised a citie called Edessa, wher he finding an Epistle of our Saviour Iesus Christ written with his owne hande, he sent the same vnto the Emperoure. This Citie afterwarde in the Emperours and raigne of Michael Paphlagon was besieged by the Arabians, and had bene wonne if Constantine Capitaine of Antioch, and Brother to the Emperour had not succoured and relieved the poore Defendantes that were within it.

After that the Prince of Egypt was dead, the Quene his wyfe being a Christian and her son concluded a truce with the Romanes, to endure for xxx. yeres, and caused the Temple and other holie places at Ierusalem to be repaired and newe reedified. About this time two Brothers both Saracenes, iointlie and with equall authoritie raigning in Sycilie, fell at discorde and variaunce betwene themselves, wherevpon the one of them desired ayde and assistance of the Emperoure. Who immediat-



## The thirde Booke

He sent George Maniaces a noble Counsaillour and expert Warriour with a tall companye of Men to ayde hym.

But befoze he could come into Sycile, the two Brothers were reconcyled and made Fréendes and ioyninge bothe their powers together to repulse, Maniaces from landing in the Islandes, sent also for ayde to Carthage. But when both the armies were clasped together in battayle, the victorie fell vnto the Romanes, who gaue vnto the Saracenes a notable ouerthrow and slew of them a great number. Which done, the Generall raised and destroyed xlii Cities: and from thence marching styl forwarde, recovered and restozed againe all Sycile to the Romane Emperre.

A pollicie  
of the Saracens  
to haue  
taken the citie  
Edessa,

But in the Orient, it was a sayze hap, that the Citie of Edessa had not bene surprisid by the Saracenes. For twelue of the chiefe Princes or Nobles of them brought fiftie hundred Camelles to Edessa, every one laden with two Chestes a peece, and in every Chest an armed souldiour, pretending and saying that their comming was, to present the Emperoure with certaine rewardes and gistes. Their intent was, if they might haue bene let in, the next night with their armed souldiours in the Chestes to haue taken the Citie. But their subtile stratageme and crafty conueighance missed of hoped effect by this meanes.

A Begger  
saues the  
Citie.

There was a certayne Begger, an Armenian bozne, whiche could well vnderstande and speake the Arabian language. This poore Armenian begging the charitable almes of the Arabians which lodged abroad without the Citie, chanced to heare one of them in the Chestes asking an other of his fellowes where they were, and immediately departinge from them went into the Citie, and discovered this trecherous traine to the Princesse.

Who

## Of the Saracen Historie. 92

Who by this meanes hauing ynckeling and intelligence thereof, left the Princes of the Arabians banquetynge and making good cheere in the Citie, and with a conuenient number of Citezens issued out of the Gates, and openinge the Chestes, kylled all the armed men in the same. And comming back againe into the Citie, killed also all the Princes and Capitaines of them, sauing onely one, whose two handes he chopped off, and curtayling his nose and eares, sent him away packinge with a Flea in his eare, to carry newes home of their good spede and aduenture.

On the other side, when the Caliph of Cairoan in Aphrica vnderstode of the losse and destruction of his Armies, he went himselte in person with a greater Armye into Sycile. Against whom, Maniaces came with a maine power, commanding the Armye, all of his Prynces diligently to looke to his charge and so narrowly to scoure the Coastes and keepe the Sea, that the vanquished Carthaginians shoulde by no meanes escape. And then both the Armies graped together in a terrible and moste sharpe conflicte, wherein were slaine so many of the Saracenes, that they could by no meanes be numbred. But their Prince escaping out of the Fielde, embarked himselte with all spede possible in a Brigandine and retourned home in safetie.

Now, Tangrolipix Kinge of Persia haupfge set all the affaires of his Kingdome in good stae and order, made Warre vppon Pisafiryc chiefe Governour of Babylon and ouercame him in many battayles and last of al slewe him.

And so the Babylonians being subdued and annered to his Domynions, he sent Cutlume his Nephew with an Armye againste Carbesse Kinge of Arabie.



## The second Booke

Of whom Cudlume being overcome, desired by his Ambassadors of Stephan Regent of Media (which countrey is now called Baas Prachan) to geue him leave with his people to passe throughe the borders of his Countrey and iurisdiction. Which request, Stephan did not onely flatly denie, but also armed himselfe and went against him. Notwithstanding he lost many of his men, and was himselfe taken Prisoner. And so Cudlume retourning home to Tangrolipix, recompted vnto him his successe in the Median warre, and highly extolled the fertilitie and fruitfulness of that region, affirming that the same was verie easie to be wonne. But Tangrolipix being soze offended with him for his late discomfiture, went himselfe against the Arabians. Cudlume soze feare fled away with his company, and taking a Citie of the Chorasmiors named Pasar, revolted from the Sultan. But the Sultane thinking at this matter and letting it slippe for a while, helde on his voyage with his whole Host against the Arabians, by whom he also was put to flight, and so coming home with moze losse then gaine, with the greatest part of his Host besieged Cudlume. But Cudlume relying great trust and assurance in the naturall situation and strength of the place, long time resisted him. In the meane season, Tangrolipix sent Asan his other Nephew surnamed Surdus with .xx. thousand appointed Souldiours into Media. Who rushing with his inuasive power into the Province, and ioyning Battaille with the Romanes was with his whole Host (excepting a very few) slaine. The Sultan vnderstanding therof, and minding to winne his honour againe for so notable a losse and ouerthrowe, sent one Alim Abramie with a hundred thousand fighting men into the same Province againe. The Regent of the Countrey sent to the Emperour for aide, & thought it best for him not to fight with the Turkes till Liparites, Princes of a part of Iberia were come with his Iberians to

Turkes goe  
to wake.

Vaas  
Khan

## Of the Saracen Historie. 93

to ayde him. The Romanes kept theselues within theyr  
 fortes & strong Holdes, wherfoze Alim, seeing that they  
 minded not to trie matter with him by force of battaile,  
 assaunted a small vnwalled village called Arzen, where  
 innumerable wealthy Merchantes dwelled, supposing  
 the same would haue bene got and surrendred vnto hym  
 at the first bzunt, & in a maner without resistance. But it  
 happened not altogether according to his expectatio. For  
 the Colonesmen stopped his wayes and passages, with  
 great Timber logges & theyr dartes and other weapons  
 at them from the toppes of their houses, and slew many  
 of them. Alim after that he had giuen the assaunte vnto it  
 by y space of fire continual dayes, & saw the fronte hearts  
 of the Citizens in defending, and y he could not conueni-  
 ently lye any longer at the Siege therof, theyr wilde fire  
 into the houses, which flamed, and in every place so raged  
 that the Inhabitants to save their liues, fled. And by this  
 meane the Turkes manne the village. Wherein they  
 found much Gold and store of rycheffe which the fire had  
 not consumed. From thence they discomped & sped them  
 toward the Romane Armye, vnto whose ayde Liparites  
 was now come with the power of Iberia.

Both the Battayles ioyning together a litle be-  
 fore nyght, the Turkes were discomfited and put to  
 flight, whom the Romanes chased and pursued till farre  
 in the nyght. Albeit in this conflicte Liparites (who  
 ledde the one wing of the Battayle) was taken Prison-  
 ner and brought to the Sultan, For whose ransome and  
 redelinerie the Emperour sent a great masse of money  
 and other rewarde to the Sultan, desiring him also  
 that a peace and league might be concluded betwene  
 them.

But the Sulcan sending backe all the money and  
 Ristes, frankly deliuered Liparites without any po-  
 nie: aduising him after that tyme, netier to beate ar-



## The thirde Booke

moure against the Turkes. And beside this, hee sent an  
 Ambassadour vnto the Emperour, one of the worthiest  
 in degree in all his Courte called Scriphes: which Digi-  
 nitie is so high among them, that after the death of the  
 Caliph, the Scriphes succeedeth in his roome. For the  
 Turkes euen at the firste, emulating the doctrine of  
 Mahomet, reuerenced and had in great honour and esti-  
 mation their Caliphas as Priestes and Bishoppes of  
 their Lawe: notwithstanding they debarred them from  
 wearing the Imperiall Crowne or entermedling with  
 any iudiciall power in prophane matters within their  
 Emprye. This stately Ambassadour, comming to Con-  
 stantinople was brought before the Emperour, before  
 whom he proudly shewed his Commission, which was,  
 to demaunde a Tribute to be payde by the Emperour  
 to the Sultane. But he was faine to retourne without  
 spending his errand. Wherefore the Sultane takyng  
 Depper in the Pole, made Warre and went himselfe  
 agaynst the Romanes. And when hee was come as  
 farre as Comium a Citie of Iberia, because the Inha-  
 bitantes of the Countrey had included themselves and  
 theyr goodes with all thinges necessarie in Holdes and  
 Castles (whereof the number at that tyme in Iberia  
 was great) and hearing that the Romanes mustered  
 and assembled a great power about Czfarea, to come a-  
 gainst him, hee retized without doying any notable ex-  
 ploits, worthy of remembraunce backe agayne into  
 Media, where lykewyle sending all places walles and  
 Bulwarked, bys full determination was to wynde his  
 purpose by Siege.

And first of all hee attempted the wyning of Man-  
 zichierte, a Citie standyng in the playne champion  
 Countrey, banquered and strengthened with three  
 stronge Wallles, hauing within it many Fountaynes  
 and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 94

and lyuely Springes of Water, whiche Citie by the foresight and provision of the Townesmen was verie well victualled. And encampynge hymselfe nere to the Wallles, gave an assaulte vnto the same. xxx. continuall dayes without any ceasing, with all kinde of Engynes and Warlike Instrumentes. But in the end, perceyving hys attempte to bee in vayne, and hauyng no hope of better successe, raysed hys Siege and departed wth the losse of many of his people. Then he pursued his Nephewe Abramie, who was no litle confederate and tooke parte wth his Cousen Cutlume, and him in Battayle nere to the Citie of Pafaris overcame and slew.

But Cutlume wth sixe thousande in his companye, (among whom was Melech the Sonne of Abramie, saued himselfe by flighte, and by hys Ambassadors sued to the Emperour Constantine Ducas to bee receiued into his fauour and protection, and that a League myght bee confyrmed betweene them: staying for an answer in Persarmenia at the Citie Charle. But because the Sultane folowynge at hys heeles, was commynge wth a power into Iberia, Cutlume fledde into Arabia Felix. The Sultane spoyled and wasted all as hee went in Iberia: but hearyng that Michael was commynge wth an Armie agaynst hym, and thinking it muche dishonorable for him to deale wth the Emperours Seruaunt, rettyed agayne into his owne Territozies, leauynge behinde hym, one of his Captaynes named Samuch, a man of base parentage and lowe birth, but in Martiall affaires a ryght excellent Capitayne. This Samuch remainyng still hebynde, with 3000. men, coasted and strayed about the playne Countrey of the greater Armenia, and wth many sodayne incursions infested the frontiers of the Romane Emperys.

After



## The thirde Booke

After this Diogenes being Romane Emperour the Sul-  
tan againe with a great power entred within þe pzeinct  
and limytes of the Romane dominions: But the Em-  
perour comming with an Army against hym, hee rety-  
red backe: and deviding his Host into two partes, sent  
the one into South Asia & þe other into north Asia, which  
spoyled all as they went, and sodaynly surprizing the citie  
of new Cesaria: sacked it and being full laden with bootie  
and pray departed thence. But the Emperoure when  
he heard of it, takinge with him a Bande of lussier and  
nimble Souldiours, coasting the nearest way over hill  
and dale, through thicke and thinne, to get betwene his  
enemies and home, so vigorouslie and sodaynly set vp  
on them and therewithall so terrified and dismayed them  
that they trauing to their Legges, leaue all their  
pray and carriage behinde them. Notwithstanding their  
was no great number of them slaine, because the Ro-  
manes (being with their long iournaie weared) were not  
able to followe the chase farre, but they rescued and deli-  
uered manie Prisoners whiche before had bene taken.  
From thence making his voyage into Syria, where hee  
sent out part of his Army to Melitena, he brought home  
from Chalep great Booties both of men and beastes, and  
tooke Hierapolis in Syria by surrendre.

After this, the Emperour (lying at Hierapolis) hearing  
newes þe Turkes had vanquished part of the Romane  
Armies, sped himselfe thitherward in all hast to succoure  
his distressed Souldiours and afflicted Subiectes. The  
Capitayne of Chalep, hearing of this overthrowe geuen  
to the Romanes, renounced his allegiance and fled with  
all his trayne to the Turkes. And when the Enemies  
had environed the Romane Campe round about, the em-  
peroure without geuing any knowledge to them that hee  
would fight, brought out his Armie and without the  
sounde either of Trumpet or other manifest token, gaue  
the

## Of the Saracen Historie. 95

the charge and onset vpon them, and put them to flight ere they had warning or time to resist. When he buylde and erected a Castle at Hierapolis, and after he had taken many other Townes, he came to Alexandria a citie of Cilicia. And takinge order for the winteringe of his Host, where they shoulde not be pynched with faimye nor scarcitie of victuall retourned home to Constantinople.

In the beginning of the next spring, the Emperour making an other voyage to Cæsarea, was certaynly enformed by a great company of Turkes foraged and spoyled that province: whom after he had either slayne or taken, hee took his iournay to Euphrates: and there leauing parte of his Army, vnder the conduct of Philaretus, he himselfe went northward. The Turkes putting Philaretus his Souldyours in great feare & ieoperdie, got all their trinketes and cariage, and marching southward into Cappadocia (wasting and making hanoche as they went) came to Iconium, a Citie at that time moste flourishinge and renowned.

The Emperoure hauinge intelligence hereof at Sebastia, speede him thitherward. But hearing by the way, that his Enemies had destroyed and rased the Citie, and vpon the hute and report of his coming and approche to be departed, he deliuered parte of the Romane Legions to Cathagurio Capitaine of Antioch, commaunding him southward to repayre to Mopsihestia, where the Turkes shoulde passe, and there to set vpon them. But ere they could come so farre, the Turkes were bidde to a colde breakfast by the Armenians in the plaine of Tharsus, and distressed in a manner of all they had: & hearing further that the Romanes were planted at Mopsihestia to receiue them, if they passed that way, fledde by night.

After this, in the beginning of the Spring, the Turkes oftsones inuadinge and infestinge the Romane Provinces



## The thirde Booke

Emperour  
taken Prisoner.

Great cur-  
tesie of the  
Sultane.

ces, were daunted and overcome by Mychael Comne-  
nus, Generall and Chieftaine for the Emperoure: and  
within a while after, the same Michael being sent by the  
Emperoure into Syria with a lesse power, for certayne  
spight and hartburning borne agaynst hym, was van-  
quished and taken of the Turkes. After this the Empe-  
roure in person with a great power went into the orien-  
tall Provinces, and encamping at a place called Criape-  
ga, in a battayle whiche hee fought with his Eneinics  
(wher the Scythians that were in his Army forsooke him  
and fled to the Turkes) most manfully fightinge was ta-  
ken and brought before the Sultane whose name then  
was Axan, for Tangrolipix was now dead. This Ax-  
an as he was a most precise man and of great moderati-  
on and prudence, when hee certainlye knew that it was  
his Emperour (for he would not beleue it was he, till the  
Ambassadors, (vnto him before sent, ) affirmed it was  
he indeede, and certayne Greeke Capitaines whiche hee  
had in Prison (being brought before him) fel dooyn and  
prostrated themselves at his fete) curteously lifted hym  
up from the ground, lying prostrate and kneelinge at his  
fete, as the custome and manner is for them that ac-  
knowledge themselves vanquished: and so lovinglye em-  
braced him, as though he had bene his owne Brother,  
speakinge vnto hym these comfortable wordes follow-  
yng.

I would not wish you (moste noble Emperour) to la-  
ment and sorow for this your present chaunce and mise-  
rie. For such is the state and course of this worlde, that  
the fortune of Warre sometime alloteth victorie to one,  
sometime to another, humbleth one and aduanceth an-  
other. Your Maiestie hath moste puissauntlye quitte  
your selfe in many notable Battayles, your valiaunt  
courage and invincible prowesse in warlike affaires  
shall

shall  
you  
them  
at my  
sones  
one c  
An  
lye a  
gene  
ture  
own  
tie a  
Dy  
mut  
happ  
these  
toget  
to an  
and i  
and t  
Chil  
freely  
ble p  
hym  
X  
mor  
bear  
rene  
and  
the s  
Duc  
pow  
and  
some  
(as b

## Of the Saracen Historie. 96

shall euer be renowned and spoken of, yf you now shew your selfe to be no lesse patient and stoute in aduersitie then you were prudent and wise in prosperitie. Albeit at my handes you shall not be vsed as a Captiue and prisoner, but lyke an Emperour and as is most sitting for one of your estate.

And immediatly he appointed vnto him a most Princely and rich Tabernacle, with seruantes to await and gene attendaunce vppon his Person, and all other furniture meete for an Emperour. And caused him to sit at his owne table next vnto himselfe, & for his sake set at libertie as many Prisoners as he would demaunde. Which Princely curtesie argued that he had regarde to humane mutabilitie and fickle state, considering the same misshapen might as well haue happened vnto hym. Thus these two mighty Princes keping company samplery together for certayne dayes, & talking most frendly one to an other, at last established and concluded a perpetuall and infrigible peace for euer to continue betwene them, and vpon promise of affinitie by Mariage betwene their Childzen to be solempnised, hee franklie deliuered and frely dismisst Diogenes with a great traine of honorable Personages awaighting vppon him, and gaue vnto hym a riche sute of Princely Apparaile.

But after that Diogenes was at Constantinople murthered by his owne People, Axan the Sultane bearinge thereof and greatlie lamentinge his death, for reuenge thereof sent out his Armies, not now to pylfer and robbe as before, but to subdue and vtterlie to reduce the same vnder his subiection. Against whom, Michael Ducas the Emperour, sent Isaac Comnenus with a great power, who was overcome and taken of the Turkes and payde a great Summe of Money for his Ransome. After this, Cudume Sepheiu to Tangrohipix (as before hath bene declared) leuyinge a great Power



## The thirde Booke

to goe against Axan the new Sulcan, because he himselfe desired to bee installed in the Imperiall Siege of that Principallitie, the Babilonian Calph whose authoritie among the Turkes (because he was thought to be descended of the ligne of Mahomet) was great, considering there could be nothing more pernicious to his Sect, then if Ciuill warres and intestine diuision (whiche earst had ruygated and touned topsiturnie the Empire of the Saracens and of them which were Caliphes) should now also be kindled among the new Saracens that is to wit the Turkes: contrarie to his wonted guise (which was neuer lightly to goe from home or to come abroad) went personally vnto both the parties that contended for the Emperre, perswading them, that this vnaturall warre being laid aside, they should grow to this ende and agreement, that Axan (whom some call Cassian) should enioye his whole and entire Principallitie, and shoulde to the vttermost of his power, ayde and helpe his Cousen to conquer and subdome the Roman Provinces, ouer the which he should also be contented to let him be Ruler. And by this meane and perswasion, in short space he subdued Media and all the Orient, and then innaded the Ilandes, furnishing out one Zacha a man of base byrth and pooze stocks, who sodainely with a fewe Shippes winning and surprising the Ile of Chio, and there furnishing himselfe with a conuenient Parie, wan Lesbos, Samos, Rhodes, Creta and Cypres, which within short space after, were regained and brought againe into the power and subiection of the Romane Emperre.

Moreover Axan the Sulcan of Persia came vnto bys. Pephem named Ducat, the rule and Capitainship of Damascus and other places of Syria: nere thereabout, that as the other warred with the Romanes so he shoulde bicker and keepe a coyle with the Egyptians. For the Caliph of Egypt, possessed & had vnder this iurisdiction all, as farre

as Laod  
much,  
condicio  
Iweare  
Culm  
Honne  
luckely  
masco.

After  
warred  
Christ  
vnder t  
hardly  
then be  
p pitifu  
ring ai  
by the  
citer fo  
godly a  
persua  
made  
yere  
and da  
Kingle  
wyth  
Raym  
named  
Steph  
Podie  
and w  
ting s  
terrib  
gyptia  
ging t  
Bychi

## Of the Saracen Historie. 97

as Laodicea in Syria: and gaue Alapia or Chalep to Samuch, even him, of whom befoze wee haue spoken: but conditionally, that both of them should be his Vassalles, & sweare vnto him homage and doe fealtye for the same: & Cudume to be a Sultan as well as he. But Sangnine the Sonne of Samuch after manye aduentures in warres luckily atchieued, conquered also the Kingdome of Damasco.

After him succeeded his Sonne Norandine, who long warred with the Kinges of Hierusalem. But when the Christians which lined in Hierusalem and other places vnder the yoke and thraldome of the Turkes, were more hardly and straitly handled at the hands of y<sup>e</sup> said Turkes, then befoze they were by the Saracens, Pope Urbane at y<sup>e</sup> pitifull instance of the Christians in the Orient, (desiring aide to ridde them out of their miserable seruitude) by the mouth of one Peter a french Heremite (their soliciter for reliefe in this case) exhorted all Nations to this godly and Christian warre, and did so muche with his perswasion, that there was an expedition and voyage made into Syria. This voyage was made in the yere of oure redemption 1090. by longe iourneyes and daungerous wayes. The chiefe Capitaines and Kingleaders wherof, were Godfroye Duke of Lorayne wyth Eustace and Baldwine, al of the house of Bolayne, Raymunde and Robert Carles of Flaunders, Hugh surnamed the Great, brother to Philip then French King, Stephan de Valoys Carle of Chartiers, the Bishoppe of Podie and Peter the Heremite, Authour of this voyage, and with them about fyue hundzeth thousand good fighting Souldiours. Which after many bloudie battailes & terrible Skirmishes with the Turkes, Saracens and Egyptians, conquered againe many Cities lately belonging to the Christians. Some wanne Nicæa a Citie of Bythinia, some Antioch standing vpon the riuier Orontes,

The voyage of Godfroy of Bolayne and others to Hierusalem.



## The thirde Booke

Some the Citie of Hierusalem and some with much labour and effusion of bloude regained other Cities and there constituted a Christian Kingdome. Nowe, this while, the Emperour of Constantinople was in league with the other Sultan of the Turkes, who was Lord of those Provinces confining and bordering next vnto Constantinople: for wee shewed before, howe that those Provinces were allotted and geuen to Cuclume, the which by his Heires after him enioyed, and Tangrolipix his Successours had the regiment ouer the Persians and Babylonians: and in Egypt there were yet remayning the remnauntes and residue of the Saracenes.

But after the death of Cuclume and his Sonne (Sultanes of the Occident and Lordes of all Cappadocia) one Tanismanye succeded. Of these Christian Capitaines when they were arryued in safetie in Asia, the Turkes gaue a great ouerthrowe vnto Raymund, watching him at a vantage, when he was entred into the Countrey about Nice vnadvisedly without searche, and hym compelled to flie vnto a poore desert towne called Exorgum: where after he had bin a certain space besieged & thoroughly wearied, with a fewe others yelded to his enemyes. The rest which would not yelde and submit themselves, after long Siege, were partly consumed in skirmishes and partly perished by famyne: and such as were taken alive, were slaine euerie one. So many as were lefte, departed first to Nicomedia, and from thence remooued to Nice a Citie of Bithynia. Whiche Citie while they fiercely assaulted, Tanismanye or Solyman with .lx. thousande Turkes, issued out and bent his full force agaynst that part of the Christian Campe which was ledde by the Bysshoppe of Podie: but the French, stood so stoutly at the receipt, that the enemyes were easely repulled, and so at length the Citie of Nice was taken. After this there was a sharpe bickering and conflict with Solyman, at the

fourth

## Of the Saracen Historie. 98

fourth Tent pitch from Nicra. For he had gathered together the power of the whole Orient, and had procured as much aide from else where as he could. The Iconium a Citie standing by Mount Taurus, the Seate Royall and Metropolitane Citie of Solyman, (which at this day is called Cogni) and the Pallace of the Princes of Phrygia (now called Caramania) and Heraclea were wonne. Afterwarde Baldwyne diuiding his Armye into two partes tourned into Cilicia, and tooke Tharsus, Edessa and Manussa: the greater Hoaste wyning Armenia, delquered the regiment and rule thereof to Palmurus an Armenian.

After this good successe, they tooke Cappadocia, Casarea Sororgia and Sura in the Straits of Mount Taurus. When they had passed the Mount Taurus, the Turkes aduanced themselves in a faire plaine, but they were easily and with litle adoe discomfited and put to flight by the Latines, and from thence marched straight to Antioch, a noble and strong Citie in Phznicia, by which the riuer Orontes runneth (for there is another of the same name in Pamphilia, nere vnto Seleucia) and tooke the same by surrendre, by reason that the Turkes were afore vanquished in battaile and yeldded themselves. In which battaile were slaine of the Latines a hundzeth thousand, and xv. M. Camelles taken.

During these byoyles, the Venetian Fleete beyng CC. sayle and sent to ayde the Latynes, wanne a Citie in the Coast of Ionia called Smyrna: and the Latines after they had taken Antioch, wanne Rugia and Albaria and there wintered.

In the Spring folowing, departyng thence, they layde Siege fyrst to Tortosa and Tripolis. The king of Tripolis submiting himselfe was receiued vnder protection, but Tortosa was verge stoutely defended by the Inhabi-



## The thirde Booke

Inhabitants. **W**herfoze rayſing their Siege and paſſing  
ouer the Riuerſ of Zebul, Zabar and Brai, they came by  
priuie wayes and vnhaunted places befoze Berytus a  
Citie ſtanding vpon the Sea coaſt, and from Berytus to  
Sagitta, and from thence the tenth day after, they came to  
Caſarea, after ward to Rama and ſo at length they pitched  
their Tentes and planted their Siege befoze the noble  
Citie of Hieruſalem, whiche with moſt cruell bloudſhea-  
ding and incredible labour was wonne, about y<sup>e</sup> yere of  
our redemption one thouſand and one hundzeth, & God-  
froye crowned King therof. The ſtreates in this aſſault  
ſtood full of congeled bloude y<sup>e</sup> thicknes of a ſote. But the  
Turkes & Egypciāſ leuping a freſh power, renewed warre.  
Againſt whom, Godfrey with his Chriſtian army mar-  
ched, and finding them encamped at Aſcalon, gaue them  
battaile and ſlew of them 100000 (or as ſome ſay) 50000  
and diſcomfited all the reſt. But befoze that Hieru-  
ſalem was taken, the Venetian ſharyp coaſtinge alonge  
Lycia, Pamphylia, Cilicia and Syria, lay at Road in the  
Hauen of Ioppa, being then in the French Hoſtes ſub-  
iection, becauſe thei might helpe the Chriſtians with  
victual and neceſſary prouiſion: & waighing by their An-  
kers they departed thence, & toke Aſcalon, Porphyria (a  
Citie nere to Ptolemais) Tyberias, Cities ſtan-  
ding vpon the Sea ſide.

After the death of Godfroye who departed this lyfe  
within the Citie of Hieruſalem, his Brother Baldwine  
was made King, and the reſt of the Princes returned  
home. He throughe the aide and helpe of the Venetians,  
Genoways and Boemund King of Antioch toke Ptole-  
mais, with Sydon and Berytus cities of Phœnicia. But  
when that Boemund was dead and Tancrede his Bro-  
ther ſucceeded in the Crowne and Kingdome of Antioch,  
(the Turkes & Egypciāſ againe inuading the frontiers  
of the Ieroſolymitane Kingdome, Balwine ſente for  
Tancrede

Tanc  
them  
his  
tyed  
Turk  
nai.  
ſteade  
made  
Aſt  
perou  
ſent  
enter  
was  
of Ac  
Fren  
ned b  
of Bu  
thit  
Latin  
one, I  
aunt  
ſcatter  
incon  
comm  
Hoſt  
after  
let a  
B  
Day  
at th  
of T  
gent  
was  
Wet  
Woz

## Of the Saracen Historie. 99

Tancrede to come and ayde hym, and then gatie vnto them battayle, but the Turkes discomfited him and all his Hoast, wherebpon with great losse of his men he retyed to Hierusalem and Tancrede to Antioch: and the Turkes got into their handes the possession of Mount Sinai. Within a while after Baldwine dyed, and in his steade an other Baldwine surnamed Burgensis was made King.

Afterward in the raigne and Empire of Alexius Emperour of Constantinople, because Baldwine the seconde, sent for ayde to the Latines to withstand the malignant enterpryses of the Turkish Rakehelles, an other voyage was made into Syria. Therein went VVylliam duke of Aquitanye, Hugh the Great, Brother to Philip the French King, Stephen Earle of Chartiers (lately returned home from y other expedition befoze) Stephen earle of Burgundie, and Tholouse. The Venetians also sent thither a great Flaue. The Chyistian Champions and Latine Capitaines with their Hoast after many afflictions, labours and sharp stormes sustayned by the miscreants, insomuche that they were almost disperled and scattered, came at length to Hierusalem. But Baldwine inconsiderateliie fightinge with the Turkes befoze the comming of the other chyistians, was taken prisoner, his Host discomfited, and he himselfe brought to Carras, and after a time, payinge his Ransome was deliuered and set at lybertie.

But the Venetian Flaue encountringe with 700. Sayle that belonged to the Caliph of Egypt, whiche laye at the Siege of Ioppa, overcame them & toke the Citie of Tyre. During the time that they lay befoze that Citie geuing sundrie Batties and assaults there vnto, there was a Doue scene, flyinge ouer their Campe and Tentis (so the Venetians had set parte of their men on boze) carrying the Letters of the King of Damasco tyed

Ce

about

In other  
voyage to  
Ierusalem.



## The thirde Booke

**Polyeie.**

aboute her neck, the contentes wherof was, that he with a great power, would shortlye come to rescue them. The Souldiours seeing her flying ouer their heades towards the Citie, at one instant all together, shototed and cryed, which shout so deuided & cut the Ayre, that the Dowe fell doونه to the ground. When the Venetian Capitaynes perusing and reading ouer the letters, forged others, like vnto them in pzeportion and wrighting, but cleane contrary in effect and meaninge, the tenor wherof was, that the besieged parties should shift for their sauegarde as well as they coulde, and onely trust to themselues: for of him they coulde haue no ayde nor rescue. Whereupon they immediatlye surrendered themselues and their Citie to the Christians.

**The firste  
beginninge  
of the Assassines.**

At this time, there raigned among the Saracenes or Turks a certaine kind of Sect of men called Assassines: which killing whosoener they listed (lyke theenes & Murtherers) wrought much skath and harme to the Christians in Syria. And hereof it came, that afterwarde among the Italians, al theenes & murtherers were called by the name Assassines. Which Sect first sprong vp (as it is reported) in this sort. One Aloadine a Saracenist raigned in that parte of Persia, whiche lyeth nexte the Riner Indus, not farre from the borders of the Prouince of Arriana, vnder the Mount Caucasus (which Region at this day is called Mulcher). In the which in times past the Asacenes inhabited, of whom Arrianus speaketh in his hystorie of the Actes of Alexander the great, placing them betwene the riuers of Cophe and Indus: which Cophe (as I thinke) is that, whiche is called of Iosephus in his Iudaicall Antiquities Cuchus, & that into this Region those ten Tribes of Israel were translated.

This Aloadine hauing an intent to inneigle and persuade his people, that hee was hable to bringe all such to the

## Of the Saracen Historie. 100

the fruition of a blessed lyfe, as obserued and kept his Lawes and commandements, had trimmed and planted in a right pleasant valley betwene two very high Hills moste goodly Gardaines of solace, replennished with all kinde of fragraunt Floures and beautiful Trees yielding smel & fruite most delectable. which gardains, were most finely contriued, and on euery side enuironed with notable gorgeous buildings, garnished with Golde and other colours, and stozed with pzeious furniture and rich householde stufte of value inestimable. In diuers places of the same, were Fountaines and riuers of Milk, Honey, Wyne and sweet waters. Within the same, also were fine Damoselles and beautifull Pucelles, which with Melodies, Songes, muscally Instrumentes, mincing daunces, and all other allurementes of Femy-nine flattereries, delighted and fed the tender eares of such as were bzought thither. Moreover there were other the Seruantes and housewifelye Trulles, which being kept close within dozes, dzedled all thinges y could be deuised as thought necessarie aswel for meate & dzyinke as for the pleasure and delectacion of the Chrestes and Strangers therein. All the place without was most curiously strengthened both by nature and arte. When this delightfull Gardaine of pleasure was fully ended and made perfect, Aloadine pzeached and pzoessed hymselfe to those downish people to be the felow and Mate of Mahomet, and that he had powter geuen vnto him, to dispose and bestow the benefitt and fruition of Paradise and blessed lyfe vpon such as should be to his lawes and bestes obeyaunt. And of them he chose out certayne yong Stripelinges aboute the age of twelue or foureteene yeres, such as seemed to be of the best towardnesse and disposition for Warres in tyme to come, whome he bzought by in his Hall or Courte.

Cet

And



## The thirde Booke

And because they should with the more willing mynden obey his commaundementes and stirre at his becke, his fashion was with some cōfectioned Potion to bring them into a dead sleepe: which done, his custome was then to transpōrt & carpe them into y place o2 Cardaine: where being awaked, they solaced themselves and had the fruition of all kynd of pleasures for two o2 thre dayes space, and then agayne beyng with the same drinckes brought on sleepe, (as befoze they had bene) were caried out, themselves knowing nothing at all thereof. And by this meanes it came to passe, that after ward they refused neither perils no2 Daungers to fulfill his mynde and commaundementes, but were willing and ready to slea and kil whom he would commaunde, yea thonghe they dwelled in places distant farre of. And the number of them which he had there, were about lx. thousand. Wherby his power and his Successours after him (called Sexmountes) grew and in such sorte encreased, that he instituted the same order also in Syria, and had a Lieutenant vnder him at Damasco. For there was of them as it were a certaine order of knightes, whereof the chiefe President and Maister was called Sexmount, and had diuerse officers of the order of this knighthode in sundry other places. The Castle wherein these Cardaines were, was named Tigad.

These Cutthroate Souldiours, with murthers and robberies, made every place in Asia dangerous and unpasseable to the Christians. But this Castle being afterward assailed and besieged full seven yeres space by the Tartarians, was in the end by them taken, and they with in utterly destroyed. This is the Historie of them, whom some by mistaking do call Essenes, and some Aracidas, as we haue found in the most credible and approued Authors.

After the death of Tanismany, the Occidentall Tur-  
kische

## Of the Saracen Historie. 101

his Emperour began to be divided. For one Muchumet succeeded Tanismany, betwene whō and Masute President of Iconium, was kindled certayne displeasure and private heartburning. But the Emperour Iohn Comnenus entred into league and linked in amitie with Masute, whose both powers ioyned together went agaynst Muchumet. At length for spight bozne to the Emperour there was meanes found for a reconciliation and agreement betwene the two Turkeish Potentates, Masute, and Muchumet: which being brought about and concluded, Masute abiured his former league and revolted from the Emperour. Notwithstanding, the Emperour raised two noble Cities of Pontus in the Turkes possession, the one called Castamon and the other Gangre. But within a while after, Muchumet recovered them again, and subdued Iberia also, with sundry places in Mesopotamia. And Masute wanne Iconium with other places in Syria. But making an enroade into Thracia, he was talked wythall to his cosse, and put to flight by Manuel Comnenus. The Emperour glad above measure for this victorie, layde Siege to Iconium, but the Turkes set theyr Stales so couertly, and brake out of an Ambush so sodainely, that they discomfited his Host, and he hymselfe escaped very hardly.

The Christians in Hierusalem being soze distressed by the Miscreantes, there was a thyrde Voyage and expedition made thither, whereof was chiefe Captayne and leader Conrade Duke of Franconia, who with a great Armie of Germanes, Italians and Frenchmen relieved the: and meeting wyth the Turkes (wyth whom the Greeques had also conspired) nere by the Ryuer Meander gaue vnto them Battayle. In which terrible conflicte there was a merueylous greate slaughter of Turkes.

After that Masute was deade, his thre Sonnes parted

Ge. iij,

the

A thyrde  
voyage to  
ward the  
holy land.



## The thirde Booke

One þ. toke  
vpon him to  
flee in the  
aire.

the Kingdome among them, and afterward Iagupafanes and the Sultane of Iconium fell together by the eares for their moities. In the ende Iagupafanes got the victorie, and the Sultane fledde for succour to the Emperour, who caried him to Constantinople with him, for a Triumph. And heere by the waye, I may not omit to declare a piete Iest of a Sarracene Icarus. This merie felow, attending vpon the Sultane, and bearing the countenance of a Juggeler, at a certaine solempne Justes or Tyltrun-nyng, voluntarily went vp to the toppe of a Turret stand- yng in the Tyltyard at Constantinople, vnder y which Turret was the Tylte it selfe, where the Hozser tooke their races and courses, and aboue, were those foure con- ragious and praising gilt Courfers which now stand on the toppe of the Church of S. Marke in Venice, directly opposite, & standyng ful but one against another. He stan- ding on the toppe of this Turret craked and bragged that he would flee in the Ayze y space of a furlong. And hauing on, a large white garmēt, down to his foote, ful of plaistes, knotted and gathered round to haue in the ayze withall, he stood fluttering for winde with his handes in skeedes of winges, and hauing (as he thought) sozed long ynough, at length committed his body to the carrellie of the wind, but falling downe headlong on the grounde, hee bzuisid and bzake all his bones wth the fall, and there lyke a baine Cockscombe yeldd by the Ghost and dyed.

Nowe, Manuel to th' intent he would bee reputed and thought of the Sultane to be a Prince liberall, mag- nificēt and mightie, dismissed and sent him away not wthout honourable rewarde, besyde a buyge Masse of money and other most pzeious Wares: vppon conditi- on, that hee shoulde rebelluer and restoze vnto him the Citie of Sebastia, wth the Suburbes of the same. But when the Sultane was retourned to Iconium wth his

hys money he returned to hys former boynise, spoyleing Sebastia and all the places neere aboute it, and tooke vppon hym the chiefe Soueraigntie and prebeminence of all that Territorie: and dzyuing hys other bzother Dadunc out of the Countrey, and getting by force the Citie of Cæsarea, he went about also to supplant and ouerthrow Iagupasan.

What trust  
is in the promise of a  
Turke.

Dadunc got into hys possession the Countrey of Amasia beeyng wythout any possessour: but it was not long ere he was agayne expelled and dzyuen oute by Clizastlan the Sultane, who boze all the swaye in Capadocia. This Clizastlan albeit he called the Emperour, father: yet he ever incroched vppon his pzo- uinces and spoyled hys Countreyes. Wherevppon, within a whyle after, a newe garboyle and hatred was kindled betweene them: for that the Sultane likewise charged the Emperour with bzeache of promise, in sundrye Articles and couenauntes befoze condescended vnto.

A good  
Childe.

The Emperour purposing with all hys myght to be auenged of his Aduersaries, and alreadye conceyving in his mynde the destruction and utter subuersion of the Turkishe Nation, leuyed together al his olde beaten Souldiours, mustered newe Legions, and procured all the forayne ayde that hee coulde from any place, made a firme League with Baldwine King of Hierusalem, and retained in wages the Scythians consyning vpon the Rhyer Ister, and thus hauing a mightie and populous Army, wyth all thinges in good order and readines decently purueighed, (after he had made hys prayers to Almighty God the gyuer of all victorie for his diuine assistance) marched forth in good order against them: His iourney lay thzough Phrigia and Laodicea Chonas S. Archangel, Lampis and Celenas where the head Spring of the great Meander is, into whiche the Riner Marfyas



## The thirde Booke

Myriocephalon, is by interpretation a thousande heades.

Marfyas falleth & so to Choma, passed with y<sup>e</sup> Lucke and  
 woyle speede by an olde desert and ruinous Castle called  
 Myriocephalon : where he had a Fortune and euent a-  
 greable to the name of the place. For not farre from  
 thence, many thousandes of the Greckes perished and  
 were brought to their long home. Notwithstanding  
 he marched very circumspectlie and in good Battayle a-  
 raye: and where so euer he lodged his Campe, there hee  
 fortified and surely entrenched the same : but he was en-  
 forced to goe somewhat slowly and softly, because of the  
 great Cattaille y<sup>e</sup> drew his Habiliments and Ordnance.  
 The Turkes oftentimes shewinge themselves in sight,  
 skirmished with them for a spire and away againe : and  
 so forlaged al the Countrey, that the passage for the Em-  
 perour was very dangerous. For they moved downe  
 the Grasse, and intercepted all the victualles, & poisoned  
 the Waters all along as they went. But the Sultane  
 hauing in his Host (beside his owne people, great ayde  
 out of Persia and Mesopotamia, and from other Kinges  
 of that Pacion, sent his Ambassadors vnto the Empe-  
 roure for peace : whiche request all the auncientest and  
 wisest sorte, and such as had bene enured with Tur-  
 kish Warres, counsayled him to accept and at no hande  
 to refuse, for that all the strong Fortresses and commodi-  
 us places were surprized & already in the Enemies pos-  
 session. But hee tourninge the deafe eare to these graue  
 counselles and holosome aduertisements of the elder sort,  
 and onely harkening to the rash aduises of ruffling boy-  
 sters and desperate Gallants (which glittered in beau-  
 tie, Pearles, Golde and costlye Jewelles, not renow-  
 med for any Tryumphaut victories or tried service in  
 partiall affaires) dismissed and sent backe agayne the  
 Ambassadors without obtayning their errand and mes-  
 sage : the Sultane yet once agayne desired peace, but the  
 Em

Emperour disdainfully and tauntingly sent him word againe that he would make him answere to his request at Iconium. Which caused the Sultan (seeing no hope of reconcilpacion betwene him and the Emperoure coulde he had) to plant his footemē in an ambush in y<sup>e</sup> Streights of Mounte Taurus, called Clisura Zybritza, through which the Romane Army discampinge from Myriocéphalon must needs passe, to the intent they might vpon a sodayne bzeak out and set vpon the Imperialles when so euer they passed that way. Before the entrie into this Clisura, there is somewhat a longe ballay (which in Latine we may very well tearme Clusium) rising vp with Hilles on either syde, whiche on the North parte alonge down y<sup>e</sup> Hilles, being somewhat steepe, reacheth out into greater Valleys, containing larger scope & elbowroom: on the other side it is enclosed and bound in, with craggie Clines and high Rockes.

It is good  
to heare re-  
son and to  
take honeste  
condicions  
when they  
be offered  
least when  
we woulde  
we can not.

Manuel leading his Armie through this deadly streit way, in no other sort but as though he had gone in plaine champaine broad fields, had no sort care to such things as politique & skilful Capitaines ought specially to foresee & as customably wont to provide for: that is to wit: The carrages & Wagons y<sup>e</sup> serue to draw their munitions and Artillerie, & to see order take out of y<sup>e</sup> marshalled aray of fighting Souldiours, for suche of y<sup>e</sup> common multitude and traine as could not serue the tourne in fight, but woulde binder their fellowes rather, if it shoulde come to such a push: Also with a Bande of light Stradiotes to chase the Enemies out of the Streites, and to make the way open for his owne Armie, and to knowe all thinges by his Especialles and Scouts before hand. Of all these, albeit he had vnderstanding before how that the Turks were placed in the Hil, yet did he attempt nothinge to defeat their malicious purposes: But more

The wilful  
man neuer  
waiteth woe

ff

rashely



## The thirde Booke

raſhlie then aduisedlie, chopped hardilye into the ſame ſtreits hauing his battel apointed in this order ſolow- ing. The Howard was led by the two Suns of Angelus Constantine whole names were Iohn and Andronicus, with Macroduca Constantine and Lapardus Androni- cus, with their Enſignes and Bands, and was marshal- led in Lunare ranks or Downed araye. The right wings was led by Baldwine King of Hieruſalem, and the leſſe by Maurozomes Theodorus. After them ſolowed the Iudges, Skullions, Woodcarters, Cartes and all the other baggage and Trinketrie of the Hoast. After them came the Emperoure himſelfe with the maine Battaille, where in was a balyaunt Crew of choſen fellowes. The Rerewarde was conducted by Andronicus Conto- ſtephanus.

Alamanta-  
ble ſlaugh-  
ter of Chri-  
tians by  
negligence.

As ſoone as they were entred within the Streights, where there was no ſtaring hoales noꝝ yet elbowroom for the Hoast, and the Bandes of Angelus Macroduca, and Lapard ordering themſelues into a three ſquare bat- taile, (ſmall befoꝛe and thick behinde like vnto a wedge) gaue the charge vpon the barbarous Turkes and by fine ſorce dꝛaue them backe from the Hilles and higher pla- ces where they fought, into the Mountaines, and ſo per- ſorce, made for themſelues a thꝛough paſſage without ani- hurt or daunger. But the residue of the Legions, ſolow- ed after them nothing couragiouslie: neither did they ſet their Archers in the ſlankes of their Battayle to gall and keepe of the Turkiſh ſorce as they ſhould haue done, neither held they their Targetts cloſe together over their heades like a vault, to beare of their ſhotte and blowes. Wherefoꝛe the Turkes in thick plumps and with great violence brake out on euery ſide vpon them from the high- er places into the lower ground and from the banks where befoꝛe they fought, into the plaine, and boldly en- croched

crooked, still more and more upon the Romanes till they had pearced and broken their araye. And firste puttinge Baldwine his winge to flight, wounded and slew many. Which when Baldwine perceived, with an intent to rescue and ayde his men in that distresse, taking with hym a picked Troupe of expert Hozlemen, rushed in amonge the thickest of his Enemies. Of whom he was so beset and on every side circumvented that hee himselfe was there slaine, and all his men most valpaullye fightyng, likewise there dyed. This good successe set the Turkes on such a glorious hoigh, that they stopped all the wayes where the Romanes should passe, meaning that day so to plague the Chzistians, that they should neuer after be habble to attempt the lyke enterpryse against them: for now being enclosed in those perillous Streightes, and one hindring an other, they wer not habble to endamage nor hurt their Enemies by any kinde of meanes, but rather bindyed and disturbed one an other, and were cause of one an others slaughter and lamentable destruction. So extremely coped in and pounded were they, that they neither could haue any help of the Emperoure neither yet of the Herewarde, neyther coulde they goe backe or decline on any syde, because the Cartes and carriage that were placed in the middle like a Bulwarke or Kampire, letted them. Their Hozses and men were kyled lyke Sheepe, and with Turkes Falchions gozed and soynded through. The Wallayes laye full of dead Cozses, the wayes stenchd with grisly sightes of slaine persons, the Downes couered ouer with dismembred bodies, the waters of the Riuers were coloured and ranne with bloude of Men and Beastes mingled together: and to be shozte, such lachrymable slaughter was in this place made vpon the pooze Chzistians, that the wofulnesse thereof cannot with Penne accoordinglye be expessed.

Fi y

And



## The thirde Booke

And beside all other outrages and unspeakeable calamities, the Turkes pitched the head of Andronicus Baraza the Emperours Nephew (which had leued an Army out of Paphlagonia and Heraclea Pontica and was sent against the Amasene Turkes in Amasia) vpon a Speare point, and caried it befoze them for a mockage in derision. Which heauie spectacle and dangerous plight so vexed and inwardly grieved Manuel, that his minde was wonderfully perplexed, insomuch that he was euē at his wittes ende and wist not what to doe nor which waye to tourne him.

But the Romane Legions in the Holward, (as befoze was declared) hauing passed those pykes & deadly trappes helde themselves close together and for their sauegarde fenced in their Campe, vpon the toppe of a little Hill very conuenient and commodious (as the time then fell out) for their purpose. The Turkes with might and maine strived to ouerrunne and beare downe the Emperours battaile, because if they mighte once thoroughly disperse and subone the greatest and strongest part of the Army, they thought the residue would easely and with small adoe be vanquished, like as a Serpent when the head is bzyled and crushed to powder, all the other partes of the bodye (which befoze by themselves moued, being cleane cut of) do straightwayes die. The Emperour fought valiantly that day and oftentimes assayed the Turkes fiercely to driue them out of the Staighes and to open the waye for his men to passe thzough, but perceiuing the power and force of the Turkes (which fought frō the higher ground) still to encrease, and making his full accoumpt, that whether he taried or went forwarde, there was none other way for him and his company but present death, he exhorted his men first of all to repose all their hope in Almighty, God and next in their weapons and handes, and that they should either saue their lyues by hardy blowes and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 105

and valiant deedes or else by honest and glorious death  
 wyne to themselves perpetuall fame and renoume : for  
 he plainely tolde them that he saw none other way for the  
 to escape cleare and harmelesse, but by such a famous ad-  
 uenture. And y<sup>e</sup> God would not vtterly forsake nor leaue  
 succourlesse them that beare armour and fight in the qua-  
 rel of his holy Catholique Religion, for y<sup>e</sup> aduancement  
 of his glorious name , against the impious contemners  
 and blasphemers of all religion, godlines, vertue and ho-  
 nestie, so that they would prostrate themselves before hym  
 and with deuoute mindes (craving his diuine assistance)  
 valiantly vse y<sup>e</sup> courage and power which his diuine Pa-  
 iestie gaue, & inspired into their stomackes. And although  
 their chaunce were then to be slaine, yet should they ( ha-  
 uing a most iust cause and quarel) for this their short and  
 transitozie life, gaine and winne a double life: y<sup>e</sup> one, euer-  
 lasting and most blessed in the heavenly kingdome, pro-  
 mised and prepared by our Lord and Sauour Chyist for  
 all such true Chyistians as sincerely worship and vnse-  
 nedly beleue on his name, but namely and specially for  
 such as spend their bloude and life for the loue of his holy  
 woꝝd and setting forth of his gloꝝy. And y<sup>e</sup> other is, a per-  
 petuall fame and a woꝝthye memoꝝiall in this woꝝlde a-  
 mong all posteritie, which would most assuredly for euer  
 extoll & celebꝝate this their pꝝowesse and constancy. But  
 such as thꝝe away their weapons, should for euer be ill  
 repoꝝted of and reuiled in the mouthes and speeches of al  
 men, as fugitiues, forsakers, & Traitors, of their Liege  
 Emperour & as villaines vnthankfull & vnmynndfull of  
 God his benefites, and which is moꝝe, should by God his  
 own mouth be accurst and adiudged to endlesse paines &  
 sempiternal toꝝtures. Wherefoꝝe he aduised the to plucke  
 vp their heartes, and by his example, euery one to make  
 for himself a way & passage with his swoꝝd. Whẽ he had  
 finished these his speeches with those few that he had left,



## The thirde Booke

Valiant-  
nes of the  
Emperour.

he made streyght into the middrest of his enemies, and af-  
ter many woundes genen and taken on either side, brea-  
king thzough the Turkes araie, and being so flased and  
betwen in all his body that thirtie Arrowes oz ther about,  
stake fast in his Target, and not able to take vp his own  
Bassenet oz headpéece that was stroken of, yet (maugre  
their heades) hee escaped and went thzoughe the thickest  
crowde of them. The other Legions were on euery side  
slaine and bzought to their bane, and troden down one of  
another. Such as escaped alyue and were passed these pe-  
rillous Streites in safetie, were neuerthelesse slayne  
and quelled by their enemies in the other ballay, beyond.  
Foz the passage in that place was diuided into .xij. depe  
ballayes néere one to another: and beyng at the first en-  
traunce somewhat bzoad and roumpe, was (the further  
a mā went in) streider and narrower. All which places y  
Turkes had foztified & planted with their Ambushmētes  
and garrisons. Nozeouer, there sodainely arose such a ter-  
rible gale of blusterous and tempestuous windes, which  
tossed & raised vp such habundance of Sand (wherof those  
places are full) y both the Armies most fiercely clasp-  
ing together, bickered in the darke, as though it had bene at  
midnight, and killed all such as came in their reach with-  
out any respect whether they were friendes oz foes. And  
in y same place, (were they Turkes oz Romanes, hozses  
oz other cattel) it skilled not, foz they dyed in heapes to-  
gether one with another. And y valley where this cōflicte  
was, seemed to bee nothing else but a common & a large  
Sepulchze oz buriall place foz them all.

But yet at this time, there died moe of y Romanes thē  
of the Turkes, & specially of y nobler sozt & such as were  
the Emperours néere Cosens & kinsmen. And many be-  
ing there left halfe aliuē, lay so buried & conered ouer w  
heapes of dead Carcasses y they were not hable by any  
meanes by struggling to get themselves out: neither was  
there

## Of the Saracen Historie. 106

there any at hand to help them, for every one had ynough  
 adoe to labour & sweate for his owne life and saluetie. In  
 this ougly sort, they long languishing in that kind of hor-  
 rible & lothsome torment, wer in th'end enforced there to  
 geue vp y<sup>e</sup> Ghost by a death most stinking, lothsome and  
 lamentable. The Emperour himself panting and out of  
 bzeath, was got al alone vnder a wilde Beare tree to take  
 aire & recouer his faint powers, hauing with him neither  
 Page, Henrma, yeman of his Card nor keeper. Whom  
 a poore comon Souldiour or horsseman of his owne troupe  
 (being likewise thither escaped out of the battaile) finding  
 in such miserable plight, bzeathlesse and comfortlesse, di-  
 titfully pitied and bewailed: and offering in y<sup>e</sup> his calam-  
 tie, to minister vnto his Maiestie the best seruice that hee  
 was able, raught him vp by his Helmet & buckeled on hys  
 other Armour y<sup>e</sup> lay here and there dangling about him.  
 Which while he was in doing, a certaine Turke ranne  
 hastily vnto him, & seeing no man there to defend nor res-  
 cue him, toke y<sup>e</sup> Emperours horse by y<sup>e</sup> bzidle, meaning  
 likewise to haue caried away y<sup>e</sup> Emperour himself as pri-  
 soner. Whom the Emperour with a paece of his broken  
 Speare y<sup>e</sup> he had yet left, so blessed and bumbasted about  
 the pate, y<sup>e</sup> he laid him there on the ground to sleepe. Then  
 ranne the other Turkes fiercely vpo him, to haue taken  
 him aliue. Which he seeing, toke the same horssemans  
 Speare of who befoze we spake, and w<sup>th</sup> the same run one  
 of his enemies cleane thzough: while y<sup>e</sup> said Souldiour w<sup>th</sup>  
 his naked sword, dubbed another of the shorter by y<sup>e</sup> head,  
 and so repulsd & kept the of, at y<sup>e</sup> swordes point, till tenne  
 other of y<sup>e</sup> Roman souldiours came running to assist them.  
 Then was he very desirous to haue ioyned himselfe to y<sup>e</sup>  
 other Legions, and most coragiously gaue the aduerture  
 thzough his enemies: but the heapes aswel of dead Car-  
 kasses as of Turkes encountring w<sup>th</sup> him in euery corner  
 as he went, much hindered and preiudiced his pretence.  
 But

A freend at  
 neede.



## The thirde Booke

But yet at last, with much adoe passinge through those streights, and the River that ranne harde thereby, beinge faine also in some places to ride ouer and stamp vpon the dead Cozses of his owne naturall liege people and pertakers, gathered together an other Bande and company of Romanes, whiche as soone as they saw hym, came runninge apace towarde hym: and then beganne a new battayle, in which, hee sawe with his owne eyes Iohn Cantacuzene (his Princes Husband) most valiantly fightinge alone against a multitude, to bee slayne and cruelly spoyled. The Turkes that slewe him, seeinge the Emperoure passe by, made after him in plumpes and great heapes to haue taken him, as one that would haue bene a riche and a fatte Prisoner. They that pursued and chased after him, were of the chiefeſte Nobilitye and callinge among the Turks, well armed at all pointes and mounted vpon Arabian Hozses, verie richelie trapped and gorgeously barbed. Whose force and violent onset the Emperoure (chearinge by the hartes of his men,) easilie repulſed. And one while, by verie force of armes drivinge back those Turks that flocked about to take him, an other while, by the swiftnesse of his Hozse, outrunninge and gettinge the start befoze them, at length after many dangerous bzunties and incredible hazardes, he came and attayned (beinge longe looked for) to the place where his owne people were encamped, of whom also he was at the handes of some, with manye vncourteous woordes rebated and bayted at: Where, they passed that night in dread and deathlie feare withoute any winke of sleepe, till in the morninge the Turks came to besett them round about.

But the Sulcane pityng the wretched state and dolefull calamitie of Manuel the Emperoure, sent him presents, and rewardes, and concluded a peace with him, condicionally that Dorilzum and Sublzum (two towneſ

by

## Of the Saracen Historie. 107

by the Turkes befoze subuerted and againe by the Emperour reedified) shoulde agayne (as they were afoze) be raised and ruinated. Whiche Couenauntes the Emperour for his part dyd not fully perfourme & accomplish. For he destroyed in dede and made Sublæum leauell w<sup>th</sup> the ground, but Dorilæum he touched not. Whereupon the Sultane sent out one of his Capitaines named Atapack with a warlike companye of Chosen Souldiours, streightlye charging and commaunding him not to stave from spoyle till he came to the Sea, and to waste all the Cities and Prouinces as he went, sparing neither Man nor Woman nor Childe, and to bring (in token of his so dealing) home with him, some of the Sea water, an Dare and Sande. Who according to his charge and commissi<sup>on</sup>, spoyled Phrygia and the Cities alonge Meander. But the Emperoure catchinge him at a vauntage as hee passed ouer the riuier Meander, brake out of an Ambush, and slew the Capitaine with many others and disperced his whole Host.

After that this Manuel was dead, the Sultane that had his Imperiall Seate at Iconium, toke many Cities of Phrygia. And after the death of this Sultane, succeded his Sonne named Chaichosroes: duringe whose raigne, Frederick Barbarossa made a voyage into the Orient, and vanquished the Turkes in a Battayle at Iconium: and toke Copatine his Sonne Prisoner, who had expelled and deposed his Father from his Crowne and Kingdome, and wanne Iconium.

At these tymes, a certayne Gentleman of Germanie, a bigge square person of bodie, atchived a seate for the Straungenesse and valyaunce thereof very notable. For the Campe remouing, and he hauing his Horse so tyed

A stout sate  
of a Gen-  
tleman  
of Germanie

that he could not keepe way with the rest of the Armye, came after them sayze and softelye leading his wearied

Ag

Horse



## The thirde Booke

Frederick  
drowned.

Horse in suche a pace as hee was hable. Him had fifty Turkes espied, and on ech side enclosed to haue taken, but he no moze stirred noz amended his pace for them, then if no man at all had pursued him. When they were clustered about him, he dzeu his sword, and sliced one of them so cleane in the middle, from the head downe to his backe, together with the Sable of the Horse also, that the residue for feare to be serued with the same sauce kept a-lose and durst not meddle. And after that this Frederick was drowned in a riuer, the Germanes retourned home agayne.

About this time there sprong vp great disoord and sedition among the Turkes. For Clizastlan the mightie Sultan of Iconium, when he dyed, left foure Sonnes behind him, Masute, Coppatine, Rucratine and Chaichosroes. Vnto Masute he bequeathed the pzincipallitie of Amasia, Ancira, Dorylæum and certaine other cities of Pontus. Vnto Coppatine, hee gaue Melitene, Cæsarea and the Colonie nowe called Taxara. Vnto Rucratine, hee allotted Amisa, Docea and the other Cities vpon the sea Coastes. Chaichosroes possessed Iconium, the regall seat of the Sultans, and with it Lycaonia and Pamphylia and all as far as Cottyanium. Coppatine being dead, Rucratine and Masute fell together by the eares and stroue for his Segniorie and enheritance. But Rucratine for that he was a wittie and skillfull man in martiall affaires, got the victorie and wyped Masute his nose cleane from all þe pzincipallitie of Coppatine their late Brother. And being now all in his iolytie and ruffe for this his good successe & victorie, & hauing a monthes mind to catch into his hands Iconium also, denounced open warre and sent his defiance vnto his Brother Chaichosroes whose Mother was a Christian, vnlesse he woulde resigne his Towne & geue place vnto him ouer all his Soueraigntie. Wherevpon Chaichosroes fled for his refuge and ayd to the emperour

## Of the Saracen Historie. 108

peroure Alexius Angelus as his father had done befoze him, albeit not with so good fortune and speede as his father, for hee was sent home agayne thence without his purpose. He was scantly come to Iconium, but hee was expelled by Rucratine and driuen to flee to Lebune king of Armenia: of whom he was frendlie receiued and courteously entertayned: but as for relæse and ayde he gotte none, wherefoze hee returned to Constantinople and there in poore estate passed out the rest of his dayes.

During the Emprye of this Alexius Angelus, the Venetians toke Constantinople and Angelus being thence dishonored, the Greekes in Asia created Theodorus Lascaris his Sonne in Law, Emperoure, who had vnder his Empire and obedience not onely Bythinia and the Regions along the Sea, but also extended the Lymittes of his Dominions very farre into the maine Lande, and had vnder him all from Caria and the riuer Meander Southwarde, to the Sea Galaticum and Cappadocia Northward, and constituted his Imperial Seate at Nice. Which so tickled and fretted Alexius, that he passing the Sea Egæum entred into Asia, and priuily went to Iachine the Sonne of Rucratine (being now Sultane) in pitifull plight & poore rayment: befoze whō he in suppliant wordes opened his state & fortune, & humbly besought him of aide & succor, to restore him to his lawfull Emprye and Crowne, vniustly by an vsurper detained & withhelden: not forgetting to put him in remembrance of the former friendship which afore time he had shewed & borne to him while he was in prosperitie, and further promised hym great Summes of money. Insomuch that Iachine taking compassion vpon him and moued greatly with his large promises, forthw<sup>th</sup> dispatched Ambassadors to Theodorus, threating warre and destruction vnto him, vnlesse he gaue place to his father in law & suffered him quietly to enioy his rightfull Diademe and Imperiall authoritie.

Emperours  
deposed by  
his Sonne  
in law.

Cg. ii.

After



## The thirde Booke

And therupon leuyng a great power, layd Siege to Antioch a Citie standing vpon the riuer Meander. Against whom Theodorus in person with an Armye in number farre inferiour and lesse then the Turkes, but in valiantnes and stomacke, equall or rather better, venturously marched: and within thre dayes passed the Streites of Mount Olympus, which being very long, do bound vpon Bithynia on the North, and Phrygia on the South. From thence passing the ryuer Cayster, vpon the .xj. day, sodainly and vnlooked for, gaue the charge and onset vpon the Turkes nothing suspecting his commyng, nor hearing any ynkling of his appoach. Whom in that streit place, where they could not bestirre themselves nor vse theyr hozes to any purpose he easely discomfited, and with his owne handes slew the Sultane, and tooke Alexius Prisoner, whom he kept with him very honourably.

After this, in the raigne of Emperour of Angelus Theodorus Anno D. 1240. the Asian Scythians inhabiting the playne Champayne Countrey betweene the Mountaines called Riphæi and the North Ocean (which people we said befoze were named Tartarians) swarming and yssuing out of their owne Territozies (like an innumerable sort of Grasshoppers) spoiled almost all Asia and inferred warres vpon the Turkes, of whose maners, and beginning we must speake a little, befoze wee proceede any further.

Tartarians.

This Nation was very populous, the lasse of all the Nations in the North, whom Homere called the iustest people in the world. But for that, they were men inhabiting a barraine and pooze Countrey, they were altogether ignoraunt and vnnurtured, and wiste not what delicate nyenes, tillage of ground and planting of Vines meant: but bled for their foode and sustentation, suche Hearbes as the Earth of it selfe without any tyllage or industry brought forth, and ate the bloude and fleshe of their

their Cattell, and such wyld Beastes and Birdes as they caught by hunting: their apparaile made without any art or curiositie, was the Skynnes and Felles of Beasts: and as for Gold, Syluer, Pearles and pzeious Stones, they esteemed as nothing: no solemne Playes, no ambitious gaie Shewes, no controuersies nor falling out was vsed among the, but lyued in quietnes among theselues without any maner of confetion, sedition or controuersie and therfore it may be said, y they enioyed the golden libertie and Age, without lawe, without the vse or knowledge of any eloquence or Sophisticall subtilities, beyng wholly led and gouerned by a naturall Iustice engrafted in the. Which Region lyke a most copious & large Wellspring, in proesse of time brought forth the innumerable Nations. But at this time, all this Region was diuided into seven Tribes, whose names were these: Tatar, Tangur, Cunat, Talair, Sonium, Mongli, and Tebeta: and were all vnder the Kinges of the Provinces next adioynng, to wit, the Georgians, and had in their possession (considering the great multitude of their men and Cattell) but a streit Region and small Countrey to inhabite. Among whom, there was at that tyme a certaine olde man of the Tribe of Tatar, named Cangio, a man of lowe byrthe and parentage but for profound witte and great opinion of sanctitie (thought to bee in him) very notable and conspicuous among them. This man in hys dreames beyng by visions and Oracles admonished, and shewing many myzacles (whereby the people were easely drawn to credite his wordes) egged and exhorted them to seeke libertie, to shake of the yoke of seruitude and subiection, and to seeke out some fruitfuller Soyle where they myght plante themselves and enlarge the boundes of theyr dominion. Wherevpon they making hym theyr King and Emperour, he ledde

C. iij.                      them.

The first beginner and founder of the Great Cham.



## The thirde Booke

them out of that poore plot and beggerly region, which affronteth Persia and the Caspia Sea (almost Islandwise) and is enuironed on ech side with the Scythian Ocean, and ioyneth vnto Asia by one onely Isthmus or narrow porcion of land lying betwene the two Seas, the which is compassed and enclosed with the highe and inaccessible Mountaines called Riphæi as it were with a Wall or Rampier: the waues of the Sea (sayeth Hayton the Armenian) going backe, and making way for them to passe betwene the Mountaines and the Sea. And therfore all those Scythians after ward, of y<sup>e</sup> Tribe wherof their first Empero<sup>r</sup> was descended, were called Tartarians: whose auncient descēt and beginning many (as besore we haue sayde of the Turkes) doe referre vnto the tenne Tribes of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason nor whereupon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into Media. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, ysuyng and in great companies departyng from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as muche to say as a most high and Soueraigne Emperour) toke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man ryght wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sendyng out Gebesabada with a buyge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streites, Sogdiana,

## Of the Saracen Historie. 110

Sogdiana, Bactrian, Oxus and the ryuer Sogdus (whiche is encreased w<sup>th</sup> many and the same great Spzinges flowing and running into it) wyntered at the foote of Mount Taurus, solacing himse<sup>l</sup>fe and enioying the fruitfulnessse of that region and suche boote as he had before taken. This Mount Taurus is the greatest Mountaine in all the wo<sup>r</sup>ld, whose ridge & top hanging still together without any partition, hath his beginning Westward nere the Sea Egzum and stretching a long to the Ocean Orientall, diuideth all Asia into two parts. This Hill is also called Caucasus. The next Spzing when the ground was new clothed & decked with the fresh attyre of greene grasse & pleasant floures, they discamped from the foote of Caucasus, & like an innumerable sort of Sheepe, mounted to the toppe of the Mountaines, invading the Countreies vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limitte of their Emppye. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull sumptuous and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasauntest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Palace and Seate Royall. Afterward, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lientenantes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer his Armys, choosing them to such as were eyther his brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went Northwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, wonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subiection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

Cambalu a  
noble citie  
of India.

After



## The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, w<sup>th</sup> incredible celeritie they overcame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard vpon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and hono<sup>r</sup> exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on every side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable soyle of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Provinces, Cities, Houses, lat Farms and Tenements amonge his soldiers and people, and receined the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Therefore as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had suddenly and secretly surprised Alexandria, a citie standing nere the Straits now

of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason no<sup>r</sup> wherevpon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into Media. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, passing and in great companies departyng from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as muche to say as a most high and Sovereigne Emperour) toke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man ryght wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sendyng out Gebelabada with a hygge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streides, Sogdiana,

## Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needes must) that great dearth and scarcitie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefore beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet Pource and Storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe sem-  
Peace  
bringeth  
plentie.

blable, he (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince among people) undertooke to procure & cause so much of the husbanded ground as was neither fit to beare corne nor good to plant vines, to be touned by and tyllid: and manured so much thereof, as he thought woulde be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his more liberalitie and bounty he had retained and taken into his  
Countreyes vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limitte of their Emppye. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull sumptuous and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasantest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Palace and Seate Royall. Afterward, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lientenauntes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer his Armyes, choosing thereto such as were eyther his brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went Northwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, wonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subjection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

After



## The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, w<sup>th</sup> incredible celeritie they overcame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard vpon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and hono<sup>r</sup> exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on euery side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable soyle of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Prouinces, Cities, Houses, sat Farmes and Tenements amonge his soldiers and people, and receiued the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Wherefoze as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had sodainly and forcible surprised Alexandria, a citie standing nere y<sup>e</sup> Streights now called the Iron Gates: the Imperiall Sultane of the Turkes greatly terrified and dismayd with this sodayne irruption of a new and most fierce people and fearing lest if he should be diuinen and enforced to enter into Warres with the Tartarians, his olde Enemies the Romanes would be readie to set on him behind at his backe, sent his Ambassadors with full authoritie and commission to the Emperour, to confirme and strike an vnitie and peace betwene them: which thing the Emperoure as beinge encumbred with European Warres) was very glad of, and willinglye therevnto condescended, because the Turkes should be as a strong Rampier and Wall in Asia for him, against the innasion of the Tartarians. This League therfoze with the Turkes was of al handes gladly embraced, and to the Greekish Empire most conductible. For whereas men (being so long time afflicted w<sup>th</sup> the lamentable calamities of long Warres) had neither occupied tillage, no<sup>r</sup> bred by Cattayle, it fell out in th<sup>e</sup> end (as

## Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needes must) that great dearth and scarcitie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefore beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet fource and Storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe semblable, he (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince among people) undertooke to procure & cause so much of the vnbusbanded ground as was neither fit to beare corne nor good to plant Vines, to be sowed by and tilled: and manured so much thereof, as he thought woulde be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his mere liberalitie and bountifull goodnesse he had retayned and taken into his charge to keepe and see cherished, that is to witt, the poore, diseased, & impotent people, vnto whom he assigned houses and Hospitales, and appointed also certaine Granars and ouerscers such as were trained by & had the skill of Tillage and Vine planting. Which officers layed by yerele in his Storehouses and Granars great prouision and store of the ouerplus of the corne. He also had abundantly stored himselfe with Oren, Wyne, Hozles, Sheep Swine and with diuers kindes of tame Byrdes, by whom he yerele receiued great encrease and profyte. This not onely did he himselfe, but also by his example, occasioned others of the Peeres and Nobility, his Cousins and Allies to doe the lyke, so that enery one, hauinge of his owne competentlie wherewith to liue, the Communalitie should not be oppressed, nor the inferiour lost by force and extorsion of the richer impouerished, with any intolerable Tributes, Assesments and Paymentes.

Peace  
bringeth  
plentie.

The good  
example of  
the Prince  
doth muche  
good in a  
Reame.



## The thirde Booke

By this means, the Romane weale publique was restored and cleane purged from all notable exactions, and by bringing pyllages in somuch that within fewe yeres space, euery man had his Barnes and Cellers full stozed and stuffed with Cozne and Wine: and such encrease of cattel Hens and other homish Foules, that the high waies and streets, Stables and Sheepe cotes, Houses and Gardens were vneith hable to holde them.

**A** blessed  
plentie of al  
things caus-  
ed throughe  
peace and  
good go-  
uerment.

This golden state and blessed felicitie was hereby also the more augmented, so that the Turkes were within themselves merueilouslie pinched and afflicted with great hunger, dearth and penurie of Cozne, whereby it came to passe, that all their Golde, Syluer, Iuelles and precious Jewels throughe this godlye forecaste and diuine wisdom of the Emperour, came into the hands and possession of the Romanes, so that then might a man haue seene them faine to choppe and chaunge their rich Jewels for a little bread Cozne, to sustaine themselves withall: and euery Byrde, Dre, Cow or Kidde was solde at an exceeding price. All the wayes were pestered full of Turkysh Women and Childzen of the Turkish Nation cominge to and going from the Romane Provinces.

**A** Crowne  
Imperiall  
for the Em-  
peresse bought  
with the  
money that  
was had of  
the Turkes  
for Egges  
in the time  
of dearth.

The Emperesse also of the ouerplus of Hennes egges (so that they were not possible to be all spent in her house and Famylie) at that time solde at a very high price daylye to the Turkes, had got together in short space such an incredible Masse of Money as was sufficient to pay for a most rich Crowne of Coultre set full of orient Pearles and precious Stones, whiche for that cause the Emperours called and feared Ouata, because it was bought with Egge Money: so in short time the Emperour enriched himself and all his Subiectes with Wealth exceedinglie.

During this while, the Tartarians vnder the leadinge of their Capitaine Baydo, marching and making impres-  
sions into the frontiers of the Turkishe countreys, the  
Sultan

## Of the Saracen Historie. 112

Sultan of Iconium, leuyng as great a power as hee was able of all Nations (so; he had then with him of Greekes and Latines, that is to wit, of Italians, Germanes and Frenchmen, two Cohortes or Bands. Ouer the Greekish band was Capitaine one John Liutnada a Cyprian bozne (or as some say, one Paleologus) who earst had revolted from the Emperoure: and ouer the Latines was Boniface Moline one of the nobilitie of Venice) euerie man being bzaue in apparell & well apointed w<sup>th</sup> Venons and flages of their owne Armes. With these couragious personages, marching against the Tartarians, he met w<sup>th</sup> them in a place nere to the Citie Arscor in the great Armenia called Cosdrach. The Tartarians so sone as the espied this straung Army apparailled contrarie to the guise and fashion of that countrey, supposiing some greater ayd and succour had bene sent vnto them, were merueilously dismayd & astonied, and if one of y<sup>e</sup> Sultane his kinsmen, so; an olde gruge, had not in the beginning of the battaile fled vnto their side w<sup>th</sup> a great crew of pertakers, thei wold haue tourned their backs and fled. But the occasion thereof was the cause at that time of the Turkes ruine and ouerthrow, & afterward almost brought al their kingdom & principalltye in subiection to y<sup>e</sup> Tartarians. For y<sup>e</sup> Tartarians obtaining the vpperhand & victorie in this conflict, neglected not the oportunitie & good chaunce that Fortune now offered them, but passed y<sup>e</sup> riuer Euphrates and subdued Syria as far as Palestina & Arabia. After after thei had assessed yeerely tributes vpon y<sup>e</sup> remnaunts of y<sup>e</sup> Syrians, Arabians, & Phænicians, they laded themselves w<sup>th</sup> many rich booties & spoiles, & returned againe into y<sup>e</sup> orient. But the next yeere folowing, thei passing Euphrates againe tooke their way southwarde into Cappadocia, & went as far as the riuer Thermoodon: and taking Iconium the chiefe Citie that belenged to the Turkes, Azatine the Sultane beyng banished with his Brother

Whit

Melecke



# III The thirde Booke 30

Pollice in  
Princes.

Melecke fled for succour to the Emperour Michael Pal-  
eologus, whom not long before (in like case and respect  
fleeing vnto him for comforte and aide) he had pleased  
honorably and entertained with all pointes of princely  
curtesie. And putting him in remembrance of his for-  
mer friendship shewed vnto him in his neede & distresse,  
and unfolding before him the pitifull plight of thys his  
present state and calamitie, instantly requested him, ey-  
ther to ayde him against his Capitall foes the Tartari-  
ans, or else to assigne him some peece of ground or odde  
corner (as it were a colonie) where he & his people might  
repose themselves in some more ease and securitie: for  
he had brought with him his Wives and Children and  
many Seruautes, with much wealth and riches. The  
Emperour, for that he was on euery side encombrd and  
trapped in Warres, would in no wise diminishe any  
part of his own power, and as for the assignement of any  
part of his Countrey, to such a great Potentate as had  
beene a mightie Monarch and Prince ouer many Pro-  
uinces, and also from his tender age euer brought vp in  
Princely pompe and stately preheminance, he iudged a  
thing very dangerous. For he considered, and wisely  
imagined that the Lordes and nobilitie which were vnder  
his rule and authoritie, would seeke their Lord and  
Maister where euer he should be, and that his people be-  
ing scattered and dispersed in diuers places, like the wan-  
dering Planetes in the night, would flocke together and  
concurr to him that goeth before them with a Linke and  
leadeth the way. So would they come running to the  
King, and so perchance in the ende, worke vnto the Ro-  
manes some mycke woe and disturbaunce. And therefore  
fooding him out with faire wordes and noseling hym in  
good hope, he kept him at a doubtfull staie, without ge-  
uing any resolute answer to his requestes. Azatine,  
for that his Parentes were Christians and he himselfe  
also

## Of the Saracen Historie. 113

also Christened & washed in the Sacramēt of holy Baptisme in his infancie, resozted dayly with the Emperour to Sermons and hard y<sup>e</sup> holy Scriptures, dayly preached and remained so long with the Emperour, till at length by the meanes & helpe of the Europia Scythians, he made an escape and fled with his Sun Melecke out of y<sup>e</sup> towne Aenum and passed the ryuer Ister and within a while after dyed, and Melecke by Sea passed into Asia to y<sup>e</sup> Tartarians, and of them obtained the Kingdome of the Turkish Nation, as his fathers enheritance. But a certayne Duke named Amuric with a Warlike power him encountered and overthrew, so that he was faine to fle vnto Heraclea, a Citie of Pontus: and win a while after again returning to his natie Cuntry & recovering his fathers kingdome, win short space was trayterously murdered.

Thus was the Turkeish Empire subuerted and brought to finall rughe, and from a State of well ordered discipline and magnificence, fell to vtter decay and extreeme confussion: the cause whereof was, for that, not onely the Nobilitie and higher Powers dyuided the Kingdome into many sections and partes, but many also of baser degre and obscurer Parentage, (associatynge vnto them the rascall Bezauntes and bulgar sort) practised pylfering and robberie, caryng nothing with the but their Bowe and Quiver of Arrowes: and taking by their Robbst in the Streites of the Mountaines, made many roades into the Countreys about, and the Cities belonging to the Romane Empire. For it happened a little before, that the garrisons defending the Castles & fortresses of the Emppye, for want of payment of their fees, & yeerely stipendes at the Emperours handes, woulde serue no longer but departed thence, whych being at the first (as a thing of small waight and moment) neglected, was in the ende the cause, that the Romane Emppye sustained and incurred most greuous daungers and calamities. For



## The thirde Booke

When the Turkes were displaced and expelled by the Tartarians, they displaced and expelled the Greekes, and loke howe weake they were in comparison of the Tartarians, so stronge were they against the Greekes: insomuch that at length the matter was decided with open warre and dent of sword. For the Emperour understanding that a great power of Turkes were by in Paphlagonia, leuyed a very competent Armye, to represse and (as much as might be) to inhibitte their violent insolencie, least if they shoulde bee still suffered impunely to range & spoyle without resistance, it might breed further danger and inconvenience. And therfore when hee had assembled his power together, he sent the same being well appointed against them, who encountering the Turkes, had of them the victorie. But whilst they disorderly and oversarre in chase beyond the ryver pursued them, they fell into the bandes of an Ambushe which the Turkes might before had there layd for them. By meanes whereof they being on th'one side beset with an Host of fresh Souldiours well appointed in battle aray, and on th'other side pent in and enclosed with the ryver, they were slaine almost every man. The Turkes triumphing for thys successe and victorie, enroaded after ward within the Roman Territozies, and came as farre as the ryver Sangarius, and subiugated vnder their obesaunce, all from the Pontique Sea and Galatia to the Sea Lycium and Carium and the ryver of Eurymedon.

Mamalukca.

At this time also, the Mamalukes (which word by interpretation signifieth Seruauntes or Slaves) obtained the Kingdome in Egypt, and aduanced the limittes of theyr Emppye into Aphyrica & Lybia as farre as Gades: and subdued Phœnicia and Syria and all the Countrey loyning vpon the Sea coastes.

Howe, how this came to passe, we wyll declare. The Caliphes

Caliphes and all the Saracenes, lulled in ease and noleled in effeminate nycenesse, (engendred by the delicious and tender allurements of that pleasaunt Clime and region) became so slouthfull, that althoughe they possessed a most wealthy and fertile kingdome, yet were they easie to bee vanquished and subdued by any: and the Caliphes beýng all geuen to lust, Sensualitie and pleasures, tooke no care to any thing, neyther attempted any enterpryses themselues, but executed and administred all their Affaires by a Vicegerente which was called an Admirall. Therefore when as Baldwin King of Hierusalem had made þe Kingdome of Egypt tributarie vnto him (which tribute Almericke his brother and Successour claymed as due and payable vnto him, and the Egyptians flatly denyng the same;) Almericke with an Army entred into Egypt and in the deserte vanquished in battayle Dargan the Admirall of the Kingdome wyth all his power, and compelled him to flye for his saugarde into the Citie Bilbis. This was about that time of the yere, whē the ryuer Nile, by course had his yerelely incremente and ouerflowed his Bankes, whose Dammes and Scholles þe Egyptians of purpose bzake dolone, because they would stoppe Almericke from further pursuite and victoýe: wherefoze laden wyth spoyle and ryche bootyes of hys enemyes hee retýzed backe agayne into hys owne Countrey and Kingdome, for feare least hee wyth hys whole Host if they had longer taryed, should haue bene dýoloned and swallowed by with the mercyclesse water.

Thys ouerthrow and aduerse fortune of Dargan, gane occasion to Sanar (whom the same Dargan a lyttle before perforce had displaced and put out of the office and dignitie of Admirallship, and caused to flye for succour to the Arabians, hys Tribe fellowes) to go to Norandine the Sonne of Sanguin þe most mighty King of Damasco, by him to be shýowed from the malice of hys aduersary.

And



## The thirde Booke

And of him desired ayde against Dargan his enemye, being now already wearied and brought into the hatred & displeasure of all his People, and by promise of great rewardes, he obtained aide of Norandine, the rather because Norandine hoped (if his Souldiours might once sett foote into Egypt) hee might easilie subdue and bringe the Kingdome into his owne subiection. Whereupon King Norandine furnished him with ayd and munition.ouer whom he appointed as Capitaine, the chiefe Master of his Chennalrie, named Syracene, a man industrious and valyaunt, and one that was aboue his habilitie lyberall, ambitious of honour and desirous of glorie, but withall, as good and skilfull a Warriour as the best, whom for his great largesse and franknesse, his Souldiours loued most entyrelie: by byrth he was an obscure fellowe and of parentage nothing worshipfull.

With these aydes, did Sanar boldly invade Egypt, at whose coming Dargan being merueilously abashed, desired ayde of the King of Hierusalem, couenauntinge and firmly promysing, inuolablly to obserue a perpetuall League with hym, condicionally that he woulde nowe at this pinch helpe him. But befoze his Ambassadors were returned with any answer, he was by one of his owne men shott through the Body with an Arrow, whereof he immediatly dyed, hauing now already gotten the upper hande of Sanar and the Turkes at one entier Battaille. Whereby Sanar (as wel as though he had bene the victour indeede, obtained his purpose, and put all his kinssolkes and famplier Fréendes to death.

The Caliph all this while as though he had bene lulled in a sound sleepe, gaue himselfe onely to voluptuousenes, ease and ryot. For he cared not who ruled the roste, nor who executed the affaires of the common wealth so that he might haue y name and be called the Supreme Lord and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 115

and Governour. But Syracon took the Citie Bilbis, sometime named Pelusium and kept it to his owne vse. Wherewith Sanar was so tickled, that hee renewed the League, which Dargan befoze made with Almerick: and so Almerick going into Egypt with an Armye and ioyning in one with the power of Sanar, layed Siege to the Citie Bilbis and compelled Syracon to surrender both himselfe and the Citie. After his departure thence, he went to the Caliph of Babilon (foz Noradine being occupied in other Warres whiche he had then in hande with the Christians in Syria, could not intende any matters of Egypt) and recompting vnto him the wealth and fertilitie of Egypt, with the tender nicenes and weake effeminacie of the people, moued him to take that Warre in hande. Whereunto the Caliph was easie to be perswaded, because he ment so to doe also, foz a grudge and hatred that hee boze to his aduersarie. And leyuig a great power of Arabians, Persians and Turkes which obeyed the Babylonian Bishop as their head, and takinge as much victuall with them as would serue foz many dayes because of the inhabitable Wildernesse that is betwene Syria and Egypt, took his voyage againe into Egypt.

Wherof hearing Almerick, marcheth against him w<sup>th</sup> al his power. Both their Armies met in the Wildernesse, where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudye conflict, with doubtful fortune on either party. But in the end, Syracon fledde and with the remnaunt of his Host, came to Alexandria, whiche Citie Almerick after longe Siege took by surrendrie: and Syracon with his company got him to Damasco, & Almerick retourned home into his owne Kingdome.

But within a while after, suspecting either that Sanar secretlie practized and went about to enter in league with Norandine against him, or els feigninge a matter (or rather picking a quarell) foz a desire that he had to wyne



## The thirde Booke

That Realme and Countrey, estones invaded Egypt and  
take by force the Citie Bilbis, thewinge much crueltie  
with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing ney-  
ther age nor sex. Wherfore Sanar desired ayde of No-  
randine, & upon promise of great summes of money, so  
long staid and repelled the impetuous course of Alme-  
rick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose  
comming when Almerick had understandinge, he raised  
his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherfore Syra-  
con who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men  
finding Egypt without any foynne ayde or succour mar-  
ched straight to cayer the chiefe & royal Citie of the whole  
realme, wher he found Sanar comming out to parle and confer

rentage nothing woorthfull.

With these aydes, did Sanar boldly invade Egypt, at  
whose comming Dargan being merueilously abashed, de-  
sired ayde of the King of Hierusalem, couenauntinge and  
firmely promysing, inuiolable to obserue a perpetuall  
League with hym, condicionally that he woulde nowe at  
this pinch helpe him. But befoze his Ambassadors were  
retourned with any answer, he was by one of his owne  
men shot through the Body with an Arrow, whereof he  
immediatly dyed, hauing now already gotten the upper  
hande of Sanar and the Turkes at one entier Battaille.  
Wherby Sanar (as wel as though he had bene the victour  
indeede, obtayned his purpose, and put all his kinfolkes  
and famplier Frændes to death.

The Caliph all this while as though he had bene lulled  
in a sound slepe, gaue himselfe onely to voluptuousenes,  
ease and riot. For he cared not who ruled the roste, nor  
who executed the affaires of the common wealth so that  
he might haue y name and be called the Supreme Lord  
and

## Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfore that the people  
byed and bozne in the Southen quarters were both a  
ter and also flouter for the warres then the Sou  
therne bozne were, entred into League with certayne  
people inhabiting about Mazotis and Pontus, called Cir  
cassians (of Plinie and olde writers, Zigians) and bartered  
with them for an entercourse of Merchandise betwene  
them & him, namely that they should serue him of Horses  
and young Striplinges at a certaine price. Who beyng  
brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned vp in  
seates of chivalrie and warlike discipline, should do no  
thing but handsomely practise the handling of their we  
pons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres  
and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities

he ment to doe afoze, for a grudge and hatred that he  
boze to his aduersarie. And leuying a great power of A  
rabians, Persians and Turkes which obeyed the Babylo  
nian Bishop as their head, and takinge as much victuall  
with them as would serue for many dayes because of the  
inhabitable Wilbernesse that is betwene Syria and E  
gypt, toke his voyage againe into Egypt.

Wherof hearing Almerick, marcheth against him to al  
his power. Both their Armies met in the Wilbernesse,  
where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudye  
conflict, with doubtful fortune on either party. But in the  
end, Syracon fledde and with the remnaunt of his Host,  
came to Alexandria, whiche Citie Almerick after longe  
Siege toke by surrendrie: and Syracon with his com  
pany got him to Damasco, & Almerick returned home  
into his owne Kingdome.

But within a while after, suspecting either that Sanar  
secretlie practized and went about to enter in league with  
Norandine against him, or els feigninge a matter (or ra  
ther picking a quarell) for a desire that he had to wyne  
that



## The thirde Booke

that Realme and Countrey, eftsones invaded Egypt and took by force the Citie Bilbis, shewing much crueltie with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing neither age nor sex. Wherefore Sanar desired ayde of Norandine, & upon promise of great Summes of money, so long staied and repressed the impetuous course of Almerick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose coming when Almerick had vnderstandinge, he raised his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherefore Syracon who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men finding Egypt without any foine ayde or succour marched straight to Cayr the chiefe & royal Citie of the whole realme, and met Sanar coming out to parle and confer with him. And when he had got the possession of the Citie he went to do his dutie and exhibit honour to the Caliph, of whom hee was created Admirall of the Lande, which dignitie he enjoyed a yere and then died: leauinge behinde him for his Successoure Saladine his Brother Sonne, a man of a surpassing and polytique wit, stout, valyaunt, and of nature most franck and lyberall. Who immediatlie murdered the Caliph with all his bloude and progenie, to th'intent he might alone haue both the Authorities and romes. Thus was that most wealthy Kingdome brought vnder the obedience of the Turkes in the yere of our Loyde. 1150.

Egypt when  
it first came  
into the pos-  
session of the  
Turkes.

Afterward Saladine (as he was a man verie prudent and wise) perceiuing how tenderlie and effeminatly the Egyptians liued, insomuch that when any inuasion of fo-  
reigne hostelitie approached or were like to grow, & kings  
were ever glad and faine to craue foreygne ayde to sup-  
port and helpe them, determined with himselfe to insti-  
tute some kinde or order of warfare and to traine by a  
troupe of such souldiours as should be hable at al brynts  
and assaies to be as a rampire, or stronge Bulwarke to the  
the

## Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfore that the people  
bzed and bozne in the Southen quarters were both a p-  
ter and also stouter for the Warres then the Sou-  
therne bozne were, entred into League with certayne  
people inhabiting about Mazotis and Pontus, called Cir-  
cassians (of Plinie and olde wryters, Zigians) and bartered  
with them for an entercourse of Merchandise betwene  
them & him, namely that they should serue him of Boyes  
and young Striplinges at a certaine price. Who beyng  
brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned vp in  
seates of chieualrie and warlike discipline, should do no-  
thing but handsomely practise the handling of their we-  
pons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres  
and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities  
bellicall. For the Zigians are a people of nature very  
fierce, accustomed euen from the Cradle to abide all ma-  
ner of labour, hardnes and trauell, inhabitinge that parte  
of Pontus and Meotis which is about the riuer Phasis  
which riuer is the bounder and miere of Colchis, and the  
mouth of Tanais, which Countrey or region containeth  
welneere 500. myles.

These people dwell not in Cities and Townes, but  
wander and are disperced here and there without any  
certayne habitation from Village to Village. Christi-  
ans they are by their profession and religion, albeit they  
use many rites vnyke vnto ours: their Infants as soon  
as they are bozne (yea though it be in the middest of win-  
ter) they cary vnto a riuer and there washe them. They  
are for the moste part faire of complexion and of comely  
 stature, the countrey is fenney and full of reedes, whereof  
they doo make Houelles and Cotages to dwell in, they  
be at continuall Warres with the Tartarians and other  
Nacions aboute them.

The Nobles and Gentlemen amonge them neuer goe  
but in Armour and Coates of Fence, and alwayes ryde

It is

on

These peo-  
ple were als-  
ter called  
Mamalukes.



## The thirde Booke

on barbed horses, but the common sort of them are not allowed to haue any: for them, they compell to iudge and mople about their tyllage and husbandry. They haue neither King nor Lorde ouer them nor any written lawes, neither haue they any skill of learning and liberall Sciences, but decide all matters and controuersies arising among them, either at the Swordes point, or else by mediation of friends. They entertaine Straungers and vse the very curteously, they lyue by pylfery and snatchyng, or else by such wyld Beastes as they take in hunting. Vnto these therfore did Saladine p[er]ely send his Marchauntes and Factours, to coape wyth them as well for their Youngmen which they had taken in warres, as also to buye the poore mennes Sonnes bozne there, and to bryng them vnto him into Egypt. And of them he instituted an order of valiaunt Warriours, which afterwarde were called Mamalukes (that is to say Slanes) by whose helpe and meanes after the death of Noradine, he won Damasco, Syria, and Iewrye, expulsiug and bryngyng out thence the Christians, wyth the most part of Africa. So that afterwarde there were among the Turkes thre mighty Dyncees, of whom, one ruled ouer Persia, another ouer Cappadocia with the p[ro]uinces nere thereabout, and the thirde ouer Egypt and Syria. And the progenie and ligne of this Saladine raygned in Egypt, for the space of .150. yeres, and onely his Successors, Kings of Egypt continued still vnbauquished of the Tartarians, by the onely valiaunce and benefite of this warlike Crewe and league that they had with the Zigiens. For as often as the Tartarians inferred warres vpon them, the Zigiens likewise on the other side inuaded and spoyled the frontiers of the Tartarians: and the Mamalukes both in fortitude and also in skill of partiall Cheualry farre surmounted the Tartarians. But after that the right lygne and stocke of Saladine was cleane extinct and woyme out,

and

# Of the Saracen Historie. 117

and no Legitimate or lawfull Heire to succede in the Crowne left, all the puyssaunce and power of the Realme consisted onely in these Mamalukes, who obseruing the custome and maner of the Zygians, (as though they onely were noble, and all the Egyptians had ben but Rascalls and Underlings) woulde suffer none in all Egypt beside themselves to haue either Horse or Harnesse. And they created one of their own company whose name was Peeperis, their King, obseruing this order for euer after, that the Sonne should not succede his father in the Crowne and regall Diademe neyther that any moze accompte shoulde be made of the bloude Royall, then of any others: but that the Kings Childe (as well as the other Slaves which were yarely brought thither) should be instructed and trained to handle their weapons & to do other feates of Cheualry. Neyther mought any of them clayme to enjoy his fathers enheritaunce as in the righte of any descende, neyther loke to be aduanced, and preferred to any commoditie or honour; vnlesse his desertes and seruyce shoulde be thought well worthy the same: but what euery one woulde seeke to haue, that must be atchieue and acqwyre by hys owne valiauntnesse and industrie. The Kingdome of Egypt was translated from the Stocke and Progenie of Saladine to the Mamalukes in the yere after the Natyuitie of Christ. 1300. And the Mamalukes raigned there till the yere. 1517. in whiche yere they were vanquished and vtterly defaced by Selim, late Emperour of Turkes.

None there had preferment, but such as well deserved.

Mamalukes cleane destroyed by Selime the great Turke. 1517.

Saladine thus being in possession of the Crowne and Kingdome of Egypt, and the Caliphe thereof nowe murdered and made oute of the waye, there was left but one onely Caliphe amonge the Saracens, whose Pontificall Sea was at Bagadet, and hee was honoured and reuerenced of the Turkes and Saracenes as though hee had beene some God. But Haloon

I. iij.

Lieuten.



## The thirde Booke

Lieutenannt and chiefe Captaine vnder the Emperour of Tartarians hym ouercame and tooke Prisoner in the yeere of our Lozde God. 1258. and caused Mustacene Munibila (who at that tyme had that office and dignitie, among the buyge and inestimable heapes of treasure and ryches which he had hooded vp and miserably scraped together) to bee samysed. After this, almost 200. yeeres space the Saracenes had no high Bysshoppe, till at length in Persia the lynage and offspinge of Mahomette beganne againe to raygne in the yeere. 1480. wherbye how and by what sort it came to passe, resteth heere to be shewed and described.

There was a certayne Prince among the Persians, Lozde of a Towne called Ardenel, and his name was Sophi who greatly glozied, and boze himselfe very loftie and high so that he was as he saide descended of the race and Pedagretue of Ali the Sonne in lawe of Mahomette by Musa Cazine hys Nephew, of whom we spake in the first Booke. This felowe nowte sayng the Babylonian Caliphe to bee slayne, and the contrarie faction which the Turkes maynteyned and kept to bee depzessed and tryumphed ouer by the Tartarians, beganne frankly and boldly to vtter hys mynde and oppynion concernyng Religion. And because Hoceme the Sonne of Ali from whom he made his aunnt to bee lineally descended, had. xij. Sonnes, therfore he willing to geue some difference and token wherby his Sectaries might be discerned and knowen from all others, commaunded and ordeyned that so many as woulde embrace and folowe hys Loze and Doctrine shoulde weare a purple Rybon or Labell hanging downe from theyr wearetheyles which all Turkes weare aswel as they vpon their heades, called Tulibante, and the same in the middle to bee reyled vp into. xij. toppes or heigthes wythoute the Tulibante.

After

## Of the Saracen Historie. 118

After he was deade, his sonne Guines succeeded in  
hys rourne, who for learning and sanctitie gotte such  
estimation and fame throughout the whole Orient, that  
the most mightie Emperoure of the Parthians, named  
Tamburlane (euen he which tooke Barazete the King of  
Turkes Prisoner) leading his Army & passing through  
Persia, dayned to tourne out of his way and to visite as  
a man of most holy life and vnspotted sanctitie. At the re-  
quest of which Guines, the same Tamburlane freely de-  
liuered out of hys captiuitie. xxx. M. Prisoners which he  
had taken in hys Warres and as then had with him in  
his Campe: whom after ward Guines instructed and train-  
ed by in hys Sect and discipline, whose seruice and helpe  
Secaidar his Sonne in his warres after ward bled. For  
he after the death of his father Guines, reposing his spe-  
ciall trust & chiefe strength in them, warred vpon the  
Georgians a people of Scythia being Christians border-  
ing vpon his Countreyes, and by their help afflicted and  
put them to many foyles, ouerthrowes, and distresses.

There raygned in Persia a certayne Turke named  
Mirza Geunda, who warred wyth Hacembecke  
(whom some doe call Assambey) King of the greater  
Armenia which is of them called Diarbeck, being  
also a Turke aswell as hee: in whiche Warres A-  
cembeck gotte the vpperhande, and slew his ene-  
mye Mirza in Battayle, and hauing wonne Per-  
sia, because hee was but of a base stocke and obscure  
familie and without Kinsmen and Allies, hee meant  
to make and establishe the state of hys Kingdome the  
surer by linking in affinitie with some puyssaunt house  
and thereupon gaue hys daughter which he begat vpon  
hys wife the Emperour of Trapezunte hys daugh-  
ter (who was a Christian) in marriage vnto Secaidar.  
After the deathe of Hacembecke, succeeded Iacob Beg,  
whych word signifieth a Lorde.

Beg in the  
Turkishe  
language  
signifieth a  
Lorde.

This



## The thirde Booke

This Iacob feaſinge the great power of his Brother in lawe Secaidar (partlye gotten by his new Sect, and partlye by his Warres with the Georgians) priuely ſent ayd to his Enemies, and cauſed him to be ſlaine. But his two ſonnes Iſmahel and Solyman, he committed in charge to one of his familyer and aſſured Freendes to carye and conueyghe a farrre of, vnto Manſor Deporna, Conſtable of the Citie of Siracia: willing and ſtreightlie charging him to keepe them in ſure warde and cuſtodie within the ſtrong Caſtell of Zalgah, which ſtandeth vppon a high and inaccessible Rock, till ſuch time as by expreſſe certificate he ſhould otherwiſe countremaunde him. But Manſor taking remoyſe and pitie on them, for the honoz of Ali (of whoſe auncient blood they were deriued) kepte them like Princes and bleſed them moſt honourable, cauſing them to be trained vp and inſtructed in learninge with his owne Childzen.

*An example  
of pitie to-  
ward them  
that were fa-  
therleſſe.*

And after certaine yeres, falling into a greuous ſickneſſe and maladie, inſomuch that he ſaw himſelfe not like any longer to liue, and feaſing leaſt his Sonne Caceme beinge a younge man, woulde after the death of him, deliuer theſe young Orphans and fatherleſſe Childzen to Rocene (which raigned after his Father Iacob) furniſhed them with money, Horſe and Guides needfull for their iourney, and ſent them home againe to their Mother and Kinſfolkes.

Theſe Orphans beinge enſormed of their ſtate and noble byrth, and by what meanes they had bene preſerued (which thing beſore that preſent thei knew nothinge of) their Kinſmen, Adherents and fauozers, for their fathers ſake flocking in from euery part vnto them. Iſmael the elder of the twaine, whoſe wit was both more pregnant and deeper then his Brothers, (bz alone therto by deſtiny & naturall zeale) openlie beſore his friends proteſted that he would neuer reſt, till he had reuenged the murder and  
death

## Of the Saracen Historie. 119

death of his father, and after he had made certaine roades into the Marches and Provinces of the Georgians (his power also daylie increasing) he named himself Protector of Ali his doctrine and defendour of all his authoritties; and therewithall denounced open Warre vpon Roccene King of Persia and all his pertakers. And because he had six Brothers, which contended with him for the succession of the Crowne, he set to him and at the last, saving only Marabeck, and a few of his kindred.

This Marabeck fledde to Solymann Prince of Turks, and requested his ayde, wherupon ensued much trouble and great Warres betwene the Othomannians and Sophians. But before he had obtained any ayde of the Turkes to succour him, Ismael had wonne not onely all Persia, but also achieved and won many notable victories of the Tartarians. And thus the Saracenes expelling the Turkes, began agayne to raigne in Persia, in the yere after the natiuitie of our Saviour Christe 1500. and there do raigne tyll this day.

The Kinges  
of Persia be  
right sara-  
cenes.

And the Turkes with all their powers together hauing conquered all the Romane Provinces in Asia as farre as the Sea, distributed and cast lottes for the same among themselves, in which distribution and Lotterie, the maigne countrey of Phrygia as far as Philadelphia, and nere to Antioch (situate vpon the riuer Meander) fell vnto Carman Alisur, whereof the Countrey was afterwarde named Caramania. All from thence to Smyrna and the inner Coast of Ionia, happened vnto one Sarcane.

Magnesia, Priene and Ephesus were allotted vnto Sasan. From Lydia and Etolia to Mysia situate by Hellespont, Calames and his Sonne Cerasus enioyed. From the riuer Sangar to Paphlagonia, the Sonnes of Armurius parted among them. All within Olympus and the whole Countrey of Bythinia, fell vnto Atman, other

lik

wise



# The thirde Booke

holse named Othoman, (of whose race the Emperours of  
Turkes which euer since and now at this day raighe in  
Turkys are lineally descended) in the yere of our salua-  
tion 1300. || Albert the firste of that name, descended of  
the house of Austrich being then Cesar and Emperour  
of the tour of Germanie. And from this Othoman,  
Laonicus Chalcondyla an Athenian, Pau-  
lus Hicetus and other both Greeke and  
Latine Cartographers do beginne  
their histories: wherfore to auoyd  
tediousnes, least after Homere,  
wee should seeme to write  
an other Ilias, here we  
make an ende.

## FINIS.

*His laste table a translation of Lucio*

... conquered all the Roman provinces in Asia  
there is the sea, distributed the land lotter for the same  
among themselves in such distribution and allotment  
the maritime countries of Phrygia as far as the Hellespont  
and there is a narrow strait, which is the Hellespont  
left to the Romans, which is the Hellespont  
in the narrow strait, which is the Hellespont  
and the narrow strait of Hellespont, which is the Hellespont

... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont  
... the Hellespont, which is the Hellespont

A

120

**A Summarie or breefe Chronicle of Saracens and Turkes,**  
continued from the birthe of Mahomet, their first peenish Prophet and Founder, till this present yeere.

1575



Mahomet the Sonne of Abedela and Emma, of the ligne of Ismael, was bozne at Itrape in Arabia, in the time that Maurice was Emperoure and Gregory the first, Pope of Rome.

Mahomet patched together his Alcorane, (a Booke containing his pestilent doctrine & grosse opinions) through instruction and procurement of two hereticall monks, Iohn of Antioch and Sergius of Italy. And therewith seducing the light brayned Arabians and other sicke minded people of Asia, called them Saracens.

At the age of xl. yeres he dyed, and was buried in Mecha a Citie of Persia.

Hierusalem after it had bene besieged by the Saracens the full space of two yeres, was taken and spoiled.

All Syria ouerrunne and wasted by the Saracenes.

The Saracenes revolted from the Emperoure of Romanes.

Antioch destroyed by Saracenes, Damascus taken, Phœnicia inuaded, and Egypt subdued.

The Saracenes wanne the greatest part of Africa and layed it to their Empyre.

The moste Noble Ile of Rhodes inuaded by the Saracenes and taken: out of whiche they carped awaye with them great abundance of Golde, and a Noble Image of the Sunne, called a Colosse, whiche

Ik ij

was

Do Saraceny  
p. 100. Chron.  
tion, wolf-  
ang. Drach.  
Hox.

Jamachonum  
Ry. 100.

Curio p. 75  
Hox. p. 100. Chron.  
tion, wolf-  
ang. Drach.  
Hox.

567. Hox. p. 100.  
Drach. p. 100.  
596. Hox. p. 100.

623.

637.

638.

639.

640.

641.

648.

655.



## A brieft Chronicle

was in height. 110. foote. The Brasse therof being folde to the Iewes, was as much as 900 Camelles coulde carge away.

656. They practyzed outrageous Pyracie on y<sup>e</sup> Aegean Sea, and did much harme to the Isles called Cyclades.

663. The Saracens discomfited Olympius the Exarch of Italy with all his Host in Sicilie.

668. Constantine the fourth, entred into league with Mu-chamed King of Saracens vpon condition that the Saracens shoulde pay a great Summe of Gold to the Romanes, with a goodly Horse and a Childe of noble byrth.

672. The Saracens rushed into Sicilie, and after they had taken Syracuse and wasted the whole Countrey, they returned backe to Alexandria.

675. Constantinople was besieged by the Saracens, vnto which, they gaue sundry assaultes but al in vaine: wherefore they shipped themselves intending to haue returned home, but the greater part of them through Shipwracke perished by the way.

676. The Romanes ouercame the Saracens, and slew of them 30000.

679. Peace the second time was made betwene y<sup>e</sup> Romanes and the Saracens for xxx. yeres, vpon condition, that the Saracens shoulde pay yereley to the Romanes 3000. ll. of Gold, 50. noble Prisoners and as many Horses.

686. The Saracens in the reigne of their King Ammirath, invaded Africa and Lybia, & caried away many spoiles.

687. After the death of Constantine, the Emperour Iustinian entred into league with the Saracens vpon these conditions; that they shoulde restore vnto the Emperre, Africa and Lybia, and pay every day for the space of ten yeres, a thousande Crownes, a Horse, and a Childe of noble byrth, in the name of a Tribute.

688. Iustinian breaking this League, and loyning battayle with the Saracens, receyued at theyr handes much harme

and

# Of Saracens and Turkes. 121

and great overthrowes.

The Saracens putting the Romanes to flight, greatly  
enhanced their name and authoritie: contrariwise, the  
dignitie of the Romanes therby greatly decayed. 692.

Abimelech King of Saracens, invading Africa, enjoy- 698.  
ed not his victoꝝ there long.

The Romans spoiling Syria, discomfited. 200000, Sa- 700.  
racenes.

While Iustinian and Leontius were striving foꝝ the 706.  
Empire, the Saracens againe invaded Africa.

The Saracens sailing out of Lybia, this yeere set first 710.  
foote into Spaine, waisting Aragon, Betica and Lusitanie.

The Saracens of Asia, landed at Constantinople with 718.  
300. Shalle, and fiercely besieged the same both by Sea and  
lande. The same yeere in Bulgaria there were slaine.  
22000. Saracens.

Zulcemō King of Saracens, dyed in his Camp before 719.  
Constantinople, in whose place succeeded Amirath.

During this Siege of Constantinople, many of the Sa- 720.  
racens dyed of sampe, plague and colde. They that re-  
mained alque meaning to retourne home, by tempest on  
the Sea and Lightning, perished, being partly consumed  
by fire and partly drowned in the waters: insomuch that  
of their whole flecte which was. 3000. Shippes moze and  
lesse, there escaped but only five. This Siege lasted fully  
two yeeres. The same yeere the Saracens thinking to  
recouer some of theyꝝ soꝝmer losses, wyth a buyge Army  
entred into Spayne, and spoiled all the Countrey sa-  
ving onely Gallicia.

Abidimar Capitaine of the Saracens in Africa, sacked 721.  
and spoiled Burdeaux a Citie of Fraunce, and remou-  
ning thence to Poytiers, was mette withall and repelled  
by Charles Martellus. Their Capitaine and Prince Abi-  
dimar being slaine, the Saracens foꝝ a while were quiet  
and medled not with any moe warres.

kk.ij.

The



## A breefe Chronicle.

- 730 The Saracenes bringyng wyth them theyr wyues,  
Childezen and whole Householde, entred a freshe into  
Fraunce, as thonghe they had meant there continual-  
lye to haue dwelled, and planted themselves for euer.  
Wyth them, Charles the Great ioynd Battayle, ha-  
uyng the ayde of the Frenche Nation, and slewe of  
them. 380000. and losse of his owne men onely 1500  
Souldiours.
- 735 Charles King of Fraunce, by his valiaunt knyght-  
hood delpyered out of the handes of the Saracens, the  
noble Citie of Auinion, whyche they had befoze guile-  
fully surpized.
- 737 Charles restored many other Cityes to peace and li-  
bertie, expulsiug out the Saracens: slaying Amorrhous  
one of their Captaines, & putting Achine another of their  
Guydes to flight.
- 738 The same Charles by helpe of Luitprand Kinge of  
Lumbardie, dyane and expulled all the Saracens out of  
Fraunce.
- 744 Constantinus Copronymus Emperour of Constan-  
tinople furnished out a flauie against the Saracenes in  
Egypt.
- 759 The Saracens in the East were euer wyyming some-  
what that belonged to the Romans and layed it to theyr  
owne Emprye, by meanes that the Romanes disagreed  
among themselves, and bent themselves only against the  
French Kings.
- 778 Charles the Great, had a noble victorie agaynst the Sa-  
racenes in Spaine. Rowlande in combate ouercame a  
Saracen that often chalenged the Chyistians. Through  
which Victorie and vpperhande, he made the waye the  
easier for the rest of his frendes and Countrey men to  
wyne the victorie.
- 780 Leo the fourthe Emperour made a voyage against the  
Saracens in Syria.

Aaron

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 122

Aaron Prince of Saracens with 300000 lyght Horsemen invaded Nicephorus Emperour of Constantino-ple, and made hym glad to become Tributary, and to accepte such offers as greatly multiplyed and diseased hym, but there was no remedy.

803

Sardinia and Corsica two Ilandes, were spoiled by the Saracens.

807

The Saracens waime the Ile of Crete, and ouercame the Grekes in two Battayles.

826

The Saracens of Asia rushed into Palestina, and they of Africa into Sicilie.

828

Boniface Countee of Corsica, hauing no helpe of the Chyistians sayng onely the Petrurians, sayled into Africa: and in foure Battayles, betweene Carthage and Vtica, had of them the Victorie and vpperhand, and so feared the Saracenes with the terrour of his onely name, that they were faine to depart out of Sicilie, and get them home to defend theyr owne.

830

Many Countreyes receyued greate damage at the handes of the Saracenes, and manye Cyties for feare, in euery quarter fledde and submitted themselues vnto them.

836

Saba Kyng of Moozes and Capitayne of the Saracenes wasted Sicilie and all the Countrey about Crotona, and tooke Tarento: agaynst whom, Theophilus the Emperour and the Venetian flæte stode at resist-  
staunce, but all in vaine.

843

The Saracenes inuadyng Hecuria and Latium, spoyled and sacked Rome: but besoze theyr retourne home, the greatest parte of them perished by Shypp-woecke.

845

Hauyng wasted Illyrium and Dalmacia, they coasted alonge the Adrian Sea, and burned Ancona a Citie of Picene, after they had taken the spoyles there-  
of.

846

Leo



## A breefe Chronycle

847. Leo the fourth, Pope of Rome, compelled the residue of the Saracens to packe oute of the Haven of Ostia, and strengthened all the Countrey beyonde Tyber againste them.
867. The Saracens agayne (onely for bootie and spoyle) brake into Italie, and wasted with fire and sword all the Countrey aboute Beneuent by the Samnytes. But by King Ludouick and King Lotharius they were put to flight.
870. The Saracens renewed Warres with the Persians: The Persians thzough the help of the Turkish Souldyours (at that time the Turkes inhabited Mount Caucasus and were called Tartarians) overcame them. Euer after from that time, the Turkes neuer left Asia, and not onely encroched vpon the Domynions of the Saracens, but also were called by the same name as they were.
878. After the Saracenes had enioyed Sicilie xlii. yeres, they were thence cleane expelled.
881. Charles surnamed the Thicke, repulled the Saracens breaking into Italy.
891. Nicetes one of the Capitaines of the Constantinopolitane Emperoure, had a notable victorie ouer the Saracens.
910. The Saracens invaded Puell and Calabria.
913. At Liris a riuer of Campania, the Saracens as they were spoylunge the Cities belonging to the Romans, were overcome.
914. The Saracens breaking out of Fraxinete, came as far as Aquisgrane where encountringe with the Inhabytantes, they were utterly destroyed and Sagitus theyr Capitaine slayne.
935. The Saracens spoyled Geane a Citie of Liguria, and with great booties returned into Afryca.
941. Hugh King of Italie tooke Fraxinete, and burned the Panie of the Saracens.

Ramyre

## of Saracens and Turkes. 123.

Ramyre King of Gallyce, discomfited a great Armye of Saracenes in Spayne.

944.

The Saracenes committing many murtheres and firyngs in Calabria, Puell and Lucania, by the brighttye prowesse of Alberick Marquesse of Hetruria were repressed, and nere to Minturne in Campania by the Kyuer Lyris vanquished. There intentes were to hane come to Rome.

954.

The Saracenes by force keeping the Mount Garganus made out of it many Roades into the Countrey nere adioyninge, and burned Beneuent.

952.

Otho the first, Emperour of Germanes, dyaue the Saracenes out of Italic, and dispossessed them cleane out of their holde in Mount Garganus.

969.

The Saracenes reconered Consentia, out of the which a litle befoze they were thowen out by the Hungarians.

970.

The Ile of Crete taken from the Saracenes.

977.

Otho the seconde, receiued a great ouerthrowe at the bandes of the Saracenes, in a battayle fought with them in Calabria the Ioes of Iulie, with whom the Greekes had stricken a League and ioyned polwers. His stoutest souldiours and Capitaines being in this conflict slaine, he himselfe had much a doo by flight to saue himselfe.

982.

Alphonfus King of Spaine, besiedging a stronge holde of the Saracens called Viscum, was wounded with an Arrowe and therof dyed.

1000.

The Saracens deuindinge their host into two partes, landed in Italic, toke Capua and besieged Barum.

1007.

The Saracenes of Asia toke Hierusalem.

1009.

Henry the second Emperour of Germanes, dyaue the Saracens out of Capua, and persecuted with greuous warre certayne Capitaines which favored their side.

1013.

The Egyptian Caliph, through the ayde of an army of Saracens and Turkes (which then ruled all the coast in Persia) spoyled the Temple of our Lord at Hierusalem.

1023.

Alphonfus King of Spaine, besiedging a stronge holde of the Saracens called Viscum, was wounded with an Arrowe and therof dyed.

1000.



## A breefe Chronicle

1048. This Caliph being dead, the Emperour of Constanti-  
nople entred into league w<sup>th</sup> Dobir his Son & Successour,  
by whose permission & sufferance the sayd Temple was  
reedified and restozed.
- 1056 Robert the Norman, rescued Capua besieged by y<sup>e</sup> Sa-  
racene, and drave the Grekes whiche were confederate  
w<sup>th</sup> them out of Calabria, sparing none but Priests.
- 1060 Saracens inuading Antioch & Cesaria were repressed.
- 1095 Many Christians whiche passed ouer Bosphorus in  
Thracia, were slayne by the Saracens in great number,  
nere to the Towne Cinitum.
- 1096 Spaine, Fraunce, England, Scotland, Denmark, Lorraine,  
Almayne, Burgundy, Lumbardie, Italy, conspired toge-  
ther and made out a mighty power against the Sara-  
cenes, w<sup>th</sup> intent, to drine the quite out of Hierusalem,  
and to reconer the holy Land.
1097. The sayd Armies in their way, encountred w<sup>th</sup> the Sa-  
racenes and in two battailes them discomfited at Nice,  
and after ward reconered Heraclea and Tharsus.
- 1098 The christians won fro the Saracens the citie Antioch,  
after xi. monthes siege. There was slayne of them a C.  
xx. persons. This battaile was fought y<sup>e</sup> 28. day of Iune.
1099. Nere to Hierusalem was fought a bloody battaile be-  
twene the Christians and the Saracens: but through the  
mercifull goodnes of God, the Saracens were overcome,  
and the Citie Hierusalem reconered and conquered by  
the Christians the Ides of Iulie.
- Godfrey of Boloin, Duke of Loraine, firste man that  
mounted vpon the walles, was of the victorious Christi-  
ans proclaymed King of Hierusalem.
- The same yere the Saracens vnder the conduct of the  
Caliph of Babilon, w<sup>th</sup> a hundred xx. Horsemen & foure  
hundred xx. footemen, marched against y<sup>e</sup> christians. But  
the christians killing 5000. of their horsemen, and 15000.  
others, kept still Hierusalem.
1100. Godfrey won Ascalon, in which he found wonderfull  
riches.

## Of the Saracens and Turks 124

riches. The same yere dyed Godfrey, and Baldwin his brother was king after him.

Baldwine was vanquished & many Christians slaine, he himself by flight hardely escaping. The remnaunt of his army fled to Rama, wherfoze the walles therof were by the enemies razed and made leuell with the ground.

Bohemund king of Puell going w<sup>th</sup> other princes in this voyage to Hierusalem was taken prisoner by the Saracens, who was shortly after redeemed by his nephew Tancred.

The christians after xx. daies siege took Accaron a cite of Palestina: which city is otherwise called Ptolomais.

A great number of Saracens slayne by the Christians.

This same yere Alexius emperor of Constantinople concluded a peace & took such offers as Baldwin tendered vnto him.

Baldwine by force of armes subdued Beritum & Sydon, Cities standing by the Sea. A sedition arose amonge the Christian Princes at Charras, whiche was a greuous hindrance vnto their proceedings. The enemies suddenly rushing vpon them some were taken, some put to flight, and the Army pitifully distressed. This blot win a while after, Baldwin made amendes for, and recompenced, hauing ouer the Saracens an other fresh victory.

The Saracens inuading the Hierosolymitan kingdom out of Persia, discomfited and slew the kinges power by chaunce meeting them.

Tancred who had deliuered his vncle from the Saracens, was now vanquished & slaine by his enemies at the Mount Regalis.

The citezens of Pise in Italic, expelled the Saracens and conquered the Isles called Baleares, by Spaine.

Baldwine, the 2. king of Hierusalem died, & after him succeeded an other of the same name, who vanquished & slaine the king of Persia, he put to flight the king of Damascus. But the king of the Parthians resisting him & meaning to renouge their quarels, Baldwin was taken & sent bounde vnder sure ward beyond Euphrates.

Alis Bald-

1102.

1103.

1104.

1105.

1106.

1107.

1117.

1118.



# A breefe Chronycle

- 1119 Baldwyne after .xviij. monthes Imprisonment, decey-  
ued his keepers and escaping out of Prison, returned to  
his owne people.
- 1122 Dominicus Michael Duke of Venice with a well fur-  
nished Nauie, greatly annoyed the Saracenes in Syria.  
To the Venetians for their worthy seruice and ballaunt,  
nes were graunted sundry great Priviledges.
- 1125 An Army of 40000 men set vpon the Christians and  
were encountred withall by 3000. Christians: who tho-  
rogh the goodnes of God, slew of their Enemies with the  
sword 7000, and 5000 drownd, so that the victo-rye fell  
to the Christians.
- 1127 In Syria the Christians discomfited the Saracens in  
two notable ouerthrowes: in the first conflict 2500 of them  
were slaine. In the other, although both Armies were af-  
flicted, yet the Christians obtained the victo-ry.
- 1129 The king of Ascalon was by Baldwine repressed,  
and the king of Damascus in thre battailes overcome.
- 1130 After the death of Baldwine the third king of Hierusa-  
lem, Fulco was made the fourth king.
- 1131 The Cite of Tripolis by treason was slaine, king Ful-  
co was put to flight by his Enemies and condescended to  
very hard conditions, to be clearely deliuered from siege.
- 1133 The Christians cooped in fight with the Egyptians and  
were superiours.
- 1139 Ascalon was recovered by the Christians.
- 1142 Fulco the fourth king of Hierusalem in hunting & Hare  
and ryding fast after the game, through a fall from his  
horse dyed: after whom succeeded his Sonne Baldwine  
who was the fift king.
- 1143 The Cite Edessa and almost all Mesopotamia was  
wonne by the Saracens & Alaph Captains of Turks,  
which now were of great name and power in the East:  
where they killed without all mercy a wonderfull num-  
ber of Christians, ransacking mens wiues in the Church of  
Saint

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 125

Saint John Baptiste, & in despite of Christianitie eyen  
vpon the Alter.

Baldwine the thirde of that name, and the fift king of  
Hierusalem, conquered Gaza and Ascalon and cast out al  
the Saracens. And at Hierico he overcame and put to  
flight Norandine Maister of the Chivalry of Damascus  
and slue 5000. of his enemyes.

Manuel Emperour of Constantinople with muche  
oversight and negligence led through dangerous wayes  
and desert places his Christian Hostes against the Sara-  
cens, insomuch that for scarcitie of vittayles and other ne-  
cessaries, they could atchiue no notable enterpryse against  
the myscreant people.

Roger King of Sicilie and Normannes, made the Afri-  
cane Saracens tributarie to him for xxx. yeres, and toke  
their King Prisoner.

This yere Conrade the second, Emperour, leuyed a  
great power against the Saracens, against whom he had  
in battaile but ill successe.

Lewys King of Fraunce, assembled a mightie Armie to  
go against the Infidels.

Out of England, Flanders and Lozaine were furni-  
shed out 200 saile against the Saracens.

This yere Conrade the Emperour passing ouer Bos-  
phorus without anye resistance, came nere to his ene-  
mies: but for want of vittuals and (as some say) his coone  
being corrupted and mingled with lyme and plaister, he  
was glad to stay himselfe and go no further and to bring  
backe his Armie. The Saracens vnderstanding hereof,  
set vpon them behind and slue of them certain thousands.

The same yere the French King came to the Empe-  
rour to aide him: but by reason that his Armie was great-  
ly distressed and pinched with famine, he could bring no  
notable atchieuante to passe. The same time, the Vene-  
tians with a well furnished Shalle went into Asia, to aide

1144

1145

1146

1146

1147



## A breefe Chronycle

- the Emperour against the Saracens.
- 1148 The Spanyardes expulſing the Saracens, recovered Almaria and Tortoſa, two goodly embattailed Cities.
- The ſame yere, Damascus was beſieged by the Syrians, Frenchmen, and Hieroſolymitanes, and the Walmures thereof deſaced. And when they were euen at the poynt to haue wonne the Citie and ſubdued the Saracenes, the chiefe Princes and Capitaines diſagreyng and tallyng out amonge themſelues, called they? owne ſouldiours euery man together, and departed thence, leauing the ſiege.
- 1149 Raymund King of Antioch with hys whole Hoſt was diſcomfited by the Saracens, who ſpoiled all hys Countrey. Antioch it ſelfe by the Kinge of Hieruſalem was hardly reſcued and ſaued.
- 1151 Baldwin King of Hieruſalem, diſcomfited the Egypci-ans and Babilonians.
- 1158 The Saracenes drave the Spanyardes by force of Armes out of Almaria.
- 1159 Baldwin ſet at libertie and reſtozed many Cities, expulſing thence the Saracens.
- 1164 Baldwin dyed, and in his ſteede reigned hys brother Almericke, the ſirſt king of Hieruſalem.
- 1170 Almericke in Egypt obtained a noble victorie.
- 1171 The ſame king beſieged Damietta: but in the ende he agreed to a peace: vpon conditions neither honorable nor profitable.
- 1172 The Saracenes of Africa made manye Roades into Spaine.
- 1175 Almericke King of Hieruſalem dyed of an Ague: And his ſonne Baldwin was annoynted the ſenenth king.
- 1177 Baldwin in two battailes conquiſhed Saladin King of Egypt, and brought much treaſure into Hieruſalem.
- 1180 The Daughter of the king of Saracens being married to Prince Pagane, was taken priſoner on the ſea, by the King

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 126

King of Sicilie, in his voyage and journey homeward  
to his husband.

This yere, the Christians in Hierusalem were ouer-  
come.

Manfamunth king of the Saracens with great costes  
and charges repayzed Carthage.

Baldwine the vij. king of Hierusalem, being infected  
with Leprosie dyed. His nephew Baldwine, his Sisters  
sonne was elected king after him, but by frowning desti-  
nies he was kept backe from his dignitie. After whom  
succeeded the vij. king Guye of Lefingham.

Betweene this Guye kyng of Hierusalem and Ray-  
mund Earle of Tripolis, there arose dissension and hart-  
burning whiche was the cause, that the Christians were  
brought into extreme daunger.

The Christians loyning battayle with the Armys of  
Saladine, had a lamentable overthrow. In this battayle  
were slaine 20500. Christians. King Guye was taken  
prisoner, and the Earle of Tripolis, dyed loathly.

Hierusalem hauing now bene enloped and possessed by  
the Christians lrrvily. was this yere by surrendre deli-  
uered up to the king of Saracens, and the Christians there  
expelled, the second day of October.

This yere all Iurie was wonne from the Christians  
by the Saracens: the Cities of Tyre, Tripolis and Acri-  
oche being with much a doe and hardly kept.

Fridericke Emperour of Romans with his sonne Fri-  
dericke, Philip king of Fraunce, Richard king of Eng-  
land with manye other Princes and Nobles, assembling  
their Parliaments, decreed & thoughtly determined to  
ayde the Christians in Iurie. Great preparation was  
made for this voyage. Fridericke leaueing his Armie in  
to Syria, and wyning the lesse Armenia, went in the  
boate time of Sommer, into the River Selephus to bathe  
& washe himselfe, where by misfortune he was drowned.

1181

1184

1186

1187

1188

The



# A breefe Chronicle.

The same yere the Flemish and Danish fleet, scor-  
red the Coastes of Aphrica and toke the Citie of Sylua  
and burnt it.

1189. Guye with a power, gaue a terrible siege to Acon, but  
by the subtile driftes and pollices of Saladine he was ever  
put to the worse. The Christians dyed in great numbers  
partly by diseases, partly by famine, and partly by sword.  
Sybilla wife to Guye and her four Childe, dyed in the  
Camp of the bloody sit.

1190. The Kinges of England and Fraunce ioyning their  
puissance of Ships together with the host of King Guye,  
ioyntly layd siege to Acon.

1191. Acon after two yeres siege was yeldeo vpo conditions.

1192. Pride, hartburning and greuous displeasure enkind-  
led betwene the two Kinges Richard of Englands and  
Philip of Fraunce, wherby their Armies senered and de-  
parted asunder. The French king with his power retur-  
ned home: the King of England with valyaunt courage  
taryinge there somewhat longer, tryed the Fortune of  
Warre, but litle to purpose.

The same yere the Venetian Saue, and the Pyfans dis-  
agreed among themselves, whiche grudge and deuision  
was very pernicious vnto Christendome: because they  
departing thence, brought home with them the causes of  
their hatred and enemytie, and long after maligned one  
an other.

1193. Sultane Saladine, General Capitaine of the Saracens  
(one for his excellent Actes, moderation and valiauntnes  
greatly renowned) this yere dyed. His Souns after him  
parted his kingdome and Dominions among them.

1195. The Saracenes of Aphrica, rushing into Spayne, ob-  
teyned there and wanne two Kingdomes, Castile and  
Granado.

1198. Henry the Emperoure sent a fresh Armye against the  
Saracenes, vnder the guydinge of the Archbyschoppe of  
spantz,

# Of the Saracen Historie. 127

Went, and Ocho Duke of Saxonie, Prince Elector, and diuers other valiant and honorable personages. These recovering a certayne number of Cities, created Hamerick King. In this voyage went also Loyde Herman Lantgraue of Thuring.

These also, sayde Capitaines hearing tydings of the death of the Emperoure Henry, without hope of any further victoꝝ, returned home into Germany. 1199.

The Saracenes wane from the Christians Ioppe and shewed extreme crueltie toward them. 1200.

The African Saracens with fire and sword invaded both the Spaynes, and destroyed the same before them, even unto France. 1202

Durynge the reigne of the Emperoure Friderick the second, a new voyage was enterprised against the Saracenes in Syria, many Princes and nobles conspiringe together for the atchynance therof. 1216.

The same yere in the Citie Acon, the Christian hosts met together & besieged Damietta a Citie of Egypt, stoutly defended by the Muscians.

Four Kings of Spaine, joining all their powers together in one repressed the Saracens, but yet, they could not quite rid them out of Betica. 1217

The Citie of Damietta was againe restored to the Sultan, and the Christians returned to Acon and Tyre. 1221.

Friderick the Emperour going into Syria, took truce with the Saracens: & entered into Hierusalem with his Army, ther to be royally crowned. 1228

The Christian Host over whom was General Theobald Kinge of Nauarra, were vanquished and slaine betwene Gaza and Ptolomais. 1237.

Ferdinando a Prince of great noblenesse and fame expelled the Saracens out of Spaine. 1244.

The Saracenes of Asia cruelly afflicted the Christians in Syria, and used most spightfull villanie toward the Sepulchre of Christ in Hierusalem. 1247.



## A breefe Chronycle

1248. **Lewes** King of Fraunce, went with an Armye toward the holy Land, with entent, to supplant the Saracenes and relieue the Christians.
1249. The sayd King Lewes, ioyning battayle with the Saracenes, brought vnder his subiection Damietta a populous citie and curiously embatteyled.
1250. The same King Lewes, in a terrible conflict at Farameia was taken prisoner by the Saracens, with his two brethren Charles and Alphonse. Whereupon Damietta was redeliuered into the hands of the Saracens, whereby he saued his owne lyfe and his freendes, and was deliuered out of Prison. This kinge was taken the fift day of Aprill.
1252. The Saracens lost the Ile called Baleares, which the Duke of Aragon subdued.
1261. The kinges of Spaine fallynge at variaunce and discord, the one brother fled into Fraunce to craue ayde, the other into Africa to desire assistance of the Saracens against his owne brother, whereby they wrought much scath both to themselves and to their countrey.
1262. Deadly hatred and grudge fell betwene the Venetians and the Genoways, whereby the Christians inhabiting Ptolomais and Tyre were greuously afflicted.
1265. The Saracens drave the Christians cleane out of Siria.
1268. Antioch was sacked by Bodegar the Sultane.
1270. Yet againe, Lewes the french kinge with his three sonnes sayled into Africa against the Saracens with a great power. Where by his knightly prowesse he had the victorie of them and besieged Carthage: but by reason of the vnholysome countrey and chaunge of ayre, the pestilence infected his Host, wherof the king himself dyed, and his sonne Iohn also, and then brake by the siege.
1281. The Armenians and Scythians at Gamala a citie of Iurie were destroyed by the Saracens, with the citie also.
1289. The citie Tripolis was taken & slered by the Sulcan of Egypt, and the Christians in most cruell wyse slayne, or els caried away captiue. The

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 128

The cities of Tyre, Sydon, Tripolis and Bericus, by the same Sultan, were fiered & rased even with the ground. Ptolomais also being afoze a place of refuge for the dispersed christians, was taken without any resistance and destroyed, and the very foundations digged up. The christians which fled away and forsooke the cite, in their way toward Crete perished by shipwreck and were drowned. And thus were the Christians utterly chased out of syria 190 yeres after they wan it vnder Godfrey of Bolleine.

1290.

## The kingdome of Turkes.

Othoman a man of obscure birth & very ambitious, growing in great wealth & riches by spoyle and robbery, was the first that tooke vpon him, the name of Kinge of Turkes. He within x. yeres space subdued to his seignioze a great part of Bythinia & other countreis about the Euxine Sea, whose generation since, hath wrought much mischief to Christendome.

1301.

The Ile of Rhodes was won from the Sar. by the hospitellers.

1307.

Alphonse King of Castile in a notable conflict overcame the Saracens, and tooke two mighty cities.

1310.

Othoman king of Turkes dyed and after him succeeded Orchanes his Sonne, the second king of that Nation.

1328.

While Cantacuzen & Paleologus contended for the Emroire of Constantinople, Orchanes by force wan the most noble cite of Prusia.

1350.

Orchanes in a battayle against the Tartarians (for so are the Scythians called) lost the field and was with many of his army slaine. After him succeeded Amurathes the third kinge of Turkes.

1350.

Amurathes through the couetousnes and treason of the Genowais (lending their ships vnto him) passed the Straits of Hellespont to Abydus, where he conquered the cities of Philippople and Hadrianople vnto his subiection.

1363.

Am is

This



## A brieue Chronicle

1373. This Ammurathes invaded Seruia and Bulgaria, conquered them from the Christians, and at the same tyme toke and slue Lazarus King of Seruia.

1373. Ammurathes invading the higher Myfia, was thrust into the flanke with a Dagger, by one that was a faithful seruant to the aboue named King Lazarus, ( whose presence was to reuenge his maisters death ) of the whiche wound he dyed. After Ammurathes thus slaine, Baiazeth his sonne, obteyned the kingdome, & was the fourth king of Turkes, and slue his owne brother.

1374. Marke Cratenique king of Bulgaria, with all the nobilitie of his realme, was vanquished in battayle by Baiazeth.

1376. He spoyled Bosna Croacia, Illyria, Albania and VValachia, kylling many thousandes of Christians, bring partly slaine and partly carped into captiuitie.

1389. Constantinople was afflicted and besieged fully. viij. yeeres by this vnnmercifull Tyrant the Turkish king.

1390. The Lordes of England and Fraunce at the instance of the Genowayes ioyning with them, made a voyage into Africa against the Saracenes and compelled them to reshoze and set at liberty the Christian Prisoners living among them, and to pay 10000 Crownes.

1392. The Malachians craved ayde of the Turkes against the Hungarians, whom ( notwithstanding ) the Hungarians vanquished and put to flight.

1396. The Christians and the Turks mette and ioyned battayle at Nicopolis, vpon the .28. day of September. But the victorie fell to Baiazeth who had there 300000. stoute fighting men well appoynted, whereof 60000 were horsemen. The Army of the Christians ( being French & Hungarians ) was not aboue. lxxx. thousande, among whom there were about. xx. th. Horsemen. The French Capitaines were in a maner all taken Prisoners. Sigismund the king of Hungarie himselfe escaped hardly by flight.

In

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 129

In this battaile were slaine of Chzistians 20000. and of Turkes 60000. This lamentable ouerthrowe happened throughte the discorde of the Chzistian Host among themselves, by reason that one wbole the Frenche and another while the Hungarians claimed the first onset and the leading of the Mauntgard. After this battaile the Turke retyzed backe to the siege of Constantinople.

Tamburlane kyng of Scythia, a man of obscure byrthe and Pedagreto, grew to such power, that he mayntained in his Court daily attending on him, a thousand and CC, Horsemen. This Prince inuadyng the Turkes dominions in Asia with an innumerable multitude of armed Souldiours, in the consynes of Gallitia and Bithynia, nere to Mount Scella, gaue to the Turke a soze battaile, in the which, he slew of them two hundred thousand. He tooke Baiazeth the Great Turke Prisoner, and kepte hym in a Cage, tyed and bounde wyth golden Chaynes. When so euer hee tooke Horse, he caused the sayde Baiazeth to be brought out of hys Cage, & bled his necke as a Styrope: and in this soze caried hym throughtout all Asia in mockage and derysion. He banquished the Persians, overcame the Medians, subdued the Armenians, and spoiled all Egypt. He built a Citie and called it Marchantum, wherein he kept all his Prisoners, and enriched the same with the spoyles of all such Cities as he conquered. It is reported in Histories, that in his host he had an incredible nuber of thousands, he bled comonly to haue xij. hundred thousand vnder him in Campe. When he cam in sight of his enemies, his custome was to set vp three sortes of Bannions or Tentis: the first, was white, signifying therby to his Cnemyes, that if at that shew, they would yelde, there was hope of grace and mercye at hys handes: the next was redde, whereby he signified bloude and flame: & lastly blacke, which betokened vtter subuersion & mercilesse banocke of all things so, their contempt.

¶ In. iij.

The



## A breefe Chronicle.

The same yere Walachia, Transyluania, Moldauia and all the Region beyonde the ryuer of Danowe, by procurement of Stephan Vaiuoda their Captaine, sediciously mutyned and stirred vp202es, against Sigismund. Whereby all men might perceine and vnderstande, that the same Vaiuoda was the very Authour of the late discomfiture, in p2ocuring the Turkes to come thither.

1398 Cyriscelebes (whom some do call Calepine) after y the Great Turke his father was take p2isoner and his Host vanquished by Tamburlane the Scythian King, saued himself by flight, & toke vpon him to be king of Turkes, being the syt from Othoman.

1399 The Turkes (after their king was thus taken & their power daunted) atchieued nothing wo2thy of any reme2brance vnder this Cyriscelebes.

1404 Cyriscelebes the kinge, this yere dyed, leauing behind him two Sonnes, Orcannes and Mahomet.

1404 Orcannes th2ough the great fauour of the Nobles of Thracia, was appointed Successour to the Crowne, being yet a very young man: but in a conflict at Gazar, not farre from the ryuer Hebrus he was slaine chiefly by the villanie of his owne vnde Moses.

1405 Mahomet the sixte Kyng of Turkes, when his brother was thus rebbe out of the way, enjoyed the Crowne alone.

1408 This Mahomet subdued Seruia, Walachia, and a great part of Sciauonie.

1411 Sigismund king of Hungarie, in a battaile against the Turkes foughten in the feldes of Salumbeze (whych were somtimes called Philadelphia) was put to y wo2se, and flebbe.

1412 Mahomet imposed grauous and intollerable tributes vpon the Walachians. He translated the Seate royall of chiese Citie of his Empire out of Bythinia into Thracia, and gaue p2erogative to Adrianople, p2eferring it be2

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 130

foze Prusia. He was the first king of that race that passed the ryuer of Danowe, he subdued Macedonie, and came as farre as the Ionian Sea.

Ammurathes the seventh King of Turkes, banquishing Mustapha & sonne of Baiazeth by force of Armes, obtained his fathers kingdome.

1419

This Turke made his first voyage against George the king of Seruia, other wyse called Rascia, from whom after foure yeeres siege hee wanne Newmound and Scopia, and myserably afflicted Synderouia. The kinges tj. sonnes whom he toke in battaile, he bereft of their eyes and cutte of their priuie members. But he maryed and toke to wife his daughter for her rare beautie and comely personage.

1420

Thessalonica a famous Citie belonging to the Seigniorie of Venice was won by the Turkes, who left there no kinde of villanie and spightfull dealing agaynst the Christians vnpractized.

1438

Amurathes besieging Belgrade in Hungarie, losse 10000 of his men and was faine to retyre into his owne Countrey after he had in vayne and to his great shame, continued his siege by monthes.

1438

Iohn Huniades encountred with the Turkes spyingling Hungarie, and them discomfited.

1439

Ladislaus king of Polonie and Hungarie, sending out a power against the Turkes vnder the guydaunce & leading of the same Iohn Huniades had over the a noble victorie in the fieldes of Hxmus, and drave the Turke to such a streit, that he was faine to condescend to a peace.

1440

This peace made with the Turke, (contrary to league and athe) was violated and broken by the vnadvised procurement and exhortation of Pope Eugenius, whiche breache to the Christians was verre pernicious and hurtful. For first, the Christians in the Streits of Hellespont lost lxx. Gallies. Afterward in a battaile fought at

1444

Varna,



## A breefe Chronycle

the fello, aboue xxx. thousand of them flaine, befide a great number drowned in the Bogges. In that battayle was flayne Iulian Cafarine a Cardinal & Legat for the pope, who came thither to procure and incense the Princes to violaction of their League and Oth, and warranted them from danger: & king Vladiflaus himfelf was ther flaine who was merueilous deftrous to enterprife this War. Huniades with much adoe escaped by flight and faved himfelfe. The Turke could not haue brought his pa- ny through the Streites of Bosphorus in Thracia to do this mischief, had not the conetous Genowayes winked at the matter and fuffered them, hauing in bribe and rewarde, for euery Turke, a peece of Golde payed vnto them.

1445 Ammuraches waime the Isthmos of Corynth, and ban- quished the Greekiſh Garrifons, together with the em- perours Brother of Constantinople, and overcame with pitifull ſpoyle all Peloponefus.

1446 The Kinge of Polonie encountred with the Turkes as they invaded Hungary, and obtayned the victoꝝy. The Turkes deftrous of reuenge, aſſembled a bulge power a- freſh, and renewed Warre. Wherein both parties were lamentably damnyſhed, loſing welnere 800000 men be- twene them. Notwithſtanding, the number of & Turkes there flayne, was farre greater then of the Chriſtians. But the Generall of the Chriſtian Armye was there flayne and his head brought to the Kinge of Turkes. In the ſame battayle alſo was flayne the ſonne of the ſayd King of Turkes.

1448 The Hungarians vnder the leadinge of Huniades to the number of 600000 entred into the Turkes Countries, and loyning battayle with them, at the firſte conflict, they had the victoꝝy: but in the ſeconde, they were flayne in maner euery one, except 1000. of ther aboute which by flight ſaued themſelues.

The

## Of Saracens and Turkes 131

The great Turke besieged Croia a citie of Amathia, many Monthes, but by the worthy prowess of Scanderbeg, he was defeated from his purpose, and with losse of many of his men was sent away packing with a Flea in his eare.

1449.

Amurathes Emperoure of Turkes dyed, bequeathing his Crowne and kingdome to Mahomet his Son, the 8. King of Turkes. Who (least his Father should be buried alone without company) flew at his first entrance, his owne Brother, and commaunded them to be buried both in one graue.

1450

The first Warre that this Mahomet took in hande, was against Scanderbeg. Besieginge Croia with thirty thousand men, but he departed away without his purpose to his great shame and reproche, leaving behinde him at the layde Siege Ballabano one of his chiefe Bassaes.

1451.

The famous and renowned Citie of Athens, the Vniuersitie and Purce of all worthy Artes & Disciplines, was conquered and rased to the ground by this most cruel Tyrant the Turk, who in some places therof digged by the very foundations, for extreme hatred that he bare to learning. He threw all the Bookes and Monumentes that he could finde, into dyrtie Sinkes and filthiest places in the citie, and to be put to the vilest viles that could be. And if any man seemed to lament it, the same partye was straight wayes put to death. The Castle of Pyruam and Munychia was also most furiously rased to the ground.

1452.

This Tyrant the xxix. day of May, after a continuall assault geuen thereto from the ix. of Aprill afoze, that is to say, 50. continual daies, by his innumerable multitude of Turkes, conquered the noble citie of Constantinople, to the unspeakable hindrance of all Christendome and high advancement of the Turkes Domynion. At the taking of this citie, most horrible propheanation of the Temples was vied. As for Imags which the Turkes

1453.

¶ In

them



## A breefe Chronicle

themselves cannot abyde, in great scozne and contempte were throwne downe. Among others, Mahomet himselfe laughing at the superstitious Citezens, in great derision gaped and laughed at the Crucifix, and caused it in scornfull maner to be caried about the Streets with Trumpettes, and wrot upon the head of the said Picture these wordes *Hic est Christianorum Deus*. This is the God of the Christians.

Three dayes together he gave leaue to his outrageous Souldiours, to kill people and ransacke both Churches, Patrons and Maydes without any reuerence of nature. The citizens some they murdered, some they rolled upon spikes, some they steept the skinned, and afterwarde hanged them vp to consume with fainyne, of others they put salt into their woundes the more to encrease theyr payne, contending amongst themselves who could bestifie most straungest kind of new torment, insomuch that the Citie was no Citie, but rather a Slaughter House or Shambles of Christian bodies. The Emperoure himselfe being there slayn, his head was pitched upon a speare and caried about. At euery dinner and Supper, some of the Emperours Cousins and Nobles of the Countrey were put to death, so longe as any remaignes of that ligne. Of the inferior sorte, no day passed wherein he caused not to be put to execution aboue CCC. persons, the residue he gave to his Souldiours.

The exceeding crueltie that they vsed at the winnynge of this Citie, towards al sorte of Men, Women & Children, and their sightfull demeanour towards Christian religion, it would be any mans hart to heare of, read of.

1456

Mahomet besieged Belgrad (of some called Alba Greca) with a hundred and fifty thousand men. The Christians assembling their powers together, at the exhortation of John Capistrane, Huniades their chiefe Capitaine and Kingleader was about xl. thousande of his Enemies

and

## Of Saracens and Turkes 132

and put to shamefull sight all the reste of them, in whiche encountre Mahomet himselfe was wounded with an Arrowe. This battaile was fought vpon the 22. day of Iuly.

This Turke ioyninge battaile w<sup>th</sup> Assimbey kinge of Persia, who they call by þ name of Vuncassane (signifying a woorthye & dead prince) in þ first cōflict at Euphrates, lost 1. 50. men, but in þ second he obtained the victorie.

Corynth was taken by Mahomet.

The Turke wan from the Christians the Emppre of Trapezunce, beheading Dauid the Emperour therof and beside the sayd Empire and Constantinople also, he took from þ Christians 22. kingdomes & conquered 200. cities.

The Ile of Malta conquered by Turkes.

The Venetians furnished out a great navy well appointed into Grecia, to recouer Corynth, but they returned without bzinging their purpose to passe.

The same yere the king of Hungarie recovered Geila a cite of Bosnia, the which the Turk had now the second time besieged, and hearing of the appoche of the Christians, he cast 4. great Gunnes or Cannons into the river Drina, & fled trusting better to his legs then to his hands.

Mahomet requiringe the Prince of Mysia to come to speake with him vnder coulozable speeches and pretence of peace, when he had him within his daunger, he sleped and pulled his skinne ouer his eares, and carped his brother and sister about with him in triumph.

The Turke wan a very strong holde in Epyre.

George Castriot (otherwise surnamed Scanderbeg) king of Epyre, discomfited & put to notable foyle þ Turkes in sundry skirmishes. It is testified of this Scanderbeg þ being prouoked, he neuer denied to fight, and in fighting neuer turned his back, neither yet was he euer wounded but once w<sup>th</sup> an Arrow in the sote, neither did he euer set vpon þ Turkes with moe then 6000. hoysmen & 3000. footemen. He is constantly said to haue slayne w<sup>th</sup> his owne handes of Turkes 2000. whome with such violence

1457.

1458.

1460.

1462.

1463.

1494.

1465.

1466.



## A breefe Chronicle

he strake, that many of them he clefte a sunder from the head to the middle.

1468

Mahomet discomfited the Syrians and Egyptians, took the Cities of Narrantana & Scandolora and fiered them, killing all the Inhabitantes most rufully, and thzowing downe the Nobles and Gentlemen from the toppes of Turrettes and high places to bzeake their neckes.

The same yere he entred into League with Cifime King of India, to w<sup>h</sup>o he gave in marriage a noble Dam- sell, out of his owne bzothehouse o<sup>r</sup> Purseric, with royal giftes and noble magnificence.

1469

Mahomet was put to many afterdeales by the power of King Vfuncassane.

The same yere Nicolas Canalis, Admyrall of the Ch- ristian flæte, gave a mightie ouerthzow to Mahomet on the Sea, and slew two thousand Turkes.

At the same time many Chzistians were taken and led into captiuitie by the Turkes out of diuerse quarters.

1470

The Turke sent 400 Sayle and 120000 men into the the Ile of Euboea vnder the leading of Omar one of hys Bassaes, in which enterpryse and inuasion he lost almost 40000 of his men: notwithstanding, after xxx. dayes he took it, pytching the Italian Souldiours vpon Poales & stakes, and shewing all kind of horrible crueltie and vio- lent rape vpon the Inhabitauntes.

The same yere the Turkes army entred into Hun- garie spoyling and robbing as farre as Zagabria. and ca- ried away with them. 10000. Prisoners.

In the same yere also they inuaded Dalmatia, Forulij, and Scyria, and baried great booties of men and Cattell.

1471

The King of Portugall, passing the Gaditane Sea, re- couered many Cities in the borders of Mauritania from the Turke, and laid them to his owne dominions.

1472

King Vfuncassane hauing the vpperhand of 2 Turke, wonne from them sundry Cities, whereby he purchaseth

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 133

to himsele a perpetuall fame ouer all the East.

Nicholas Throne the same yere toynd the Venetian flete with the Armie of the kyng of Parthia against the Turke.

Vsuncassane in a skirmish vanquished and put to flight 3000 of the Turkes Army.

1473

The same yere the Turke entring into Hungarie with a maine power, spoyled al the Cities nere the water side.

The Persian kyng and the Turke toyning battayle nere to the ryuer Euphrates: the Turke had the victorie, and tooke of his Enemys 6800 of whom in his retourne homeward at euery staying place and Tent pitching, he commaunded euery day fye hundreth to be cut in peeces with a sword, and then cast them out (like dogs) vnburied, filling all the Countrey of Armenia with this loathsome spectacle of dead Carcasses.

1473

In a part of the Countrey that lyeth by the ryuer Ister called Muldauia and Walachia, the Turkes had an ouerthrow and were slayne by Stephan the Palatine of Muldauia, foure Turkishe Bassaes were heere taken and xxxvj. Ensignes.

1475

Matthias kyng of Hungarie, at the ryuer of Save won a strong Forre from the Turkes to his high praisse and commendation.

1476

The same yere Capha, a Colonic of the Genowayes in the coast of the Sea Euxine, was by treason delquered vp to the Turke.

This yere dyed kyng Vsuncassane, who had vnder his gouernment the Persians, Parthians, Medians and almost all the East beside. After whom, succeeded his eldest sonne: who putting his other brothers to death, reigned alone.

1477

The same yere the Turkes practized much pyracie in Nicofia, to the great blemishing and detrimēt of that Citie.



## A breefe Chronycle

1478

A great multitude of Turkes were overcome in Myfia. The Venetians made league with the Turke: Chalcis was by force of Armes subdued, and Scodra by subtil practyse gotten and persuaded to yelde. They promysed to paye hym yeerely 8000 Crowncs, conditionally that their Navigation and traffique over Pontus myght bee open for their Marchauntes as befoze it had bene.

1479

Mahomet sent a great Armie into Puell, and he himselfe went with an Armie into Hungarie, and brought out of both places a great multitude of Christian Prisoners. And afterwarde by force subdued the Isles Leucadia, Neritus, Cephalenia and Zacynth.

1480

Mahomet went with an Armie into Egypt to conquere Alexandria and at home made preparation for all things needefull for his expedition to Rhodes, which he now minded out of hande to besiege, and had framed his plat which way to attempt it.

1481

This Mahomet by Mesich his Generall (a Bassa) besieged Rhodes, and beate the same with iiii. Monethes most terribly. But the same was so manfully defended, that hee was fayne to his great reproche and shame to departe and leaue his Siege, which he had there continued lxxxix. dayes, in which while he losse of his men which were slaine out of hande ix. thousande beside xv. thousande which were wounded. The Maister of the Rhodes at this Siege for the Christians was the valiant Peter Dabuson.

The same yeere the Turke with a great Armie invaded Puell and by Acomaro one of his Capitaines, wanne Otronto, a goodly large and populous Citie standing vppon the Sea, and put all the Inhabitauntes to the sword.

In this yeere also 6000 Turkes were slaine at the Citie Mantinea in the kingdome of Lacedemon.

In

# Of Saracens and Turkes. 134

In this yeere also, this raging Delhounde Mahomet the Great Turke, first of all others tooke vpon him the name of Emperour. Hee wanne from the Christians two flourishing and noble Empires, Constantinople, and Trapezunc; twelve Christian Kingdomes, and CC. cities. After which sundry conquestes he perished by his blasphemous soule, and payed his debt to nature, to the great reioysing aswell of his enemies as of his owne people, because of the horrible & unspeakable cruelties, without respect aswell to frendes as foes, most rigorously shewed.

Baiazeth the viij. Emperour of Turkes, appeasing all civile dissensions and domesticall discorde at home, chased his brother Zizime out of all Turkie, and was himselfe entailed in the Empire.

The same yere Ferdinand King of Naples, sent his Sonne Alphonsus with an Army, who recovered from the Turkes the Citie Otranto, before wonne by Mahomet.

Also this yeere Iohn Castriotte the Sonne of Scanderbeg assembled a power and recovered his inheritance that was by force taken from his father by Mahomet.

The same yere also Stephen Vambard and King Matthias, wanne from the Turke the higher countrey of Myha, which now is called Bosniaw.

Baiazeth often toyning battaile with the Sultan of Egypt had the worse, and in the ende was glad to make a league with him.

The Turkes invaded and wanne Malachia.

Zizime Brother to this Baiazeth the Great Turke, being an exile in Rhodes whither he fled for feare of his Turke his brother, was this yere sent to Rome to Pope Innocent the viij. And after a certeyne time of abode there, was paysoned together with Alexander the Pope his Sonne.

1482

1483

1483

1484

1488

Fer



# A breefe Chronycle

- 1490 Ferdinand king of Spaine with x. <sup>th</sup> Housmen and fifty thousand footemen, won from the Saracen Moors, the kingdome of Granada, and chased them utterly out of that Countrey beyond the Sea.
- 1492 This Turke Baiazeth with a great power both by Sea and Land invaded the Inhabitants of the Isles in Greece called Ceraunij, and all the free Corporacions of Epyre, and them subdued to his Turkish Emppre.
- The same yere Matthias King of Hungary, conquered a strong Holme from the Turkes called Sabatum, whereby his Countrey lyued in moze quietnesse and out of feare.
- 1493 A mighty Armye was sent into Hungarie under the leading of Cadumc Bassa, by whom were slayne vii. <sup>th</sup> Hungarians: and for testimony of this spoyle and conquest to geaunt to the Christians, they sent many Christi- an mens Wyues with their noses cut of and in both some were disfigured, to Constantinople.
- 1494 The Turke rushing into Croacia, were put to flight by Maximilian.
- 1498 The Turke turned against the Venetians, spoilinge with fire and sword the Countrey Dalman, & burned away in him great payes. In Ferinij also he commanded about 4000. men to be beheaded, because he could not carry them away with him by reason of a great deluge of the river there. The Citie of Venice for dread of hym was in great perplexitie and feare.
- 1499 The Turkes wonne this yere, Modona and Corona, two citiees of Peloponnesus.
- 1500 The Citie Methon was by the Turkes wonne from the Venetians by force. A notable daye Baiazeth com- manded the Byshop of that place to be beheaded in his sight, and killed the Townesmen every one, and for the most part consumed all the houses with fire. By the

# Of Saracens and Turkes. 135

misfortune also, the sayd Venetians lost Naupactum and Dyrrhachium.

Certayne Kings & Princes of Chyristendome, friends and fauorers of the Venetian state, ioynded their Power with the Venetian Flæte (ouer the which Benedict Pisaurc was Admirall) and spoyled the Isles of Egina and Zacynth, inuaded Leucas and Cephalenia, toke the Ile of Neritus (at this day called Saina Maures Ilande) and reskued Nauplia.

The Turke greatly fearing his owne state, by reason of the bzute and rumour y went vpo Elias the Prophet of Persia, commaunded aboue CC. Houses in Constantinople with all the Inhabitauntes therein to be burnt. This Prophet was in such credit and estimation among the People, that aboue CL. thousande men leaned to his Sect and folowed after hym in Campe. His Tentcs were exceeding rich and gorgeous, and all thinges among them were common.

The same yere, the Turke entred into League and concluded peace with the king of Hungary and the Duke of Venice.

The King of Spaine in Mauritania Casariensis, toan Maynepost from the Saracenes.

The Sophie of Persia, vanquished, chased, and slew the Turkes in Asia.

Grane a populous and wealthy citie of Africa this yere was wonne by the Spaniardes.

The Spaniardes by force of Armes conquered Bugia in Africa.

Zelime youngest Sonne to Baiazeth the great Turke rebelliously and most unnaturally lay in wayt to kill his olde Father, expelled him out of his kingdome in his olde dayes, with all his Brothers and kinsmen. At length he caused his Brothers and their Childzen to be strangled

Do

and

1501.

1502.

1504.

1505.

1509.

1510.

1511.



# A breefe Chronycle

and by a certayne Jew, whom for that intent he had hired, he caused his sayd father to be poysoned.

1512. This Zelime by the factious election of his disordered Souldiours and affectionate Rakebells, was chosen and annointed the ix. Emperoure of Turkes.

1513. Acomathes the brother of Zelime, being ayded by the Persians, warred against his Brother, but Fortune so frowned on him, that he was strangled.

1514. Zelime concluding a peace & renewinge League with the Venetians and Hungarians, made sharpe Warre upon Ismael y<sup>e</sup> king of Persia, & him nere to a towne called Chalderan, vanquished and put to flight: And toke Taurum the chiefe Citie of his kingdome (sometime called Artaxata) without any resistance or bloodshed.

1515. Hee waged fresh warres against Aladule Kinge of Cappadocia, and taking his chiefe Capitaine in the chase, cut him thorow by the head, and sent his head to Venice for a Trophée or signe of his victorie.

1516. This bloudy Zelime discomfited Campfor the Sultane of Egypt with all his power, and slue the Sultane hymselfe in the chase. And following his good fortune and prosperous successe in this battayle, conquered and annexed to his Emprye, Alkair, and Alexandria two goodly embatteléd Cities, and all Egypt beside. He also tooke Damascus, the large and renowned Citie of Syria.

1517. Hee made a passage or a Bydge of Shippes over the river Nilus, to the intent hee might pursue and coope with Tomorbey the new Sultan of Egypt. Whom by treason hee tooke and after all kindes of most cruell tormentes and spightfull contumelies, commanded hym to be hanged.

1518. Charles Kinge of Spayne drove out of his Realme the Marranes, which were a remnaunt of the Saracens and slue welnere of the Barbarians. 40000.

1520. Zelime the Great Turke was this yere (as he had well

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 136

well deserved) murdered in that place, where before he had moste unnaturallie and rebelliouslie persecuted bys Father. After him succeeded his Sonne Solyman, the xii. Emperour of Turkes.

This Solyman conquered the Citie Belgrade, a moste strong Buttresse and Garrison for Chritendome, and wan diuers other Castles and strong Holds in Hungary.

1521.

He also besieged the Ile of Rhodes with a Pave of foure hundzeth Sayle and a mightie multytude of men. He beganne the siege in the later end of Iune, and toke it vpon Chritmas day next folowing to þ great shame & dishonour of al chritian Princes. The knights of þ same Ile valyauntly a great while defended it, & often skirmished with hym, but in th'ende after many notable overthrowes for want of ayde and power they yeldeb.

1522.

Lewys Kinge of Hungarie desired by his Ambassadors, aid of the Princes of Germany, against the Turke invading his Countrey and Kingdome, whiche they appointed to sende, but it came to late. For the Turke was already come, wherefore king Lewys in his owne person, leading his whole power against hym, encountered with hym in battayle, wherein hee was overcome, and thinking to hane saued himselfe by flight, was drowned in certayne Bogges or Fennes both Horse and Man. Many worthy Gentlemen in this Battayle were slayne to the great weakeninge of that noble Kingdome. The chiefe Citie of the Realme called Buda, was sacked and spoyled: and the noble Libzarie, of Kinge Matthias bitterly consumed with fire.

1526.

The knights of the Rhodes planted theselues against the Turkes in the Ile of Malta.

1529.

The same yere Solyman came agayne into Hungary, besieged the second tyme the strong fortresse of Bude, but seeing he could not according to his minde by force win it, he perswaded the Defendauntes by certayne offers and

Do is

conditi-



## A breefe Chronycle

conditions to yelde it into his handes. From thence he marched to Vienna a noble Citie of Austrich, and vppon the xxij day of September gyzded the same about with a most terrible Siege, beate it with Ordnance and shooke the walles with most hydeous noyse of roaring Canons. But through the courage of the defendantes, he lost many of his Souldiours, and being bzought into a vtter despaire of any good successe, he trusted by his trinkets and in flying maner frudged away toward his owne Countrey with all spede that coude be, fearing least the Emperour and other Princes had solotwed at heeles after him. During this siege, he haried great booties out of y<sup>e</sup> Countrey thereabout, and carped away many thousande Prisoners. He cast out young Virgins & auncient Patronesses starke naked, and pitched little Childzen vpon stakes and poales. In his Armie he had a hundzeth and fortie thousand men: whereof (partly in this Siege of Vienna and partly in their flight) perished for famine and colde, the number of. lxxx. thousand. The Citie was most valiantly defended by Philip of Bauary Earle Palatine of the Rhine brother to the Palsgrauc; a young Gentleman in yeres but of noble courage, with the Lord William Rogendorf and Nicolas Erle of Salme and with them onely xx. M. Almeynes and two M. horsemen. In his iourney, through Austrich, the Turke vied vspeakeable crueltie, of some he cut of their noses, some he put out their eyes, of some he cut of their priuy members, of women they cut their pappes, Virgins they rauished, and of women great with childe they rpypped their bellies and bzent the childzen: beside this, all along as they went, they bzent Corne, Trees, Houses and all that was combustible, to make the countrey desolate.

1532

Solyman with CC. M. armed souldiours assaulted the Castle of Guntz in Hungarie, getting thereto. xij. terrible assautes. Which Castle was valiantly defended by

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 137

by a noble Gentleman named Nicolas Iuryze. At length it was surrendred vnto him, not as wonne by force, but as yielded by composition. The great Turke himselfe hearing that the Emperour Charles was comming agaynst him wyth .lxxx. thousande footemen and .30000. well appointed hoysmen, of Germaines, Italians and Spanyardes, beside the Hoysmen of Hungarie, thought the Countrey woulde be too boate for hym to staye any longer, and therebpon fledde homewarde throughe the Hillishe Downes of Norica and wyth great booties returned home, wythout doyng any thing woorthye of memorie.

Solyman yet againe meant to haue an other slinge at Hungarie, and to scourge the Kingdomes of Africa. Wherebpon he sent one Corradine Barbarossa Capitayne of his Flaue into Africa against the King of Tunice. Whom he dyaue out of his Kingdome, and deposed from hys Crowne. And into Hungarie he sent Lewys Gritte, Bastard sonne of Andrew Grytte Duke of Venyce, to expulse and dyaue out thence Vainode. But Meilane Vainode wyninge the Cytie of Medeuisch, which the saide Lewys Grytte before had gotte into hys possession, slew both hym and all his Armie: And cutte hys Chyldezen into pieces, before theyr fathers eyes.

Charles the fift with a great Flaue sailed into Africa, and restored the king of Tunice to his Crowne againe, and deliuered out of miserable captiuitie about the number of .xx. thousand Christian Prisoners.

The same yere Taurus a Citie of Persia was taken by the Turke. Where the Turkishe Souldiours lying in carelesse securitie, were sodainly set vpon by Tahames king of Persia, and .xx. thousande of them slayne. The Persians caried thence manye spoiles and the Great

1534

1535

D. 14. Turkes



## A breefe Chronicle.

Turkes Concubines, to the great shame and reproche of their Enemies.

1537

Solyman assembled out of the Countreies of Pontus & Propontis, C l. Gallies. lxxx. Brigandines, & Foystes, and CC. lxx other vessels of diuers sortes wherewith he innaded Corfica an Ile belonging to the Seigniozie of Venice, and it besieged the space of .x. dayes. Then setting the Suburbes on fier, & making great spoyle of the countrey beside killing or else taking Prisoners, many of the Inhabitauntes, he departed thence, and wasted the Ile of Zacynth and Cythera. Hee conquered and layde euen with the grounde, the Ile of Agina, subdued Paros, and make Nasos Tributarie. He sent into Puell, the greater and better part of his Flaute, which were in number ten thousand picked souldiers and M. of his stoutest Horsesmen, which harped and spoiled all the Coast of the Tyrrene Sea. The state of the Emperour, the Pope, and Venetians toyning together at the first, throught discorde and ambition of the Captaines among themselves were disseuered and scattered a sunder.

1538

Inuasion and Rodes were made into Styria by the Martyloys, a rude sort of Paganly Lurdens, altogether geuen to Pyllery and Theft: but by the valiantnesse of the Countrey Inhabitauntes they were repulled.

The same yere throught Treason of Duke Calcian the Chyistians had an ouerthrowe at the handes of the Turkes in Sauia.

1539

The Venetians entred a Truce with the Turke, by paying vnto him three hundred thousand Crownes, and yelding vp into his handes the Townes of Neapolis and Maluasia in the borders of Macedonia.

1540

The Towne of Petroucastle in Dalmatia (wherein was a Garrison of Spanyshe and Germane Souldiours) was this yere conquered and sacked by the Turkes and all the Inhabitauntes and Souldiours therein (according

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 138

ding to their vsuall custome) put to the sword. The Venetians all this while wynted at the matter, in whom it lay to haue holpen this outrage.

After the death of Iohn Vaiuoda, who committed the ouersight and tutorship of his young Sonne to his Cosen Georgius Monachus, it chaunced Ferdinando leuied an Army to recouer his Landes & right in Hungarie. Whō Monachus in the behalfe of the Infant resisted. At length the matter betwene them beyng brought to a Warle and conuention, for the quieting of all stryfe, it happened among Ferdinando his men, sodainely a Dagge to be hard goe of, which by the beate of the daie (as it is thoughte) discharged of it owne accorde. But Monachus iudging that it was shotte at him, charged Ferdinando with great iniurie, saying that from that time, he woulde neuer beleue the promyses of Christians. And vpon thys rashe suspicion, sent to the Turke, desiring hym to come into Hungarie with hys power to ayde him, who glad to haue this occasion, came speedely with a great Army and discharging the Hoaste of Ferdinando from the Siege of Buda, serued the Cytie into hys owne handes and to hys owne vse, commaundynge the young Infant and his mother to folowe after his Campe. Then entred he himselfe and tooke possession of the Castle, and wanne also Pestum a Cytie ryght ouer agaynst Buda, well stored wth Ordnance and Munition. At the same time he also won Stridon, and the Towne called Quinque-clesix or Fynffenkyrken he rased and made leauell with the grounde.

At the wympage of Buda, two Ensignes yeldinge themselves to the Turke vpon promyse of lyfe and limme, were first by him commaunded to put of their Armour, the to put it on again, & to ranke theselues in battaile aray, after the Christian fashion which they readily accomplishing according to his comaundment, & be riding about the



## A breefe Chronicle.

the bankes to view and behold them, at length badde them put of their Armure againe: whiche done, certaine of the tallest and strongest he picked out, the residue he commaunded his Souldiours comminge behinde, to be in peeces with their Swoydes. Of the other which he had chosen out, some he set for Marks, or Buttres to be shott at: and some he appointed to his two Sonnes to flashe with their Falchions, and to trye their strength, whether of them coulde geue the deeper wounde, or (as they feared it) strike the sayzer blowe, that most bloud might flow and gush out of their bodies.

1542. Joachim Marques of Brandeburge Prince Electour, was appoynted with a great power to goe into Hungarie to recover Buda and other peeces from the Turke. At the first, he seemed so forward and couragious, as though he woulde haue conquered the whole World. But his great heate in shorte space so flaked that he was full glad to be discharged of his office againe, before any wronge were offered him, and with shame ynough returned home agayne. Whole cowardise the Turkes perceiuing, thought to shew hym some cast of their office before his departure, and set vpon the right Wing of his Armye, and thence took 500. Daubmen prisoners. Whom in derision they horriblely mangled and disfigured: and so sent them throught Grecia to bee witnesses of their victorie. The kinde of their punishment was this: first, they thrust them cleane throught the right Arme, with an yron redde boat, to make them euer after vnhabable to labour and warfare, secondly their heades were shauen to the very Sculles lyke Ponkes or Friers, and thirdly their pryue members were cut of, to make them vnfrutefull for propagation of Children. Notwithstandinge Maurice Duke of Saronie in his expedition, shewed himselfe a gentleman of haulte courage and was lyke to haue bene taken prisoner.

This

# Of Saracens and Turkes. 139

This yere the Emperoure Charles, spending hymselfe  
somwhat late in 5 yere with a goodly Paup into Mauri-  
tania Cæsariensis against Barbarossa to reconer Argiers,  
& staying (as some say) somwhat long at Luke, to cōferre  
w<sup>th</sup> the Pope, by force of tempest & contrary Windes, suf-  
fered a lamentable Shipwreck, and losse a great number  
of his goodly Shippes with the Ordnance and Habylli-  
ments of Warre that were within them. The Empe-  
roure himselfe by force of weather was cast vpon the Ba-  
leare Islands. In this expedition the Germanes valiant-  
ly quitte themselves in skirmish against the Barbarians  
in the Emperours behalfe, but the Italians recyled and  
fled back.

1542

Truce was for a certeyne time taken with the Turke  
which to both parties with longe warres wearied, was  
welcome and very acceptable.

1543

Sigismund King of Poleland, by Breuitz one of his  
Capitaynes, conquered and rased a stronge Fortresse:  
which the Turke had buylt nere to the Marches of his  
Kealme and Kingdome.

1546

Mustapha the Turkes eldest Sonne, thought he tary-  
ed too longe, if he shoulde be kept from the Crowne tyll  
his father were dead, wherefore he incensed the Egip-  
tians to take part with him, and stirred by the Persians to  
make sharpe Warre vpon Solyman his father.

1547

Solyman the Turke with a huge army, marched a-  
gainst Tolcha King of Persia, where the Turke in bat-  
taye had a great overthow and lost many of his men in  
Persia. The Tartarians which were comminge to ioyne  
their powers with him for his defence, were slagne and  
spoiled in the lesse Armenia.

1548

The same yere, one Curculey a Turkishe Pryate  
with twenty Galleyes and Foystes, contrarye to the  
League and truce prattized muche Byzacie and rouvere  
about the Coastes of Sicilie and Campania, sodayntye

pp

sur



## A breefe Chronicle

surprizing the Inhabitantes, and thence carryed away  
incredible spoyle.

1548. The same yere the Saracenes in Barbaria buzynge  
newe sedicious vp202es, were by the valyauntnesse of  
Sestian and Albanc two of the Emperours Capitaines  
repressed: who also deliuered Portugall and Spaine  
from their malicious inuasion.

1549 The Turke intending to make amendes for the late ignomynie and foyle that he had receiued, leuyed a newe Armye againste the Persians : and firste, he inuoyted his Souldiours by augmenting their wages, and after ward, by his Ambassadors, insinuated himselfe to all his confederates and confirmed such Leagues as were betweene them. But he lost of this is very well appoynted Armye in this iourney by famine and plague a great multytude. The plague also beinge very boate and raiginge in Constantinople (which Citie in his absence, he had strengthened with a Garrison of a hundreth Gallies) consumed well nere fix, thousand persons.

1550. In the beginning of this yere, (whiche was a yere of  
Tubylie) Solyman was repoised (but vntruelye) to bee  
dead: which mercilesse Tyrant soze afflicted the people  
of God, the space of xiii. yeres.

The same yere the Emperoure Charles the fift, by the Viceroy of Sicile, conquered and won the Cite Affrica, from whence he brought 8000 prisoners, and drave out the Archppzate Dragute, King therof, who fled to the Turke.

The Turkes after they had in vaine for a time be-  
sieged the Castle of Malca, took the Citie of Tripplisa  
Porte of Barbarie.

Solyman at this time caused his eldest Sonne Mustapha to be strangled in a Bowstringe, by his dumb men ministers of Murther & vijured, he himself being present and looking on, to suspicion of treason layd to his charge.

And

## Of Saracens and Turkes 140

And there was a truce taken betwene hym and Ferdinando king of Romanes.

After which ad committed, he woulde haue geuen to an other of his sonnes named Gianger, the Treasure, bozle, Armour Ornament and Prouince of his slayne Brother: but Gianger for very sorowe of his Brothers death raging against his Father, calling hym wycked dog, traytoure and murderer, and bidding pby vpon him, refused his offers and drawinge out his stonke Dagger presently thrust himselfe through the body and dyed.

The Turkes Army came into Scyria, and wanne the towne of Coppa, Capenisuar, and Baboza. And attempting to winne Sigetum, they could not with all their power bzing it to passe. Wherebpon they departed homeward, but first, they spered Baboza, Sanmartine, Gerrosgall, Selia, San Laurence and Caliang.

Philip Kinge of Spaigne furnished out an pavye to conquere Tripolis, of the Ile Gerbe: which Fleete arriving in Gerbe and ioyninge battaile with the Turkes, was put to a shewde afterdeale & overthow. For there were slaine of them out of bande to the number of xxii. thousande persons. The Turkes in this conflicte took xxvii. Galleyes, one Foyst of fortye, and fouretene great Hulkes.

In the beginning of the same yere the Turkes wanne a strong Holde in Hungary named Filech: and afterwarde a Truce was taken betwene the Emperour Ferdinando and solyman the great Turke so long as Ferdinando lyued.

The great Turke, sent his Ambassadour to Ferdinando, who from the great Turke his Walfer presented vnto the said Emperour a goodly Venet richlye trapped and 4. Camelles with sundrye Christian Prisoners.

Maximilian now Emperoure, by the Lozde Lazarus Swendy his Generall, conquered & beat downe a strong

holde

1556.

1560.

1564.



## A breefe Chronycle

holde a Fort called Tochay, belonging to Iohn Vauoda which was eigerly defended by the Turkes.

1564 King Philip sent Garzias Captaine of his Gallies and Army all of those Seas with a goodly Flaue to wyne a stronge Castle belonging to the Turkes called Del Peuol de Velez, standing vpon the coast of Africa, from whence Turkish Pyrates were often wont to infect the Spanishe Seas and take such as traueiled that way. Which in vi. dayes they toke, so that the Turkes defending it, in the still time of the night fled away.

1565 Solyman besieged the Ile of Malta, wonne the Castle of S. Helme, but not able to winne the rest, he left all and departed with great losse of his men.

1566 Solyman with a huge power entred into Hungarie, and besieged Sigeth and Iula. And there dyed, the iij. of September, leauing behinde him for Heyre to all his dominions and Kingdomes, his sonne Selyme, now Emperour of Turkes. Whose tyrannie and rage God for his mercyes sake, inhibits and qualesse, that he vse not his power to the destruction and overthrowe of Christendome, which with ciuile discorde without selfe is at this present piteously rent asunder and most dangerously dismembred. In this Siege the rather to allure his Souldiours to ballaunt enterprises, he made Proclamation, that whosoener brought to him or to his Sonne in law Mechmet Balla the head of a Sygethian Souldiour should haue in reward .x. Duckattes, and after that rate accordingly for so many heades as they brought. Beside diuerse other causes so vehemently moued him to conquer this strong piece, this was one, none of the leaste, for one of the Turkes Captaines named Begem comming out of Turkie toward Hynsenkyrken or Quinquede six into Hungarie with 1000. freshe Horsemen, was encountered by the Erie Scryne Captaine of Sygeth in the night, who toke from him 8 Camels, 50 Horses, 60 Horses, and five Wagons laden with Treasure and also gotte it, redde

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 141

ij. redde Gypsons, with a whole piece of riche clothe of Golde, and a goodly Jewell. This Captaines Horse was betrapped most richly. The Pomell of the Saddle & backe part was couered ouer with plate of fyne Arabiche work, and the rest of the saddle beside the sitting place was plated with Silver and gilt. The Seate of the Saddle was couered with purple Weluet, the Trappers and byddle beset with small Turkeys and Rubies. Which horse and furniture, was sent by Carle Seryne to the Emperour to Vienna. The Captaine Begen (although the Erle Serine would faine haue saued him and taken him alive, yet because the Ianitzaries fought so eigerly to deliuer him, he was forced to kill both him and them. From this Begen, the Erle got. xv. thousand Turkishe & Hungarish Duc-kates, which should haue payd the Turkishe Souldiours in Fynsenkyrken.

This valiaunt Gentleman at the Siege of this Fortresse was slaine, whose death greatly discozaged all his company. The Turke himselfe although he dyed in the Campe at this Siege, certaine dayes before the fortresse were taken, yet by the subtile policie and wonderfull silence of Mechmet Bassa his Sonne in lawe, his death was kept secreete and unknowen till the Hold was taken for discozaging his Souldiours. Insomuch that the sayde Mechmet Bassa, prinely caused Solymans Doctoꝝ of Physicke to be executed and put to death, least he shoulde haue blabbed out his death. At this Siege were slaine thre or foure Bassas & 18000. Turkes.

The Arabians and certeyne other Countreyes began in the beginning of the raigne of this Selyme to rebell against him, whom he quickly appeased & brought vnder obedience. And made a league with the King of Persia.

After this, although the Turke had entred in league with the Venetians, yet now laying title & challenge to the Isle of Cyprus, he sent his Ambassadour to Venice state.

pp. ij.

ly and

1567

1570



## A breefe Chronycle

ly and malapertly to demaund surrendry of the same vnto him. Which sauncy request being not graunted, he contrary to league, othe, & promyse, first sent out Hali Bassa with 80 Gallies thither to transport Souldiours, Munition, freshe victuall & other necessaries. Then were appointed as chiefe Generalles two Lordes of his Prinie Council, Mustapha Bassa, and Piali Bassa, whiche with their maynt power landing in Cypres first wonne the Citie Nicosia but not without greate slaughter and effusion of bloude on both partes.

1571

The Citie Famagosta was most terrible besieged and sixe times cruelly assaulted and righte valiantly by the Christians defended so long as their power, victuall, powder and shot remaineb. But the want of these thinges & the state of their Waymires being by Canon shot beaten downe & perished, caused the right valiaunt & honorable Sig. Bragadino Lord Governour of the Citie & others of y Venetian Nobilitie there, to yeld by theselues and y Citie vpon some honorable condicions. That is to wit, that they might depart with their lyues Armour & goods, fine pieces of Ordnance, three of their best Horses and safe passage from thence to Candye with theyr own Gallies: and last of all that the Grecians inhabiting in that Island, might dwell there quietly and enjoy their goods and possessions peaceably and still reseyne their Christian Religion without either hurt or contradiction. At these requests and Articles, Mustapha the Turkish Generall graunted and subscribed vnto with his own hand, but the cursed Caytis spake one thing with mouth & thought another in heart, for the 15 of August, the said Sig. Bragadino (vpon trust of this Bassa his promyse) accompanied with sundry other Lordes Gentlemen and Souldiours came forth of their Holde and went vnto the Pavillion of Mustapha, with the keyes of the Citie: of whom at the first they were courteously enterteyned and caused to sit downe by

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 142

by him, discourſing with them of ſundry matters and drawing them from one tale to another, till at length picking a ſurmyſed quarrel and ſpecially to Sig. Bragadino ſodainly commaunded them all to be pynnyed and to be layde bounde one by one in the market place, and in his preſence there to be helwen in peeces. As for Sig. Bragadino, he firſt commaunded his eares to be cut of, and moſt vilely to be ſtretched a long vpon the grounde, while Muſta-pha talked and blaſphemouſly demaunded of him, where his Chyiſt was that he helped him no better. Then he led him to all the breaches of the Citie, making him to carie at once two baſkettes of rubbiſh and earth, the one on his backe and the other in his hand ſtanelyke to every ſundry battry, being enforced alſo and commaunded to kysſe the grounde as often as he paſſed by him. After this, he was ledde to the Sea ſide where being ſet in a Chayze, he was lynchted vp and faſtened to the maineyard of a Galley, and hoysed by with a Crane ſo high that all the Chyiſtian ſouldiours and ſlaves in the Haven alreadye ſhipped might behold, and was after ward let downe againe, and vpon the Wyllowie in the market place moſt cruelly ſleyed quicke. After which moſt ſavage tyrannie, his ſkinne was ſtuffed with ſtraw and hanged vpon the Wollpitt of a ſoyl to be caried along the coaſtes of Syria, that al the Port towines might behold and vnderſtand who he was. The Turkiſh Army at this Siege of all ſortes were in number 200 thouſande perſons. In 79 dayes (all which time the Battry ſtill continued) 140 thouſande yron pelletes were ſhot into the Citie, numbred and ſene.

The Chyiſtian Pany being in number 207 Gallies, 6 Galeazes beſide a great nūber of Pynnelles and other ſhippes, and 20. thouſande tall ſouldiours, of Spayne, Italy and Germanie beſide the Labourers and Rowers, wherof was chiefe General Don Iohn de Auſtria ſooke the Sea at Meſſana from thence ſayling to Cortyra, & ſo



## A breefe Chronicle.

to Cephalenia seeking the Turkes: where being out of Candy enformed of the miserable taking and cruell dealing at Famagosta, were further genen to vnderstande, that the Turkes lay at Anker in the Gulph of Velapant. Spreading themselves thitherward, the Turkes were in a ioly ruse, marveilling that the Christians durst so fondly hazard themselves vnto certayne death, and making full reckenyng so to afflict and crush the Christian power at that time, that they should neuer be able afterwarde to withstand the more. But they reckened before their Host, and God gaue the victorie. For there were taken, burnt, and sunk of the Turkish Gallies, Gallots and Byggandines 230. There were slayne of the Turkes 30. thousand, beside a great number taken prisoners: and about xlii. thousand Christians that had bene kept in lothsome captiuitie, were set at libertie, breaking their chaynes to be reuenged of their extreme slauerie, to helpe the Christians when the Turkish foe began to goe to wreck. The chiefe bzunt of this conflict was vpon the 6. day of October, and lasted foure houres, but the slaughter and chase continued all day from morning tyll night, insomuch that the Sea seemed redd with bloud: for none escaped thence alive saving 40. Gallies which fled at the first beginning. The Christians lost seauen Gallies and were slayne betwene the number of vi. or vii. thousande.

The wind and Humme was on the backs of the Christians, and full in the faces of the Turkes, whiche greatlye helped them at this pinch; and furthermore the Steemmes of the Turks Gallies were so high, that they overshotte our men, which made them to hasten to grappling: there beside a great sort of lanyzaries and comind Turkes, their Bassa was slaine.

1573.

This yeres the seauenth of October, the noble and valyaunt Prince Don John De Austria with 105 Gallies and 40. great shippes was sent by Phyllip King of Spayne

Spayne to take and set order in the kingdome of Tunice, where was great ruffling and hurly burly for the State. He therfore taking Ship at Iauagnana, had the wind so fauorable, that by none the next day he arriued at Goletta. Afterward there folowed and came to him Marcellus Auria with 29. well trimmed Foyles, and the Duke of Sicilia with 14. of the Popes gallyes. The Turkes in Tunice for dreadd of his puissance (whom to their cost not long before they had tryed) fled out of Tunice, some to Caranana and 400. of them to Bisana, sometime called Vtica: whom the Bisanes would not receiue nor succour: wherupon after many boat twydes on either party, they fell together by the eares among themselves. The Bisanes (to be the stronger in that byckeringe) inclogged and byndayned 150. Christian Prisoners whom the Turkes had vsed for Gallye Slaves, and them furnished with Weapon and armure. By whose help and meane specially, the Bisanes got the upperhande and slue many of the Turkes. Which done, Don Iohn (hauiug the goodwyl of the Townesmen) sent thither Sig. Salazara the Spaniarde, to take possession of the Towne, and to sweare the Inhabitantes to be true obedient Subiectes to Kinge Philip. Then landing his Army within foure miles of Tunice, he sent 2500. Footemen to the citie, where they found no body to resist them but onely 200 Moores in the Castle, who sayde that they kept the same to the vse of Amidas their Kinge. Whom Don Iohn sent Prisoner with his Wife and Children into Sicile, because he had bene cause of great discorde and faction in that Countrie, and (dispossessing the lawfull heyres thereof) had violently vsurped the same and procured the Turkes to come thither. In whose roome he appoynted young Mulcasses, who swore to be true Vassall vnto Kinge Phylip and to holde his Crowne of hym by Homage, whom the Citizens with a goodly peale of Ordinaunce receiued & gladye



## A breefe Chronicle

lye seemed to admit for their Soneraigne. Ouer the Castle the chiefe Fort of the Citie he appoynted Sig. Serbellane Captaine.

1574.

The iij. of February 200 footemen and 150 Horsesmen of the Garrison of the sayd Sig. Serbellan, ioyning also unto the for helpe 4000 Horses, issued out of their Fort and encountred with 1500 Turkes and 3000 Arabians, which robbed and spoyle the goods of the Lunicians and grievously molested them. In which conflict, the falsehearted Horses revolting and refusing to fight, there was taken 150 Christians and two Gunnes.

Still the Turkes stamping and staving for rage to see the Spaniards beare rule and authoritie in those quarters, princely in the night the 21. of Februarie surprised Canisum, killing therein and slaying above a thousand persons, and after they had utterly burnt the towne even to the Castle gate, they retired backe whence they came. The Garrison in the Castle to theingreat griefe all this while beholding this outrageous dealing, durst not once adventure to cope with them for feare of losing all, because they were in number farre fewer then they were.

This yeere the Venetians entered into league with Selyme the Great Turke, for confirmation wherof, they sent Sig. Francesco Barbaro to Constantinople, & conditions wherof were, & eyther partie should stil keepe & enjoy so much as they had already in their severall possessions, saving that the Venetians promised the delivery of Sapocum and resignation of all their tittle in the Porte of xemenicum into the Turkes handes: and againe, & Turke resigned and graunted unto them, two miles every way about the Territoary of Zara and other their Jurisdictions therabout, and that the Venetians for Dalmatia and other other pieces about Zara, should yearly answeren certaine tribute to the said Turke.

3A

## Of Saracens and Turkes. 144

In March this yere the Moores whom Don Iohn de Austria permitted vpon their humble sute still to inhabite in Tunyce, by the egging and procurement of Radamane Viceroy of Algiera, entred into conspyracie and deuise, both to surpise and winne the new Fort that the Spaniards had there lately made, against whom Salazara was commaunded by Sig. Serbellane to go with a thousand footemen, which put the Moorish Djudges to flight, and slue of them 1200.

Three Shippes were sent to Charles the ix. Kinge of Fraunce, laden with great Horses, Lyons, Lyberds, and other Presentes. Whiche colourable curtesie vnder the cloake of glossing flatterie, it is thought the Turkes vsed, the rather to obteyne the Kinges goodwill and consent that he might winter his Gallies in the Port Tolonen-sis. But hearing that the King was departed this lyfe before their comming, one of them retourned to Constantinople with speede, to intimate to the Turke their Master, the French Kinges death, and further to know his pleasure what they should doe.

In June the Emperour and the Turke concluded a peace for fve yeres to come.

In Iulie, 300 Turkes landing in Calabria to fetch fresh water and filch some other booties, were snatched by euery one and either slaine or taken.

Vpon the Seas about Tunyce were scene 350 Saile of the Turkes, whose intent and meaning was (as very shortly after they brought it to passe) to recouer and wyne the new Fort which Sarraglion builded, together with Goletta and other Ports there. With whom also a mighty rabblement of traiterous Mores about Algiera, Tripolis & Zerbite ioyned side: which dispossessed thence the Spanish garrisons, to the great furtherance of their deuillish purposes and to the lamentable griefe of all Chyistendome, considering what a small way they haue  
from



# A breefe Chronycle

from thence into Spaine & so into the rest of other Chri-  
stian Realmes, wile the good and gracious providence  
of our God qualesse and as with a snaffle reine this  
raging Beaste and bloody Tyrant, the common  
robber of all the world from further iniastion,  
which he graciously graunt for his mer-  
cy sake through the mediation of  
his Sonne Christ our Lord  
and onely Sauour

Amen.

**FINIS.**



**PRINTED AT**  
*London by William How, for*  
**Abraham Weale, dwelling in**  
**Paules Churchyard, at the signe**  
**of the Lambe.**

1575.

